

# User's Manual

## V3.41

WHG & HSG Series  
Secure WLAN Controller /  
Wireless Hotspot Gateway

## Copyright

The contents of this publication may not be reproduced in any part or as a whole, stored, transcribed in an information retrieval system, translated into any language, or transmitted in any form or by any means, mechanical, magnetic, electronic, optical, photocopying, manual, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of 4IPNET, INC.

## Disclaimer

4IPNET, INC. does not assume any liability arising out the application or use of any products, or software described herein. Neither does it convey any license under its parent rights nor the parent rights of others. 4IPNET further reserves the right to make changes in any products described herein without notice. The publication is subject to change without notice.

## Trademarks

4IPNET (4ipnet) is a registered trademark of 4IPNET, INC. Other trademarks mentioned in this publication are used for identification purposes only and may be properties of their respective owners.

## **FCC CAUTION**

### **WHG201, WHG311, WHG321**

This equipment has been tested and proven to comply with the limits for a class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

### **WHG315, WHG325, WHG401, WHG405, WHG425, WHG505, WHG515, WHG525, WHG707, WHG711, WHG801, WHG802, HSG1100, HSG1250, HSG3200, HSG3250, HSG5200**

These equipment have been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

## Table of Contents

<b>Chapter 1.</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>9</b>
1.1	WHG Controller Series .....	9
1.2	WHG Controller Models .....	11
1.3	HSG Gateway Series .....	11
1.4	HSG Gateway Models .....	12
1.5	4ipnet Solution Overview .....	13
1.6	Key Terms & Concepts .....	15
1.7	Recommended Configuration Sequence .....	18
	1.7.1. Common Settings .....	18
	1.7.2. Advanced Settings and Application .....	18
<b>Chapter 2.</b>	<b>WMI &amp; Setup Wizard .....</b>	<b>20</b>
2.1.	Web Management Interface .....	20
2.2	Running the Wizard .....	23
<b>Chapter 3.</b>	<b>Basic Network Settings .....</b>	<b>27</b>
3.1.	Network Planning .....	27
3.2.	Uplink (WAN side) Configuration .....	30
	3.2.1 WAN Settings .....	30
	3.2.2. Dual Uplink .....	31
	3.2.3. WAN Port Selection for dual WAN1 / WAN2 models .....	33
	3.2.4. WAN Traffic Control .....	35
	3.2.5. Uplink Detection & Failover .....	35
3.3.	Downlink (LAN side) VLAN option .....	38
	3.3.1. Port-Based Service Zone .....	38
	3.3.2. Tag-Based Service Zone .....	39
<b>Chapter 4.</b>	<b>User Authentication Database .....</b>	<b>40</b>
4.1.	Authentication Database Configuration .....	40
4.2.	Built-in Authentication Databases .....	42
	4.2.1. Local User Database .....	42
	4.2.2. On-Demand User Database .....	45
	4.2.3. The Guest Authentication Option .....	50
4.3.	External Authentication Options .....	55
	4.3.1. RADIUS .....	56
	4.3.2. POP3 .....	59
	4.3.3. LDAP .....	60
	4.3.4. NT Domain .....	61
	4.3.5. SIP .....	61
	4.3.6. Social Media .....	63
<b>Chapter 5.</b>	<b>Group Attributes &amp; Policy Rules .....</b>	<b>65</b>
5.1	Overview of the Concept .....	65
5.2	Practical Setups of Group and Policies .....	68
<b>Chapter 6.</b>	<b>Basic Service Zone Configuration .....</b>	<b>74</b>
6.1	The Concept of Service Zone .....	74
6.2	Service Zone Setup .....	74
	6.2.1. Tag-based or Port-based Service Zones .....	74
	6.2.2. NAT Mode or Router Mode .....	77
	6.2.3. Service Zone Network Interface .....	77
	6.2.4. DHCP Server options .....	78
	6.2.5. Authentication Options .....	79
	6.2.6. Portal Customization .....	82
<b>Chapter 7.</b>	<b>Basic AP Management (WHG Only) .....</b>	<b>85</b>



7.1.	Introduction .....	85
7.2	Local Area AP Management .....	88
7.2.1	AP List .....	88
7.2.2	AP Adding and Configuration Applying .....	89
7.2.3	Templates Configuration .....	92
7.2.4	AP Firmware Management .....	95
7.2.5	WDS Links .....	95
7.2.6	Rogue AP Scanning .....	98
7.2.7	AP Load Balancing Feature .....	99
7.3	Wide Area AP Management .....	100
7.3.1	Adding an Access Point .....	101
7.3.2	AP Discovery to find Multiple Access Points .....	101
7.3.3	AP Configuration with Templates .....	102
7.3.4	AP auto Discovery and Configuration using CAPWAP .....	103
7.3.5	Tunneled VAP Location Mapping Setup .....	109
7.3.6	Access Points on Map & AP Grouping .....	111
7.3.7	Rogue AP Scanning .....	115
7.3.8	AP Load Balancing Feature .....	116
<b>Chapter 8.</b>	<b>Advanced Settings for Network Environment .....</b>	<b>117</b>
8.1	IPv4 / IPv6 Dual Stack Network .....	117
8.2	User Access Control .....	120
8.3	Certification .....	123
8.3.1	System Certificate .....	124
8.3.2	Internal Root CA .....	125
8.3.3	Internally Issued Certificate .....	126
8.3.4	Trusted Certificate Authorities .....	127
8.4	Management Access .....	128
<b>Chapter 9.</b>	<b>Utilities for Controller Management .....</b>	<b>129</b>
9.1	WHG Controller Management .....	129
9.2	Configuration Backup & Restore .....	131
9.3	Firmware Upgrade .....	132
9.4	Restart .....	133
<b>Chapter 10.</b>	<b>Reports and Logs for Monitoring .....</b>	<b>135</b>
10.1	System Related Status .....	135
10.1.1	The Dashboard .....	135
10.1.2	System Summary .....	136
10.1.3	Network Interface .....	138
10.1.4	Routing .....	140
10.1.5	DHCP Server .....	140
10.2	Client Related Status .....	142
10.2.1	Online User .....	142
10.2.2	Associated Non Login Users .....	142
10.2.3	Cross Gateway Roaming Users .....	143
10.2.4	On-Demand Roaming Out User .....	143
10.2.5	Session List .....	144
10.3	Logs and Reports .....	145
10.3.1	System Related .....	145
10.3.2	User Events .....	146
10.4	Reports & Notification .....	147
<b>Chapter 11.</b>	<b>Hotspot Application .....</b>	<b>149</b>
11.1	On-Demand Billing Plans .....	149

11.2	On-Demand Billing Plan Types.....	150
11.2.1	Usage-time with Expiration Time .....	150
11.2.2	Usage-time with No Expiration Time.....	152
11.2.3	Hotel Cut-off-time.....	154
11.2.4	Volume.....	155
11.2.5	Duration-time with Elapsed Time .....	157
11.2.6	Duration-time with Cut-off Time .....	159
11.2.7	Duration-time with Begin-and-End Time .....	160
11.3	Terminal Server Setup .....	162
11.4	Customizing POS Tickets .....	170
11.5	Creating Accounts .....	175
11.6	User Self Service.....	177
<b>Chapter 12.</b>	<b>PMS Integration .....</b>	<b>182</b>
12.1	Hotel Room Location Mapping .....	183
12.2	Net-Retriever .....	185
12.3	Micros Opera .....	185
<b>Chapter 13.</b>	<b>Account Roaming.....</b>	<b>188</b>
13.1	Roaming Related .....	188
13.2	WISPr for ISP Roaming .....	188
13.3	Cross Gateway Roaming.....	190
13.4	Local / On-Demand Account Roaming Out .....	191
<b>Chapter 14.</b>	<b>VPN .....</b>	<b>194</b>
14.1	Site-to-Site.....	194
14.2	Remote Client .....	196
<b>Chapter 15.</b>	<b>Switch Management .....</b>	<b>198</b>
15.1	Switch List.....	198
15.2	PoE Schedule Template .....	199
15.3	Backup Configuration .....	200
<b>Chapter 16.</b>	<b>Platform Dependent Features.....</b>	<b>201</b>
16.1	High Availability (HA) (WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG515, WHG525, WHG707, WHG711, WHG801).....	201
16.2	Hardware Button (WHG311, WHG315).....	203
16.2.1.	Quick-Restore.....	203
16.2.2.	Quick-VPN.....	208
16.2.3.	Quick-Maintenance.....	209
16.3	WiFi Monitor (WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG425, WHG515, WHG525, WHG711, WHG801) .....	211
16.3.1.	Simulation Tool.....	211
16.3.2.	Managed AP Simulation .....	215
16.3.3.	AP Monitoring on floorplan .....	216
<b>Appendix A.</b>	<b>WHG Models &amp; Installation .....</b>	<b>217</b>
<b>Appendix B.</b>	<b>HSG Models &amp; Installation .....</b>	<b>234</b>
<b>Appendix C.</b>	<b>External Pages .....</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>Appendix D.</b>	<b>Useful Management &amp; Evaluation Tools .....</b>	<b>254</b>
<b>Appendix E.</b>	<b>On-Demand Account Types .....</b>	<b>256</b>
<b>Appendix F.</b>	<b>UI Reference Index .....</b>	<b>263</b>
I.	Main .....	263
II.	Setup Wizard .....	263
III.	Dashboard .....	264
A.	System.....	265

1) General .....	266
2) WAN .....	267
3) IPv6 .....	269
4) LAN Ports .....	269
5) High Availability.....	270
6) Service Zones .....	271
7) Port Location Mapping .....	275
8) Middleware .....	279
B. Users .....	281
1) Groups .....	281
2) Internal Authentication .....	282
3) External Authentication .....	284
4) On-Demand Accounts.....	285
5) Schedule .....	286
6) Policies.....	286
7) Blacklists .....	287
8) Privilege Lists .....	288
5) Additional Control .....	288
C. Access Points .....	290
1) Local Area AP Management .....	290
a) Overview .....	290
b) List .....	291
c) Adding.....	292
d) Discovery .....	292
e) Templates .....	293
f) Firmware.....	300
g) Upgrade .....	301
h) WDS Management .....	302
i) Rogue AP Detection .....	303
j) AP Load Balancing .....	304
2) Wide Area AP Management .....	305
a) Map .....	305
b) List .....	311
c) Discovery.....	315
d) Adding .....	316
e) Template .....	316
f) WDS List.....	322
g) Backup Config .....	323
h) Firmware .....	323
i) CAPWAP .....	323
j) Rogue AP Detection .....	324
k) AP Load Balancing .....	325
l) Third Party AP Management .....	326
D. Switches.....	327
1) Switch List.....	327
2) PoE Schedule Template.....	328
3) Backup Configuration .....	329
E. Network.....	329
1) NAT .....	330
2) Monitor IP.....	332
3) Walled Garden and Walled Garden Ad.....	333

4) VPN .....	334
5) Proxy Server .....	335
6) Local DNS Record .....	338
7) Dynamic Routing .....	338
8) DDNS.....	343
9) Client Mobility .....	343
F. Utilities .....	344
1) Administrator Account.....	344
2) Backup & Restore .....	348
3) Certificates .....	349
4) Network Utilities .....	352
5) Restart.....	354
6) System Upgrade.....	354
G. Status.....	355
1) System Summary .....	355
2) Interface .....	357
3) Monitor Users.....	359
4) WiFi Monitor.....	359
5) Managed AP Simulation .....	361
6) Process Monitor .....	363
7) Logs & Reports.....	364
8) Reporting .....	365
9) Session List .....	371
10) DHCP Lease .....	371
11) Routing Table .....	373

# ***Chapter 1. Introduction***

## **1.1 WHG Controller Series**

4ipnet WHG Controllers are feature rich network edge devices designed for network service provisioning, authentication, security, and management. Depending on the scale of deployment, there are a selection 4ipnet WHG Controller models to meet the network demands with various scale of capacities.

4ipnet WHG Controllers are designed to cater for the fundamental needs of any network environment, namely triple A (AAA) which stands for Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting. With 4ipnet WHG Controllers, various users are authenticated based on user role, from there it will define the user's accessible network segments, the user's network portfolio including accessible time, QoS, routing rules, firewall rules, usage terms and privileges which are collectively known as authorization. Finally accounting are performed by 4ipnet WHG Controllers periodically while a client is using the network, updating the accounting information for this client to either the internal user database or an external user database depending on deployment.

Wireless network provisioning is no easy task when the scale reaches multiple AP deployments. 4ipnet WHG Controllers are equipped with comprehensive AP management feature to cover not only 4ipnet AP devices deployed locally under the Local Area Network (LAN) but also 4ipnet AP devices deployed remotely in the Wide Area Network (WAN), relative to the location of your 4ipnet WHG Controllers. Furthermore, with a 3<sup>rd</sup> party AP management interface, 4ipnet WHG Controllers are capable of performing generic AP management features including associated online user monitoring, shortcut to GUI interface, and location planning for non-4ipnet APs.

Network safety and traffic control are other big areas of concern for network owners,

hoteliers as these are major factors in determining the quality and stability of your network environment as a whole. 4ipnet WHG Controllers addresses these needs with the following major features: equipped with static and dynamic routing features for optimized path selection, QoS mapping for enforcing bandwidth control to each individual user, system uplink bandwidth control, and customization firewall protocols and rules.

Common networking features can be found well packed into the 4ipnet WHG Controllers. Providing three varieties of NAT function, Walled Garden for free website surfing, Network device monitoring tool, Static DNS translation, Proxy Server, VPN and more. 4ipnet WHG Controllers simplify network deployment by incorporation multiple networking features into one device, avoiding the need to setup external NAT servers, Proxy servers, VPN gateway, etc. thereby reducing deployment complexity.

Network Maintenance and Network monitoring tasks are made easy with built in displays of system traffic, system resource utilization such as CPU usage and memory consumption, online user record, DHCP lease record, and more. Event logs can be sent to external servers for long term record keeping or in depth analysis.

## 1.2 WHG Controller Models

4ipnet WHG Controller product line comes with the following models for targeting network deployment of variable scale.

SMB & Enterprise Controllers

WHG201, WHG311, WHG315, WHG321, WHG325, WHG401, WHG405, WHG425

Large Enterprise & Carrier Grade Controllers

WHG505, WHG515, WHG525, WHG707, WHG711, WHG801

Note: 4ipnet may continue to introduce new platforms, and may retire old platforms, please refer to our website <http://www.4ipnet.com> for the latest product line status. For more detailed listing of each model hardware and installation know how, please refer to **Appendix A**.

## 1.3 HSG Gateway Series

4ipnet HSG Gateways are feature rich network edge devices designed for network service provisioning, authentication, security, and management. Depending on the scale of deployment, there are a selection models to meet the network demands with various scale of capacities.

4ipnet HSG Gateway are designed to cater for the fundamental needs of any network environment, namely triple A (AAA) which stands for Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting. Various users are authenticated based on user role, from there it will define the user's accessible network segments, the user's network portfolio including accessible time, QoS, routing rules, firewall rules, usage terms and privileges which are collectively known as authorization. Accounting are performed periodically while a client is using the network, updating the accounting information for this client to

either the internal user database or an external user database depending on deployment.

Network safety and traffic control are other big areas of concern for network owners, hoteliers as these are major factors in determining the quality and stability of your network environment as a whole. 4ipnet HSG Gateways address these needs with the following major features: equipped with static and dynamic routing features for optimized path selection, QoS mapping for enforcing bandwidth control to each individual user, system uplink bandwidth control, and customization firewall protocols and rules.

Common networking features can be found well packed into the 4ipnet HSG Gateway. Providing three varieties of NAT function, Walled Garden for free website surfing, Network device monitoring tool, Static DNS translation, Proxy Server, VPN and more. 4ipnet HSG Gateway simplify network deployment by incorporation multiple networking features into one device, avoiding the need to setup external NAT servers, Proxy servers, VPN gateway, etc. thereby reducing deployment complexity.

Network Maintenance and Network monitoring tasks are made easy with built in displays of system traffic, system resource utilization such as CPU usage and memory consumption, online user record, DHCP lease record, and more. Event logs can be sent to external servers for long term record keeping or in depth analysis.

## **1.4 HSG Gateway Models**

4ipnet HSG Gateway product line comes with the following models for targeting network deployment of variable scale.

SMB & Enterprise Controllers

HSG1100, HSG1250, HSG3200, HSG3250



## Large Enterprise & Carrier Grade Controllers

HSG5200

### NOTE

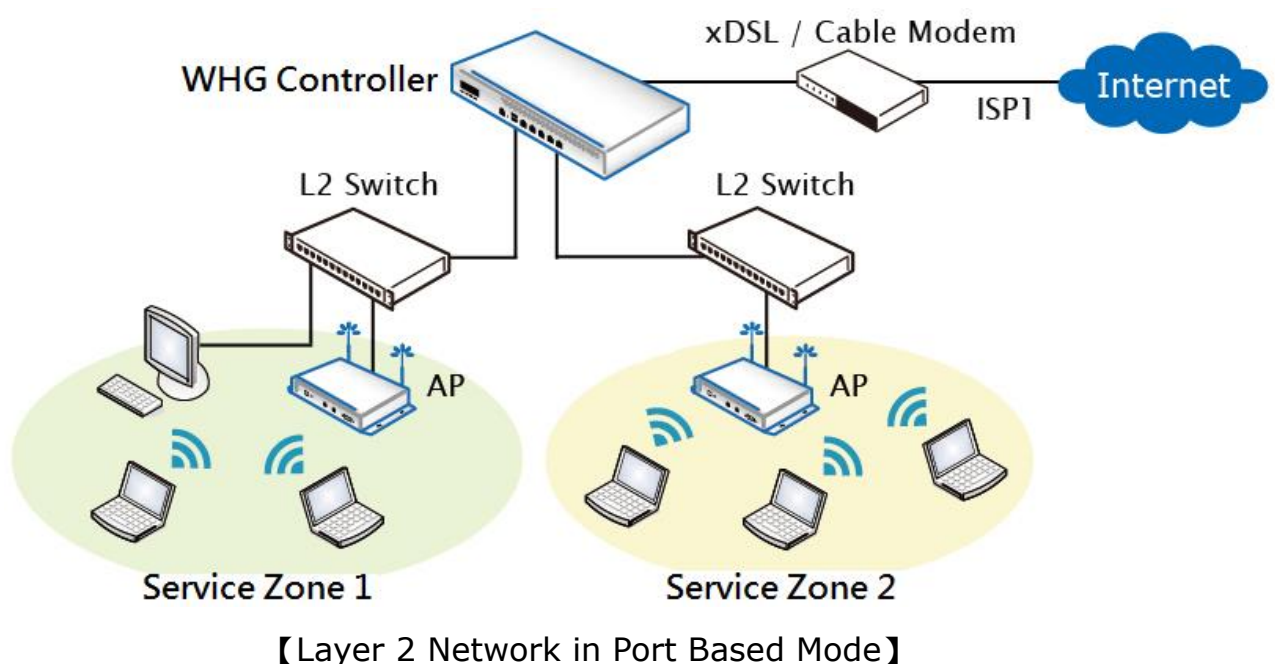
Please note that all HSG Gateways do not support Local and Wide AP management as well as Local & Remote VPN.

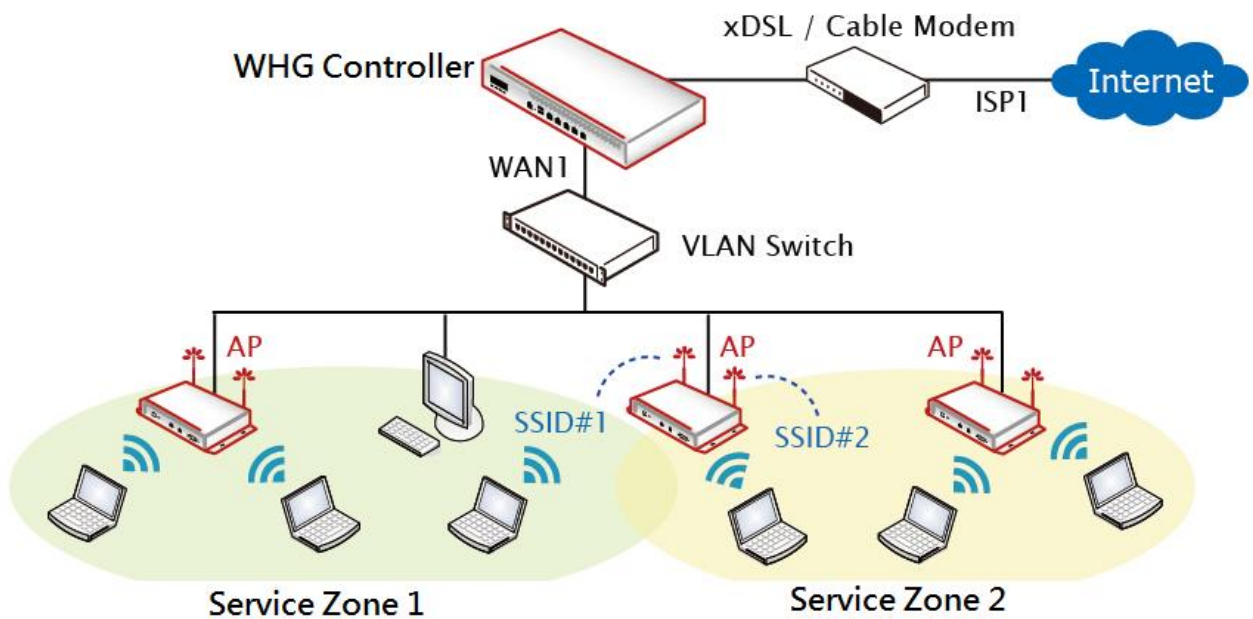
Note: 4ipnet may continue to introduce new platforms, and may retire old platforms, please refer to our website <http://www.4ipnet.com> for the latest product line status. For more detailed listing of each model hardware and installation know how, please refer to **Appendix B**.

## 1.5 4ipnet Solution Overview

4ipnet WHG Controllers are designed for network management over almost all current network architectures, Layer 2 (Data Link Layer) and Layer 3 (Network Layer).

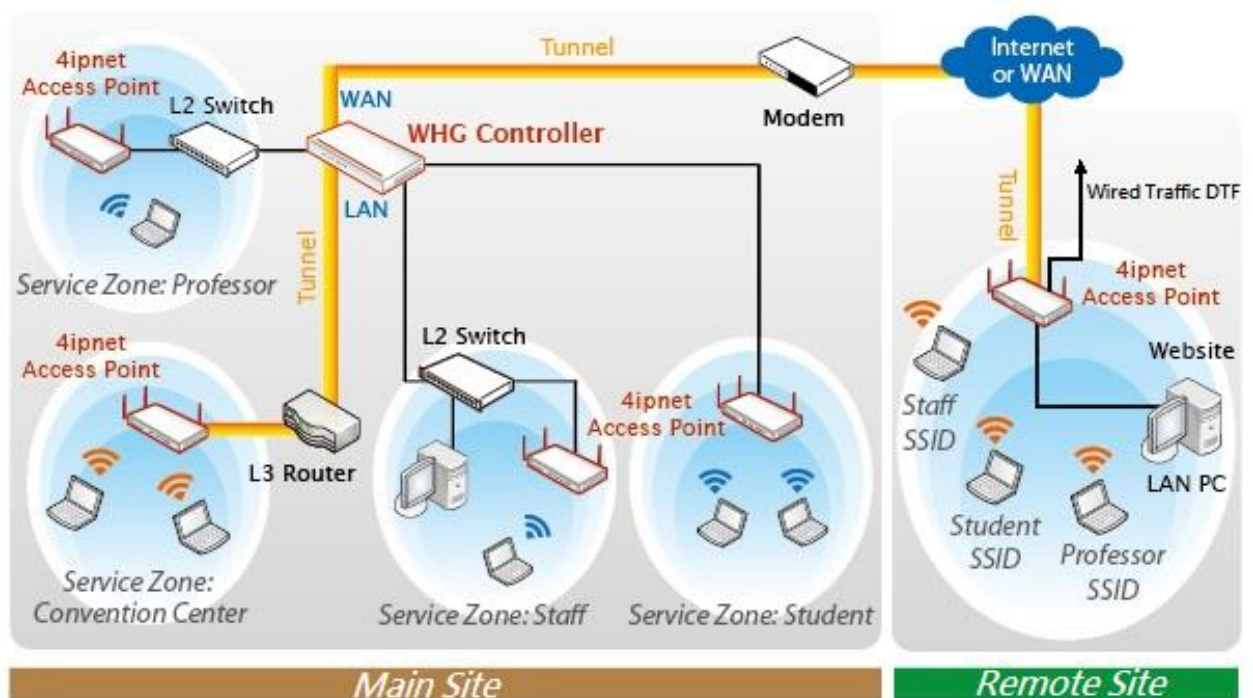
Layer 2 networks are relative simple network deployment topology that span physically under the LAN ports of 4ipnet WHG Controllers, two deployment scenarios are illustrated below.





【Layer 2 Network in Tag Based Mode】

Layer 3 networks not only span physically under the LAN ports of 4ipnet WHG Controller, it is also capable of reaching over different IP networks to manage remote sites with routable IP address via tunnels.



【Layer 3 Network with tunnels】

## 1.6 Key Terms & Concepts

**Gateway** is an edge device or network node where a small network attaches to a bigger network. 4ipnet WHG Controllers are in essence gateways in a network environment. Conventionally, the bigger network is referred as the WAN side or upstream network (physically connected via the WAN port), while the small network is referred as the LAN side.

**Local User** is a type of user whose account credential is stored in the 4ipnet WHG Controller's built-in database named "Local". The 4ipnet WHG Controller's "Local" database capacity varies with different model. A local user account does not have an expiration date once they are created. If administrator wishes to delete local accounts, this must be done manually from the Web Management Interface. In addition, 4ipnet WHG Controller's Local database can be configured as an external RADIUS database for another 4ipnet WHG Controller for account roaming.

**On-Demand User** is a type of user whose account credential is stored in the 4ipnet WHG Controller's built-in database named "On-Demand". The 4ipnet WHG Controller's "On-Demand" database capacity varies with different model. On-Demand User is designed for short term usage purpose; it has time or volume constraints and an expiration period. An On-Demand account record will be recycled for creating new On-Demand account if it has expired for over 15 days or has been deleted by the Administrator/Manager manually. In addition, 4ipnet WHG Controller's On-Demand database can be configured as an external RADIUS database for another 4ipnet WHG Controller for account roaming.

**External Authentication Database** is a user account database that is not built-in the 4ipnet WHG Controller. Besides Local database and On-Demand database, 4ipnet WHG Controller supports four additional types of External Authentication databases namely RADIUS, POP3, LDAP (including Active Directory), and NTDomain (Win2K's NTDS). External Authentication Database is useful for both implementing account

roaming and centralized account management.

**Service Zone** is a logic partition of 4ipnet WHG Controller's LAN. The concept of Service Zone is that it is a virtual gateway with customizable login portal page with its own gateway properties (such as LAN IP address, DHCP server settings, authentication options, etc.). With up to nine independent Service Zone profiles, 4ipnet WHG Controller is capable of servicing multiple hotspot franchises with a single device.

**LAN Port Mapping** is the correspondence relationship of logical network partitions, i.e. Service Zones to physical LAN ports on the 4ipnet WHG Controller. There are two modes of mapping available namely "Port-Based", and "Tag-Based". Port-Based mode statically maps a Service Zone to clients down stream of a physical LAN port. This mode will only service the maximum number of service zones based on the amount of physical LAN ports. Tag-Based mode dynamically maps a client to a service zone based on the VLAN ID tagged on the traffic packet.

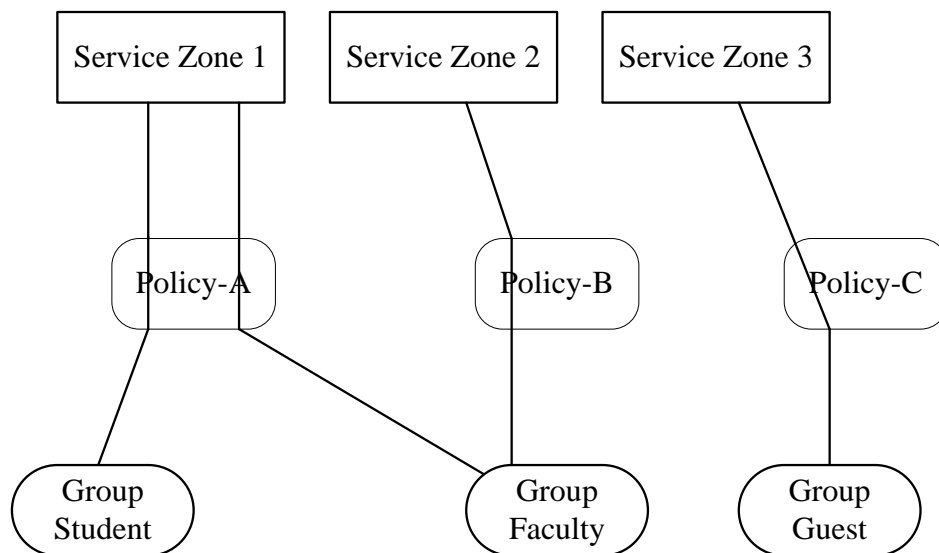
**Group** is a user role profile which defines the accessibility of a user to different Service Zones and in turn defines the QoS properties as well as network policy when access is granted. Each and every connected user will belong to a Group, determined by the type of user account used for authentication. If the administrator does not assign a new account to any specific Group or for users not required to authenticate, they will belong to a catch-all group named "None" by default.

**Policy** is the second tier of user control once a user's Group profile has been determined. Policy defines the firewall rules, privileges, login schedule, routing rules and session limit which will be enforced to users of a particular Group. A user may only belong to one Group but can be governed by different policies while accessing different Service Zones.

For users belonging to the "None" group or users not explicitly assigned a network Policy, they will be governed by a default catch-all policy named 'Global-Policy'. The

Global-Policy is a base policy which will be applied to all users if not applied with another policy.

The following Figure is an example that depicts the relationship between Service Zone, Group and Policy. In this example, Students and faculties logging into Service Zone 1 will be governed by Policy-A. Guests only have access to Service Zone 3, and will be bounded by Policy-C. Faculties have the access to both Service Zone 1 and Service Zone 2 under two different policies.



**【Relationship of Service Zone, Group and Policy】**

## 1.7 Recommended Configuration Sequence

- Set up system's Time Zone, NTP server, DNS server and WAN1 address
- Configure LAN address range for at least one Service Zone, and enable its authentication.
- Create user accounts to test the login page via wire line in the enabled Service Zone.
- Try to generate an On-Demand user and test the account.
- Configure Wireless Settings of Service Zone and add in AP.
- Configure necessary Service Zones based on applications.
- Set up Group and Policy (including Firewall rules and Session Limit).
- Customize the portal login page and add walled garden Advertisement links if needed.
- Set up Payment gateway to allow end user credit card self payment for On-Demand accounts if needed.
- Load SSL certificate for the Web Server before operation.
- Monitor generated status pages and reports.
- Perform other advanced setting for other specific application.

### 1.7.1. Common Settings

For the most commonly deployed scenarios in a standard network, please refer to Chapters 3 to 7.

**Chapters 3 to 7** contain configuration topics that encompass the most commonly used features in a typical network environment. It is recommended for users to start from Chapter 3 and proceed through Chapter 7 for any deployment.

### 1.7.2. Advanced Settings and Application

**Chapters 8 to 10** discuss about security, system maintenance, and monitoring. These contents are useful once you have successfully configured the necessary

functionalities and are for operation usage once your network is up and running. Customers with needs to fulfill specific applications, integration with 3<sup>rd</sup> party devices, customization etc., please refer to **Chapters 11** and beyond for advanced feature setup.

## ***Chapter 2. WMI & Setup Wizard***

### **2.1. Web Management Interface**

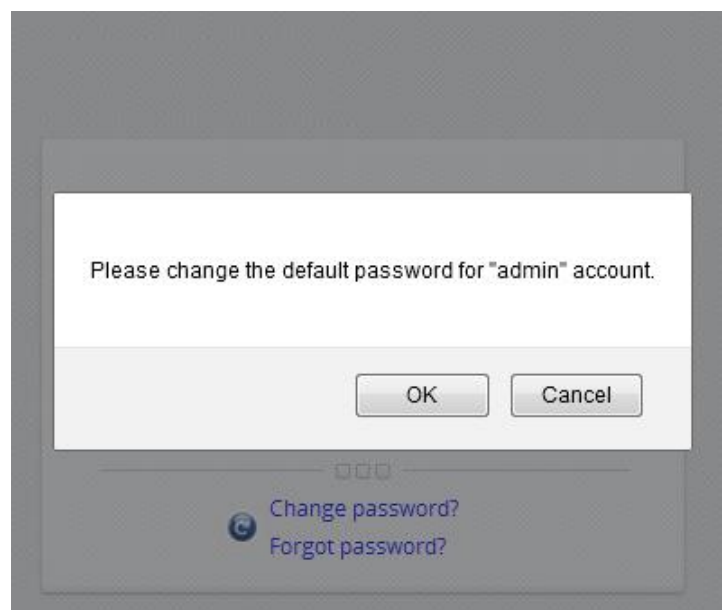
The Web Management Interface (WMI) of the WHG controller can be accessed through a web browser (Firefox, Chrome, IE9 and higher recommended) of any PC connected to the LAN interface with the default IP address of **192.168.1.254**.



The default administrator account and password is:

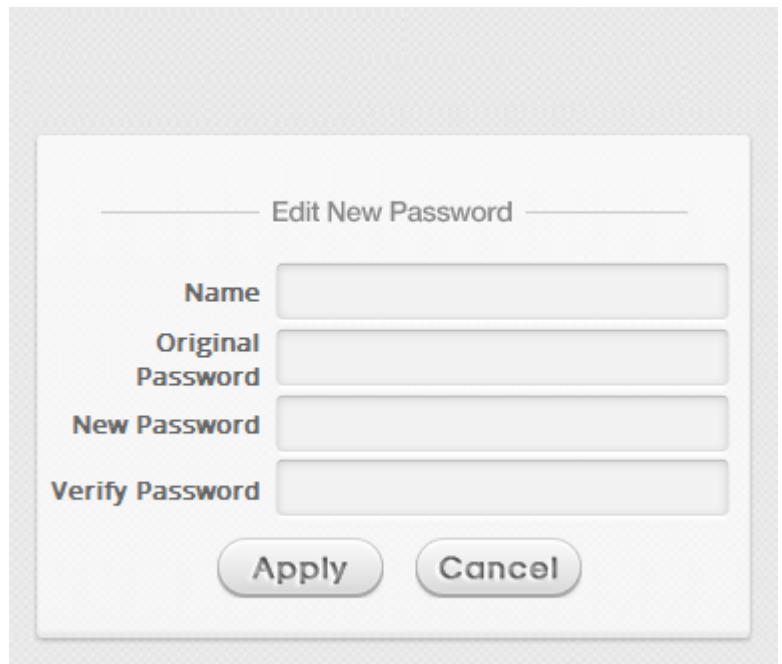
- Username: "admin"
- Password: "admin"

Upon the first login, the system prompts for the administrator to change password to enforce system security.

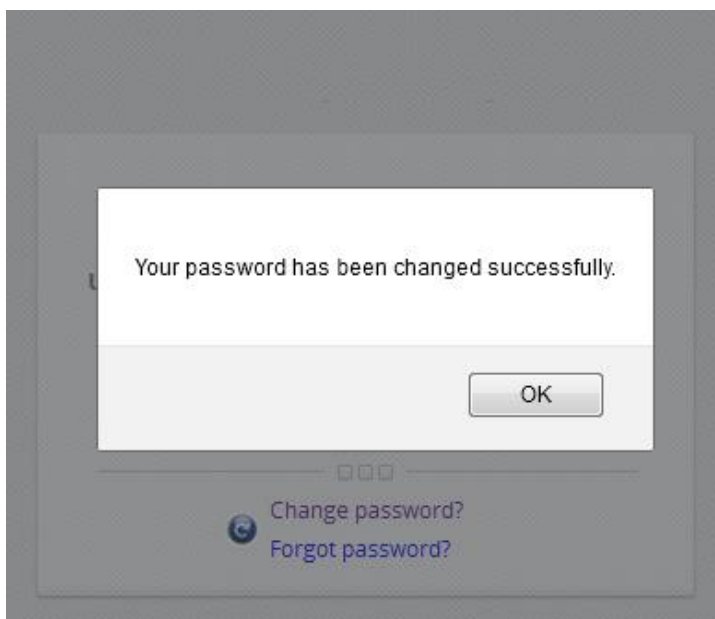




The password needs to be at least 6 characters long and include at least one alphabet and one number.

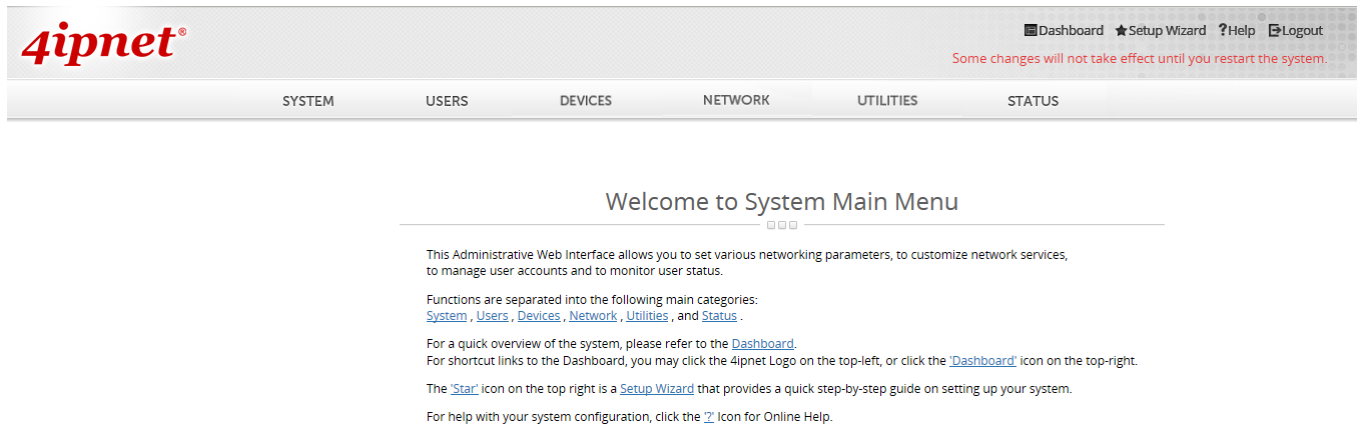


The screenshot shows a dialog box titled "Edit New Password". It contains four text input fields labeled "Name", "Original Password", "New Password", and "Verify Password". At the bottom of the dialog are two buttons: "Apply" and "Cancel".



You may refer to part E. of Appendix F for details on admin accounts configuration.

The WMI Welcome page is as shown below after a successful administrator login.



## NOTE

1. To logout, simply click the **Logout** icon on the upper right corner of the interface to return to the login screen.

## 2.2 Running the Wizard

The Setup Wizard provides a collection of configuration steps which are essential in the setup and operation of your network with minimum configurations.

To quickly configure WHG by using the **Setup Wizard**, click on the **Setup Wizard** button on the top right corner of the WMI homepage to start the configuration process.

### Step 1. General

- Select an appropriate time zone from the **Time Zone** drop-down list.
- Click **Next** to continue.

**1 FIRST STEP**  
Set Time Zone

**2 SECOND STEP**  
Configure WAN1

**3 THIRD STEP**  
Create A Local User

**4 YOU'RE DONE**  
Restart the System

It is recommended to select an appropriate time zone for the system.

**General**

Time Zone (GMT+08:00)Taipei

Exit Next

### Step 2. Select Connection Type for WAN1 Port

- There are three types of WAN connections to be selected from: **Static IP Address**, **Dynamic IP Address** and **PPPoE Client**. Select a proper Internet connection type. Below depicts an example of using Dynamic IP connection.
- Click **Next** to continue.
- For **Static IP Address** or **PPPoE Client**, follow the instructions on the screen.

**1 FIRST STEP**  
Set Time Zone

**2 SECOND STEP**  
Configure WAN1

**3 THIRD STEP**  
Create A Local User

**4 YOU'RE DONE**  
Restart the System

Please select connection type of the WAN1 interface and configure the settings.

### WAN1 Interface

☐ Static (Use the following IP settings)  
☒ Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically)  
☐ PPPoE

Exit Back Next

### Step 3. Add Local User Account (Optional)

- A new user can be added to the Local User database. To add a user here, enter the **Username** (e.g. testuser), **Password** (e.g. testuser), and assign an **Applied Group** to this particular user (or use the default **Group 1**).
- Click **Next** to continue.

**1 FIRST STEP**  
Set Time Zone

**2 SECOND STEP**  
Configure WAN1

**3 THIRD STEP**  
Create A Local User

**4 YOU'RE DONE**  
Restart the System

You can choose to add local user accounts for a quick configuration.

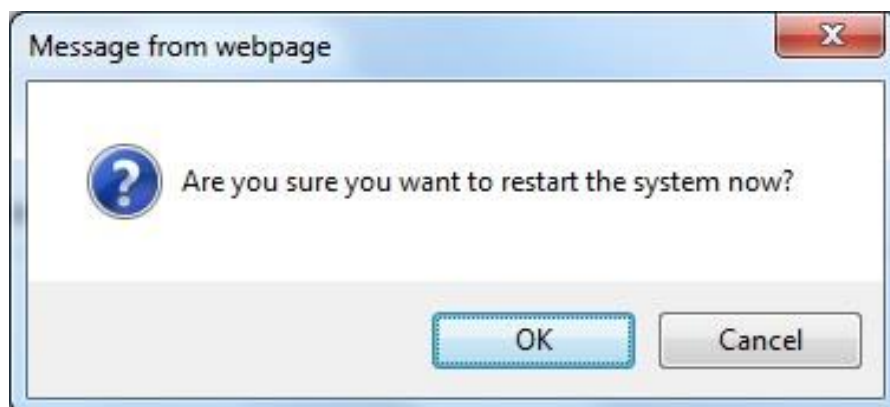
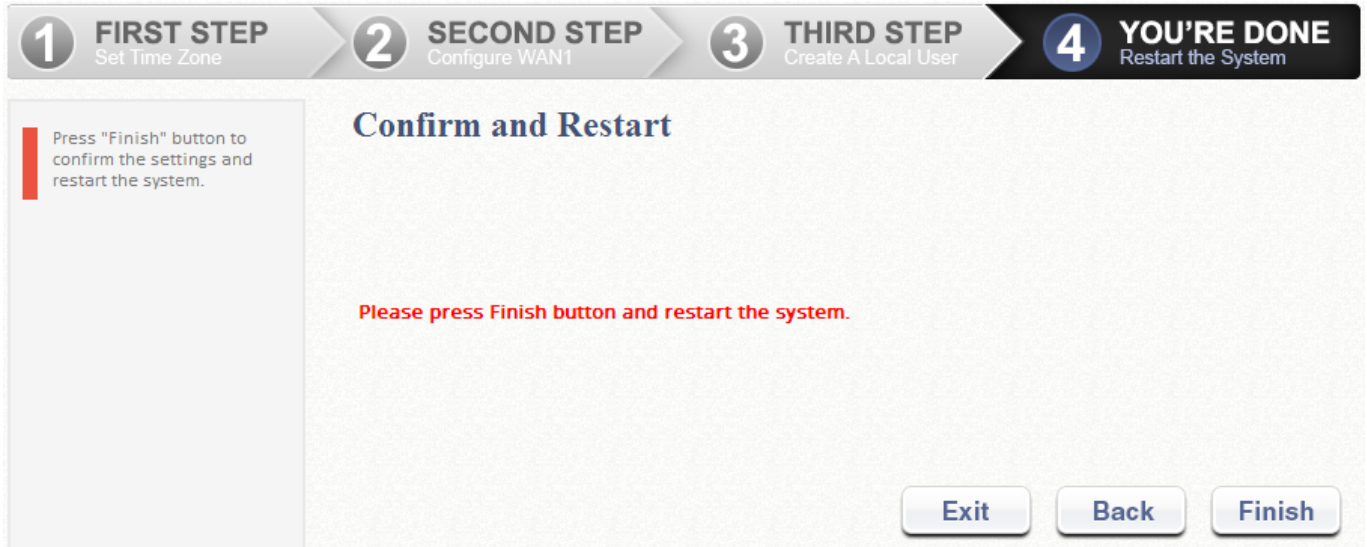
### Local User Account (Optional)

Username:   
 Password:   
 Group:

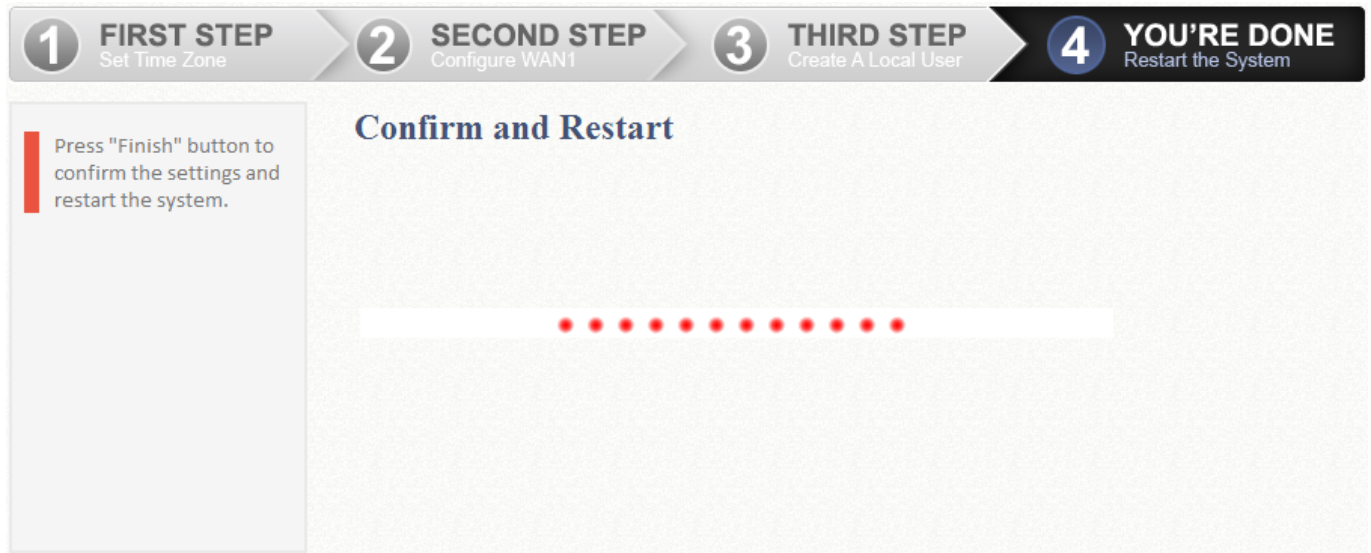
Exit Back Skip Next

## Step 4. Confirm and Restart WHG

- Click **Finish** to save current settings and restart the system.
- A confirmation dialog box will then appear. Click **OK** to continue.



- A **Confirm and Restart** message will appear on the screen during the restarting process. Please do not interrupt the system until the Administrator Login Page appears.



Please do NOT interrupt WHG restart process until the admin login page reappears – which indicates the restart process has been completed.

Restart process complete.



## ***Chapter 3. Basic Network Settings***

### **3.1. Network Planning**

Before installing the 4ipnet WHG Controller, careful network planning is required in order to meet the networking needs with the most efficient utilization of network resources. IT staff of any organization should assess the available network resources at hand, and design a suitable network topology with resiliency, capacity, and survivability in mind.

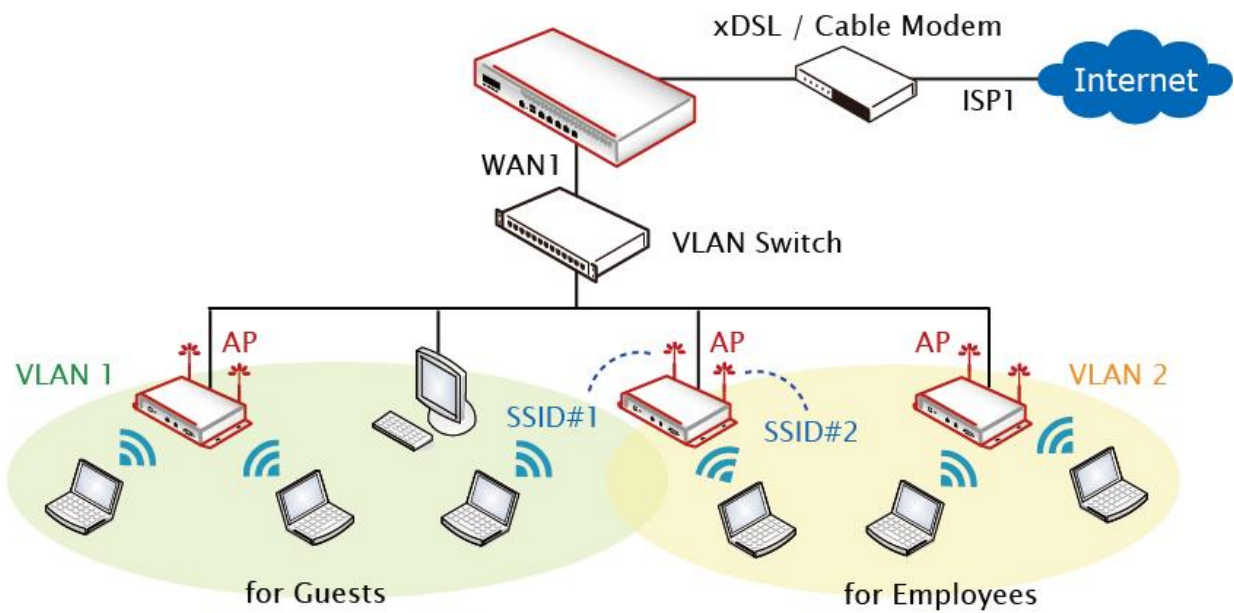
Typically, organization networks today are a combination of manageable wired and wireless LANs, sometimes even remote LANs. Designed to fulfill most deployment needs, the two main categories of network topologies supported by 4ipnet WHG Controllers are:

- 1) Layer 2 Topology
- 2) Layer 3 Topology

#### **Layer 2 Topology**

This network topology aims to build a managed Local Area Network (LAN) which consists of both wired and wireless capabilities to provide network services to a limited physical area such as office building, hotel, school premises, and etc.





【Graphical Illustration of Layer 2 Topology】

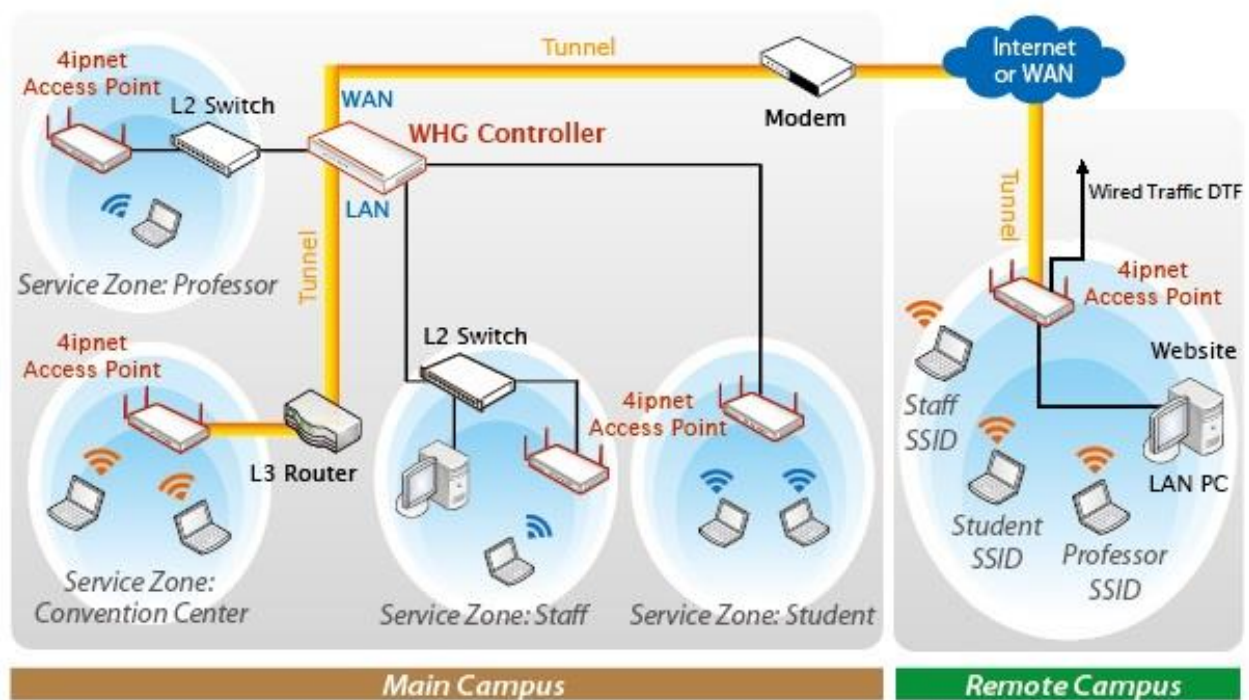
## Layer 2 Network Design Guidelines

- Always connect hierarchically. If there are multiple switches in a building, use an aggregation switch.
- Locate the aggregation switch close to the network core (e.g. mainframe housing)
- Locate edge switches close to users (e.g. one per floor)

## Layer 3 Topology

This network topology aims to build a managed Local Area Network (LAN) which consists of both wired and wireless capabilities to provide network services to local and remote physical areas such as enterprise buildings, hotel chains, college campuses, and etc.





【Graphical Illustration of Layer 3 Topology】

## Layer 3 Network Design Guidelines

- Always connect hierarchically whether in local LAN or remote LAN. If there are multiple switches in a building, use an aggregation switch.
- Locate the aggregation switch close to the network core (e.g. mainframe housing)
- Locate edge switches close to users (e.g. one per floor)
- Remote site's device (4ipnet AP or 4ipnet WHG Controller) uplink should either have a public IP address or an IP address in the same subnet as the main WHG Controller's WAN IP address.

## 3.2. Uplink (WAN side) Configuration

### 3.2.1 WAN Settings

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> WAN](#)

The WAN port supports four connection configurations **Static**, **Dynamic**, **PPPoE** and **PPTP**. These connection types are adequate enough to support most ISP. The **Physical Mode** drop-down list allows administrators to choose the speed and duplex of the WAN connection. When Auto-Negotiation is On, the System chooses the highest performance transmission mode (speed/duplex/flow control) that both the system and the device connected to the interface support.

WAN1 Configuration

Physical Mode: Auto

Interface Type: ☒ Static (Use the following IP settings)

IP Address: 10.29.42.101 \*

Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0 \*

Default Gateway: 10.29.0.1 \*

Preferred DNS Server: 168.95.1.1 \*

Alternate DNS Server:

☐ Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically)

☐ PPPoE

☐ PPTP

Depending on ISP's interfacing device the WAN port is connecting, you need to select the connection type applicable to you. For example, if your ISP is Cable modem issuing Dynamic address, then you would select **Dynamic** connection.

**Static:** Manually specifying the IP address of the WAN Port. The fields with red asterisks are required to be filled in.

**Dynamic:** It is only applicable for a network environment where the DHCP server is available on the upstream network. Click the **Renew** button to get an IP address automatically.

**PPPoE:** If your ISP provides PPPoE Dialup connection, then the ISP will issue you an account with a password. You would need to enter the account credential in the WAN configuration page for dialing up to the ISP.

**PPTP:** Although not a popular method, PPTP protocol for dialup connections is adapted by some ISPs (in European Countries). Your PPTP ISP will issue you an account with a password as well as the PPTP server address.

#### NOTE

1. When in doubt, please consult your ISP provider regarding details of your subscribed uplink service.

### 3.2.2. Dual Uplink

WHG Controllers are designed with 2 WAN ports for load balancing and failover support. WAN2 can be enabled for service once WAN1 connection is established.

If you would like to use a second Internet feed, select one of the three connection types applicable to WAN2 port: **Static**, **Dynamic**, and **PPPoE**. The Physical Mode of the WAN2 port can be selected.

The screenshot shows the 'WAN2 Configuration' window. It has a title bar 'WAN2 Configuration'. Below the title bar, there are two settings: 'Physical Mode' with a dropdown menu currently set to 'Auto', and 'Interface Type' with four radio button options: 'None' (which is selected), 'Static (Use the following IP settings)', 'Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically)', and 'PPPoE'.

**Static:** Manually specifying the IP address of the WAN Port. The fields with red asterisks are required to be filled in.

**Dynamic:** It is only applicable for a network environment where the DHCP server is available on the upstream network. Click the **Renew** button to get an IP address automatically.

**PPPoE:** If your ISP provides PPPoE Dialup connection, then the ISP will issue you an account with a password. You would need to enter the account credential in the WAN configuration page for dialing up to the ISP.

**NOTE**

1. When in doubt, please consult your ISP provider regarding details of your subscribed uplink service.
  2. Please note that WAN load balancing and WAN failover features are only available when WAN2 is configured.
-

### 3.2.3. WAN Port Selection for dual WAN1 / WAN2 models

WHG Controller models WHG707 and above are carrier grade models designed with a SFP and Ethernet port for both WAN1 and WAN2 respectively.

Administrator can further decide which physical port to be deployed as WAN1 or WAN2, Ethernet port, SFP port, Ethernet and SFP port, or both port bonded with aggregated throughput.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> WAN](#)

WAN1 Configuration

Physical Mode

Auto

Interface Type

☐ Static (Use the following IP settings)
 ☒ Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically) Renew

☒ Obtain DNS server address automatically.
 

Preferred DNS Server:

168.95.1.1

Alternate DNS Server:

☐ PPPoE
 ☐ PPTP

Transmission Option

☐ Ether Port
 ☐ Fiber Port
 ☒ Fiber Port and Ether Port
 ☐ Bonding

### WAN2 Configuration

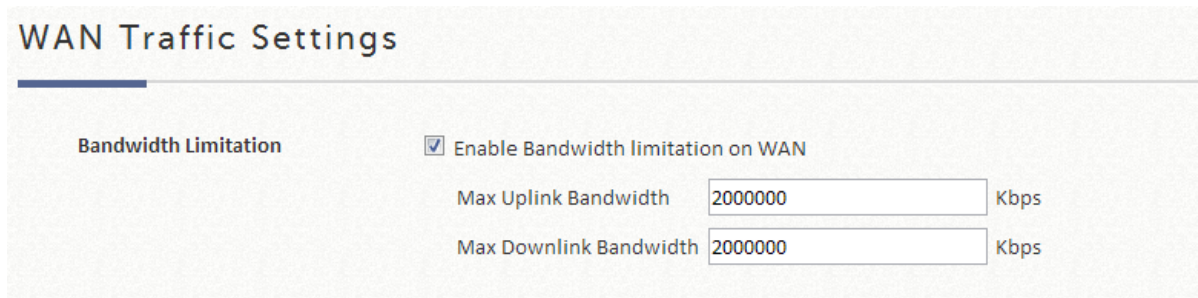
<b>Physical Mode</b>	Auto ▼
<b>Interface Type</b>	<input type="radio"/> Static (Use the following IP settings) <input checked="" type="radio"/> Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically) <span>Renew</span> <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Obtain DNS server address automatically. Preferred DNS Server: <input type="text" value="168.95.1.1"/> * Alternate DNS Server: <input type="text"/> <input type="radio"/> PPPoE <input type="radio"/> PPTP
<b>Transmission Option</b>	<input type="radio"/> Ether Port <input type="radio"/> Fiber Port <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fiber Port and Ether Port <input type="radio"/> Bonding

The deployment options are:

- **Ether Port:** Deploy the copper Ethernet WAN port for service.
- **Fiber Port:** Deploy the SFP port for service.
- **Fiber Port and Ether Port:** Bridge Fiber port and Ethernet port, physically only connect one uplink either via SFP port or Ether port.
- **Bonding:** Deploy both SFP port and copper Ethernet port for service. This option aggregates the two connections and will result in aggregated higher throughput.



### 3.2.4. WAN Traffic Control



WAN Traffic Settings

**Bandwidth Limitation**

☒ Enable Bandwidth limitation on WAN

Max Uplink Bandwidth  Kbps

Max Downlink Bandwidth  Kbps

The Uplink and Downlink bandwidth configured here is the combined bandwidth for WAN interface including WAN1 and WAN2. However, please note that the actual bandwidth is still bounded by the network speed of your ISP operator. For instance, when the network speed of your ISP is limited to 1Gbps, the total throughput under such constraint will not be greater than 1Gbps even if you configure 2Gbps on the Controller.

### 3.2.5. Uplink Detection & Failover

#### Uplink Detection

When the WAN interface has been configured with a valid uplink connection, administrator may specify up to three outbound sites as detection target for verifying whether the uplink service is alive or down. The controller will periodically check the uplink status.

A field of warning message text may be customized by the administrator which will be displayed on the user's web browser when all three detection targets fail to respond.

### WAN Traffic Settings

Bandwidth Limitation

☒ Enable Bandwidth limitation on WAN

Max Uplink Bandwidth

2000000

Kbps

Max Downlink Bandwidth

2000000

Kbps

Address for Detecting Internet Connection

www.google.com

www.apple.com

www.microsoft.com

☒ Warning of Internet Disconnection

When the addresses for detecting internet connection are unreachable, this message will be shown on the browser.

Sorry! The service is temporarily unavailable.

## Load Balancing

Administrator can spread the system traffic across WAN1 and WAN2 ports based on percentage load, calculated using session, bytes, or packets.

### WAN Traffic Settings

Bandwidth Limitation

☒ Enable Bandwidth limitation on WAN

Max Uplink Bandwidth

2000000

Kbps

Max Downlink Bandwidth

2000000

Kbps

Function of WAN2

☐ Disable(None)
 ☒ Load Balancing

The "Load Balancing" function when Enabled also acts as the "Failover" function when one of the WAN interfaces is down.

Basis

Sessions

▼

WAN1 Load Allocation:

50

%

☐ Wan Failover

## WAN Failover

Once enabled, whenever WAN1 is down, WAN2 will service the traffic originally handled by WAN1. If the nested option is selected, service will be returned to WAN1 link if it is up again. This feature is not available to be used concurrently with Load Balancing.



## WAN Traffic Settings

<b>Bandwidth Limitation</b>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable Bandwidth limitation on WAN
	Max Uplink Bandwidth <input type="text" value="2000000"/> Kbps
	Max Downlink Bandwidth <input type="text" value="2000000"/> Kbps
<b>Function of WAN2</b>	<input type="radio"/> Disable(None)
	<input type="radio"/> Load Balancing
	The "Load Balancing" function when Enabled also acts as the "Failover" function when one of the WAN interfaces is down.
	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Wan Failover
	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Fall back when WAN1 connection is restored

### NOTE

1. Please note that WAN Failover feature cannot be enabled concurrently with Load Balancing feature.

### 3.3. Downlink (LAN side) VLAN option

The Downlink of WHG Controller is basically your managed network deployed for service. There are two types of deployment mode for networks attached to the LAN ports of the WHG Controller: Port-Based mode and Tag-Based mode.

#### NOTE

1. If HA feature is in **Enabled** status, LAN1 will be transformed into a dedicated HA port and will not be able to service any Service Zone.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> LAN Ports](#)

#### 3.3.1. Port-Based Service Zone

Port-Based mode operates with the principle that each physical LAN port can be mapped to an enabled Service Zone or disabled from providing service. Operating under port based mode therefore means the maximum amount of Service Zones available to actually provide service is determined by the number of LAN ports on the Controller.

LAN Ports

LAN Port Mode

☒ Port-Based ☐ Tag-Based

When LAN Ports are set to Port-Based Mode, Service Zones will be differentiated by the respective LAN ports. When LAN Ports are set to Tag-Based Mode, VLANs are used to separate traffic to different Service Zones. This is needed for Port Location Mapping and Access Point Management.

Port - Service Zone Mapping

Default SZ1 SZ2 Disable

LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4

Trusted Port None

**Trusted Port:** When a LAN port is selected here, clients under this port will not require authentication regardless of the corresponding Service Zone settings.

### 3.3.2. Tag-Based Service Zone

Tag-Based operation mode operates under the principle that different Service Zones are identified by VLAN ID. This means that Tag-Based operation allows each physical LAN port to accept traffic for any enabled Service Zones – Traffic handling will be processed internally according to the VLAN ID traffic packets carry.

LAN Ports

LAN Port Mode

☐ Port-Based
 ☒ Tag-Based

When LAN Ports are set to Port-Based Mode, Service Zones will be differentiated by the respective LAN ports. When LAN Ports are set to Tag-Based Mode, VLANs are used to separate traffic to different Service Zones. This is needed for Port Location Mapping and Access Point Management.

Port - Service Zone Mapping

Default

▼

Default

▼

Default

▼

Default

▼

LAN1

LAN2

LAN3

LAN4

39

## ***Chapter 4. User Authentication Database***

### **4.1. Authentication Database Configuration**

Authentication database is a storage device where users' credentials may be inquired for validity. When a user is associated to an authentication enabled in Service Zone, the 4ipnet WHG controller checks the database to see if the submitted user ID and password combination exists, in order for the user to get network access. 4ipnet WHG controllers support built-in and external authentication databases.

All the authentication options are listed below:

#### Built-in Authentication options

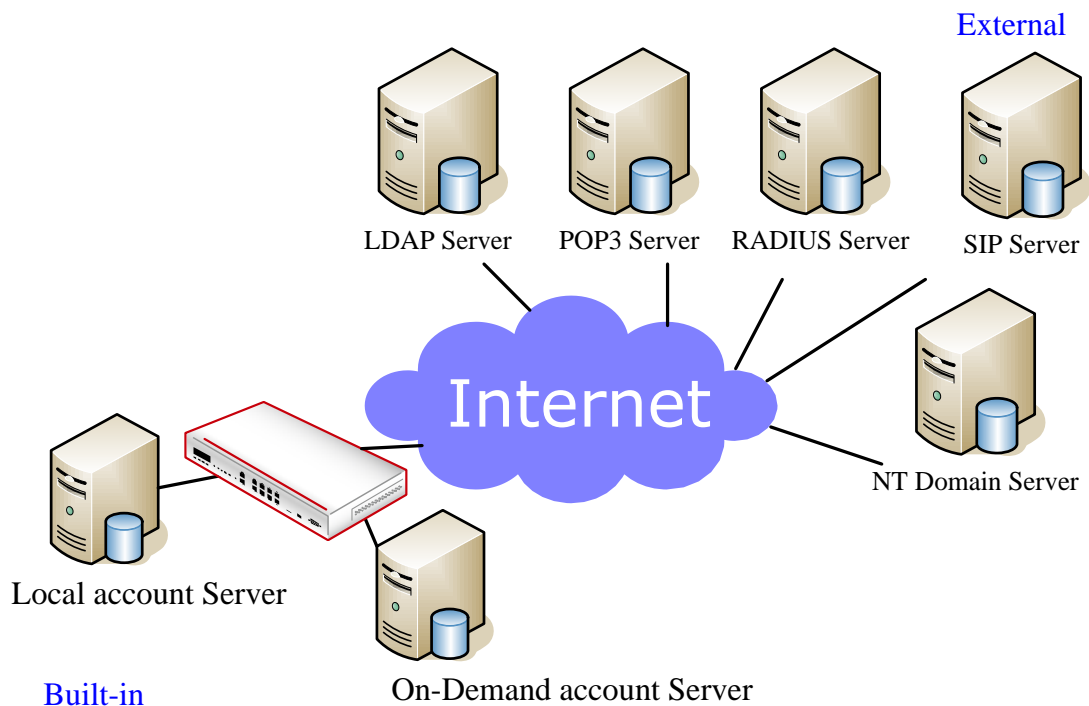
**Local** with user credentials stored in the built-in Local database.

**On-Demand** with user credentials stored in the built-in On-Demand database.

**Free** an access option that allows users to access networks with any specified identity token on the login page.

#### External Authentication Options

These options use external servers to implement the authentication process. 4ipnet WHG controllers support some of the most common external authentication options, including: **RADIUS, LDAP, NT Domain, POP3, SIP.**



【Graphical illustration of authentication databases in relation to WHG Controller】

Authentication Options	Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Default	Enable
	Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 3	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 4	LDAP	ldap	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 5	POP3	pop3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	On-Demand	ONDEMAND	ondemand	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	SIP	SIP	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Guest	FREE	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

The configurations of authentication options for Internal and External authentication are done separately. The 5 external authentication servers (RADIUS, POP3, LDAP, NT Domain, and SIP) are customizable and can be enabled concurrently.

## NOTE

1. Auth Options may be selectively enabled or disabled to authenticate users in each Service Zone profile.

## 4.2. Built-in Authentication Databases

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication](#)

### 4.2.1. Local User Database

This type of authentication method checks the local database that stores user, often the staff and credentials internally. The Local user database is designed to store static accounts which will not be deleted unless manually performed by administrator.


Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> Local >> Local User List](#)

#### Account generation

Click **Add User** to create one or multiple accounts.

Local User List

No	Status	Username	Password	MAC	Group	Activation	Expiration	Local VPN	Remark
(Total:0/6000) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: <input type="text" value="10"/>									



Username	Password	MAC Address	Group	Local VPN	Account Span	Remark
example	••••••		Group 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
			Group 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
			Group 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
			Group 1 ▾	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	

**NOTE**

1. The fields with red asterisk are mandatory fields while the others are optional.
2. **MAC Address** field once configured will bind this particular account under the condition that it may only be granted access using the device specified.
3. The **Group** field specifies the group profile of the account being created.
4. **Remark** is for any additional note administrator would like to stress. It will be shown on the user list.
5. You can check the **Enable Local VPN** checkbox to build up a secure VPN tunnel between the device using the account and the controller.
6. **Expiration** are optional time constraints which may be enforced to this account if **the Account Span** option is checked. This is a useful attribute if used in complement with **Multiple Login**, ideal to provide network access to a group of people for a specified amount of time, for instance during a seminar event.

**Account Import and Export**

The Local user database can import and export user credentials by using the Upload and Download functions respectively. The download file will be a text file in csv format displayed in a new browser window, administrator can perform "save as" to backup the user accounts in PC storage for future use. Upload operation is performed by browsing for a backed up txt file and import the accounts back into the Local user database.

Local User List

---

<input type="checkbox"/>	No	Status	Username	Password	MAC	Group	Activation	Expiration	Local VPN	Remark
(Total:0/6000) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1)           Row per Page: <input type="text" value="10"/>										



## NOTE

1. The txt files generated may be inter-used by all WHG controller series as the defined csv format are consistent for all models.
2. Duplicated accounts will result in upload failure and a warning message will be displayed.

## Modifications to Account Credentials

For existing user accounts, further modification is possible simply by clicking the username hyperlink on the page to reconfigure account attributes.

Local User List

Add... Delete Backup List Upload

Search

No	Status	Username	Password	MAC	Group	Activation	Expiration	Local VPN	Remark
1	Valid	<a href="#">example</a>	example		Group 1			Disable	

Editing Existing User Data

Username: example

Password: example

MAC Address:

Applied Group: Group 1

Enable Local VPN: ☐

Remark:

Enable Expire Time: ☐

Begin Date:  Select Date

End Date:  Select Date

## Deleting Accounts

Accounts in the Local user database may be deleted individually or entirely by selecting the "Select All" checkbox. There will be a popup window asking if you are sure to carry out the action.



Local User List

<div> Add Delete Backup List Upload </div> <div> <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> </div>										
	No	Status	Username	Password	MAC	Group	Activation	Expiration	Local VPN	Remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	Valid	example	example		Group 1			Disable	

## 4.2.2. On-Demand User Database

The On-Demand user database is designed for guest user account provisioning with time or traffic volume constraints. Ideal for deployment needs of Hotels, Hotspot venues, Enterprise visitor reception, and more. The On-Demand Authentication option offers plenty of options for customization. POS tickets can be customized to businesses' needs, and multiple payment options are also available on the WHG Controllers.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> On-Demand](#)

### On-Demand Authentication

User Postfix	<input type="text" value="ondemand"/>
Billing Plans	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
Currency	<input type="radio"/> None <input type="radio"/> \$ USD <input type="radio"/> € EUR <input type="radio"/> £ GBP <input type="text"/> <p>This is used when the currency is not defined in the Paypal account. Or input another desired monetary unit (max. 3 letters) in the blank field.</p>
Expired Account Cache	<input type="text" value="30"/> day(s)
Out-of-quota Account Cache	<input type="text" value="30"/> day(s)
Set Ticket's Serial Number	<input type="text" value="000001"/> <input type="button" value="Set"/>
Web Printout	<input type="button" value="Configure"/> <p>This will be applied to the regular printer printout when creating a single On-Demand account.</p>
POS Tickets	<input type="button" value="Configure"/> <p>Number of Tickets <input checked="" type="radio"/> 1 <input type="radio"/> 2</p> <p>This will be applied to printouts from the POS ticket printer. Templates can be edited for customization.</p>
Terminal Server	<input type="button" value="Configure"/> <p>Terminal Servers are add-on devices such as the SDS100 or SDS200W.</p>
Payment Gateway	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
SMS Gateway	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
Account Roaming Out	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

## On-Demand Account Settings

1. **General Settings** for the On-Demand Account database can be configured on this page. General Settings include the customization of POS/Web tickets, Payment Gateway options, and etc. When Terminal Servers (such as the SDS200W) are deployed for account generation, remember to configure the IP and Port in Terminal Server configuration. The WHG Controller can work in hand with Clickatell SMS server for On-Demand accounts credentials to be sent to users via SMS message.

## SMS Gateway

## Selection

☐ Disable☒ Clickatell

## Send SMS for

☐ Account purchases via Payment Gateway ☒ Free Account Registration ☐ Both

## Clickatell Configuration

API ID

\*

User Name

\*

Password

\*

API URL

\*

Registration before Accounts Expired

☒ Allow ☐ Block

Query Balance

## Billing Plans for Clickatell

Plan	Activation	Quota	Price	Remark
1	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
0	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>

## Account Registration Control

☒ Disable ☐ Black List ☐ White List

## Web Page Customization

With a set of Clickatell account Username/Password, the SMS Gateway can be configured to send SMS messages upon On-Demand account creation. The SMS service can be used for free access, paid access with payment

gateway integration, or both. Define an API ID and activate the desired billing plans. Multiple Billing Plans may be activated if needed. To prevent the SMS Gateway from being flooded by SMS queries for account generation, an Account Registration Control option is available. In addition, the administrator has an option of allowing or disallowing users to register for new accounts prior to account expiration. To block valid accounts from requesting new accounts, set option to "Enabled".

With the SMS Gateway enabled, the Billing Plan selection page will appear as such:

Plan (s)	Price ( ¢ )	Remark
<input checked="" type="radio"/> 1 min(s) of connection time quota with expiration	11	

**Information**

Cell Phone Number

**Note**

( A ) Please enter the cell phone number with country code  
 ( B ) After clicking on "Register" button, account information will be sent to the cell phone the one you fill above.

**Back** **Register**

Note that the Billing Plan selection page may be customized if needed.

2. Define account usage terms in **Billing Plans**. Up to 10 billing plan profiles are available for the administrator to customize the terms of use by selecting an appropriate account type. The User Group profile for each Billing Plan is also assigned here.

## Billing Plans

No	Plan Type	Quota	Price	Active	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
2	Volume	500 Mbyte(s) of traffic volume quota	5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 2	<button>Reset</button>
3	Hotel Cut-off-time	Valid until 12:00 the following day	10	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 3	<button>Reset</button>
4	Duration-time	Valid for 4 hour(s) elapsed time	3.99	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 4	<button>Reset</button>
5	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
6	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
7	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
8	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
9	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
0	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>

**NOTE**

1. For more detailed information on the four major account types, please refer to **Appendix D**.
2. For more detailed information on Ticket Customization, please refer to Online Help or the 4ipnet Application Note on Ticket Customization.

**On-Demand Accounts**

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> On-Demand Accounts](#)

After enabling the selected Billing Plans, On-Demand Accounts generation can be done on **On-Demand Account Creation**. On-Demand accounts can be created individually or in batches.

**The On-Demand Accounts List** houses all the existing On-Demand accounts. Each account's status, quota, etc. will be displayed for reference. On-Demand account import, export, deletion and Admin Redeem are also performed on this page.

### On-Demand Account List

Delete

Restore List

Backup List

Delete Expired

Delete Out of Quota

Search

<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Remaining Quota	Status	Group	Reference	External ID	Redeem
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">g55c</a>	4 hr(s)	Normal	Group 1			<a href="#">Redeem</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">example</a>	Until 2013/01/26-13:00	Normal	Group 3			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test0004</a>	4 hr(s)	Normal	Group 4			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test0003</a>	4 hr(s)	Normal	Group 4			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test0002</a>	4 hr(s)	Normal	Group 4			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">test0001</a>	4 hr(s)	Normal	Group 4			
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">g7sx</a>	500 M Byte(s)	Normal	Group 2			<a href="#">Redeem</a>

(Total:7/9000)

[First](#)
[Prev](#)
[Next](#)
[Last](#)

Go to Page

1

(Page:1/1)

Row per Page:

10

### 4.2.3. The Guest Authentication Option

The Guest Authentication Option is not technically a user database, but rather a specially designed option to allow a user to access and surf the network without any user account or password.

This feature allows the user to associate with a particular Service Zone, enter a specified string of text which may be a social security number, email, etc. defined by the administrator, and use the network without actual authentication.

The terms of use as well as usage constraints may be configured in the Guest authentication option profile.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> Guest](#)

**Step1:** Setting up the Guest authentication profile.



Main > Users > Internal Authentication > Guest Authentication

When Social Media Login or Guest Questionnaire is enabled, the controller collects information from the clients. Please enable Disclaimer or customized login page to include claims and reminders.

## Guest Authentication

Guest Login Input	<input type="radio"/> Hidden <input checked="" type="radio"/> Visible
Social Media Login	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable To configure the Social Media Login settings, go to <a href="#">Social Media Login</a>
E-mail Denial List	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable <a href="#">Configure</a>
Guest Questionnaire	<a href="#">Configure</a>
Guest Access Time	<input type="radio"/> Unlimited <input checked="" type="radio"/> Limited
Quota	0 hour(s) 30 minute(s)
Reactivation	After 1 hour(s) 0 minute(s)
Access Limit	5 per day *(0:Unlimited)
Group	Group 1 ▼
Email Verification	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable
Guest Quota List	<a href="#">View</a>
Guest Information	<a href="#">View</a>

[Apply](#) [Cancel](#)

Selecting **Visible** helps administrators enable **Guest Login Input** which allows clients to access internet by entering emails. The **E-mail Denial List** checks the email domains for login permission, if prevention of junk mailboxes is desired. **Guest Questionnaire** provides administrators with options to customize extra questions on the login page for guest login, where the access information from guest users would be collected and viewed in the **Guest Information** list. **Guest Access Time** when set to "Limited" will enforce a usage time constraint based on MAC addresses. If the **Quota** is set to 30 minutes, each device may only be allowed 30 minutes of usage, and a new session will only be possible once the **Reactivation** time has elapsed. Administrators also get to decide how many times a device can request for a free account in a day by configuring **Access Limit**. Guest users are then mapped to a selected User Group for policies application.

The screenshot displays the 4ipnet user interface. On the left, there is a 'LOGIN' form with fields for 'Username', 'Password', and a 'Remember Me' checkbox. Below this is a 'FREE LOGIN' section with fields for 'Email', 'Age', and 'Cell Phone'. A red box highlights the 'Age' and 'Cell Phone' fields, with an arrow pointing to the 'Guest Questionnaire' section on the right. The 'Guest Questionnaire' section contains a table with 5 rows and 3 columns: 'No.', 'Active', and 'Question'. The first two rows are filled with '1', '2', 'Age', and 'Cell Phone'. Below this is the 'Guest Information' section, which includes a 'Download' button and a table with columns: 'Type', 'Name', 'Email Address', 'Gender', 'Birthday', 'Location', 'Custom 1 (Age)', 'Custom 2 (Cell Phone)', and 'Last Login'. The table contains three rows of data, with the last row highlighted by a red box. The last row shows a 'Free' user with 'N/A' for Name, 'example@4ipnet.com' for Email Address, 'N/A' for Gender and Birthday, 'N/A' for Location, '30' for Custom 1 (Age), '0987654321' for Custom 2 (Cell Phone), and '2015-12-30 13:52:05' for Last Login.

No.	Active	Question
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Age
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Cell Phone
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	

Type	Name	Email Address	Gender	Birthday	Location	Custom 1 (Age)	Custom 2 (Cell Phone)	Last Login
facebook	Fouripnet Testvia	testvia@4ipnet.com	female	N/A	N/A			2015-12-24 15:56:09
google	Fouripnet Testvia	testvia@4ipnet.com	female	N/A	N/A			2015-12-29 10:58:02
Free	N/A	example@4ipnet.com	N/A	N/A	N/A	30	0987654321	2015-12-30 13:52:05

**Email verification** ensures that the entered email is a valid email address. When this option is enabled, an activation time is allocated to the client. The client then has to activate this account within the activation time to extend his/her usage time by clicking a link in the mail sent by the mail server. Note that the activation is merely a timer and does not add to the account's Quota. The Sender Name, Email Subject, Email Content are all customizable as soon as the SMTP server is ready. SMTP server configuration is done by clicking the "Assign SMTP Server" button.

The screenshot shows the 'Email Verification' configuration page. It has a 'Disable' radio button and an 'Enable' radio button, with 'Enable' selected. Below this is the 'Email activation time' section with input fields for '0' hour(s) and '10' minute(s). To the right of this section is a button labeled 'Assign SMTP server' and a message that says 'SMTP server is not ready'. Below the activation time section are three text input fields for 'Sender name' (containing 'Internet service'), 'Activation email subject' (containing 'Please activate your account'), and 'Activation email content' (containing 'Congratulations! You can go online for free. If you want to extend the usage time, please click the link below to activate your account for more usage time.'). Below these is an 'Activation link' section with an empty text input field. At the bottom is a 'Guest Account List' section with a 'View' button.



**Step2:** Setting up the Social Media Login profile.

4ipnet WHG-series Controllers also provide a convenient method for guest authentication; **Social Media Login** enables client to access internet by logging in with their own Social Media Accounts, ex. Facebook, Google+, and Open ID. The detail configuration can be done with the hyperlink to **Social Media Login** with these application registration IDs or secrets (see 4.3.6 Social Media). Some information of the accounts are available for collection in the **Guest Information** list for administrators' further analysis or marketing purposes. Account names, account emails, gender, birthdays, and location on the Social Media Account List are downloadable for administrators' data manipulation. Guest Questionnaire answer sheets are displayed over following custom columns as well.

Guest Information

Download Delete All

Type	Name	Email Address	Gender	Birthday	Location	Custom 1 (Age)	Custom 2 (Cell Phone)	Last Login
facebook	Fouripnet Testvia	testvia@4ipnet.com	female	N/A	N/A			2015-12-24 15:56:09
Free	N/A	example@4ipnet.com	N/A	N/A	N/A	30	0987654321	2015-12-30 13:52:05

(Total:2) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 10

Administrators are able to download the collected guest information by clicking "Download" button, besides, a "Delete All" button is available for deleting all the stored data. Administrator can delete all entries after export to keep the list up-to-date.

**NOTE**

- When **Social Media Login** or **Guest Questionnaire** is enabled, the controller collects information from the clients. Please enable Disclaimer or customized login page to include claims and reminders.

### Step3: Implement into specific Service Zones and login pages

Choose the desired Service Zone where you would like to apply the Guest authentication option - Go to Main Menu > System > Service Zone > Configure. Scroll down the page to **Authentication Options**. Check to enable the option for Guest Authentication Option as shown in the figure below.

Authentication Options					
Auth. Option	Auth. Database	Postfix	Default	Enabled	
Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Server 3	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Server 4	LDAP	ldap	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Server 5	POP3	pop3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
On-Demand	ONDEMAND	ondemand	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
SIP	SIP	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Guest	FREE	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	

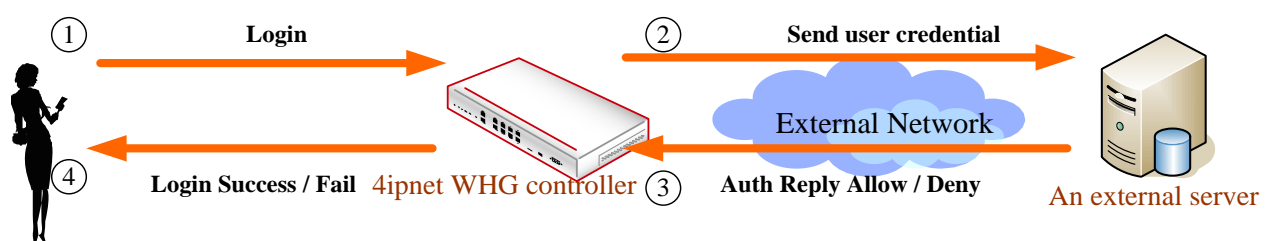
Consequently, after going through configurations from STEP 1 to STEP 3, end users will see that the an additional section for guest access will show on the Service Zone's login page.

By typing an email address and click login or by clicking Social Media Login button, approving the terms and condition of free accessing public Wi-Fi, the guest users will be able to access the network with constraints specified in Guest Authentication Option profile and the Group profile. MAC address will be checked to avoid malicious use of free access.

The screenshot shows a web-based login interface. At the top, there's a decorative header with red and blue wavy lines. Below it, the word "LOGIN" is centered. There are two input fields: "Username" and "Password", each followed by a red "Login" button. Below the password field is a checkbox labeled "Remember Me". Further down, the text "FREE LOGIN" is centered. Below it is an "Email" input field, followed by the text "Enter your Email account to login for free." and another red "Login" button. At the bottom, there are three buttons for social media sign-in: "Sign in with Facebook" (blue), "Sign in with Google" (red), and "Sign in with OpenID" (orange). At the very bottom, there is a link labeled "Device Logout".

### 4.3. External Authentication Options

Most organizations have already established a centralized user account servers. Consequently, 4ipnet WHG controllers are equipped with a variety of external authentication options so as to support account roaming and adapt to existing network. A simple illustration of using external authentication is shown below.



**NOTE**

1. Please note that having configured the authentication options whether using built-in or external databases, they will need to be enabled in each enabled Service Zones individually.

### 4.3.1. RADIUS

Remote Authentication Dial In User Service (RADIUS) is a networking protocol that provides centralized Authentication, Authorization, and Accounting (AAA) management for computers to connect and use a network service. It is also the most commonly used external authentication mechanism in use today.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> External Authentication](#)

Server No. 2: Server 2

### External RADIUS Server Settings

Group	Group 1
Local VPN	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Local VPN
802.1X Authentication	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Username Format	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Leave Unmodified <input type="radio"/> Complete (e.g. user1@postfix) <input type="radio"/> Only ID (e.g. user1)
NAS Identifier	<input type="text"/>
NAS Port Type	19 *(Default 19, Range: 0~35)
Accounting Delay Time	0 *(Default: 0)
Service Type	1 *(Default: 1, Range: 1~11)
Class	<input type="text"/>
Class-Group Mapping	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>

Server 2 by default is configured to use RADIUS authentication. 4ipnet WHG controllers support RADIUS authentication, RADIUS class mapping, and RADIUS transparent login with 802.1X.

Below is the detailed configuration page of RADIUS settings. Attributes of the

**Primary RADIUS Server** and **Secondary RADIUS Server** can be configured depending on service deployment.



**External RADIUS Server Related Settings**802.1X Authentication ☐ Enable ☒ DisableUsername Format ☒ Leave Unmodified ☐ Complete (e.g. user1@postfix) ☐ Only ID (e.g. user1)NAS Identifier NAS Port Type  \*(Default 19, Range: 0~35)Accounting Delay Time  \*(Default: 0)Service Type  \*(Default: 1, Range: 1~11)Class 

Class-Group Mapping

[Configure](#)

This shows the mapping of RADIUS class attributes to the different Groups.

DM &amp; CoA Settings

[Configure](#)Send Acct Interim when users' IP changes ☐ Enable ☒ DisableFailover between RADIUS Servers ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Attributes Priority

## Standard RADIUS Attributes

Session Timeout  Minutes \*(Range: 5-1440 mins)Idle Timeout  Minutes \*(Range: 1-120 mins)Acct Interim Interval  Minutes \*(Range: 1~120 mins, 0 is disable)

## WISPr Vendor Specific Attributes

Redirection URL Billing Class Of Service Session Terminate on Billing Time ☐ Enable ☒ DisableSession Terminate Time Bandwidth Setting 

## Retransmission Settings

Number of Retries  \*(Default: 3)Timeout  \*(Default: 6)

## Primary RADIUS Server

Authentication Server  \*(Domain Name/IP Address)Authentication Port  \*(Default: 1812)Authentication Secret Key Authentication Protocol Accounting Service ☒ Enable ☐ DisableAccounting Server  \*(Domain Name/IP Address)Accounting Port  \*(Default: 1813)Accounting Secret Key 

## Secondary RADIUS Server

Authentication Server  (Domain Name/IP Address)Authentication Port Authentication Secret Key Authentication Protocol Accounting Service ☒ Enable ☐ DisableAccounting Server  (Domain Name/IP Address)Accounting Port Accounting Secret Key

Another important setting field is the **Class-Group Mapping** on the page. It is a translation setting which maps RADIUS classes to different groups on the 4ipnet WHG controller, enabling different RADIUS accounts to be incorporated into different Groups.

### 4.3.2. POP3

POP3 is a common mail service protocol where e-mail is kept by a certain Internet server. 4ipnet WHG controllers offer administrator a way of authentication in which users are granted the Internet service by typing in their email addresses and passwords stored in the POP3 server.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> External Authentication](#)

Server 5 by default is configured to use POP3 authentication. Click on the **Server Name** and a detailed configuration page will show up to inquire necessary settings including POP3 server address, secondary POP3 server specification etc.

Server No. 5 : Server 5 ▼

### POP3 Server Settings

**Group** Group 1 ▼

**Local VPN** ☐ Enable Local VPN

**Username Format** ☐ Complete ☒ Only ID  
Example of a Only ID username: user1.

**Primary POP3 Server Settings**

Server  \*(Domain Name/IP Address)

Port  \*(Default: 110)

SSL Connection ☐ Enable

**Secondary POP3 Server Settings**

Server

Port

SSL Connection ☐ Enable

### 4.3.3. LDAP

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an application protocol for accessing and maintaining distributed directory information services over an IP network.

If you wish to deploy LDAP server for user authentication, proceed for a complete setup.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> External Authentication](#)

Server 4 by default is selected to use LDAP database for user credential check. Click on the **Server Name** to enter the detailed setup page of LDAP (a secondary LDAP server can be designated as a backup server). Furthermore, LDAP configuration page has an **Attribute-Group Mapping** page which maps LDAP attributes to different groups on the 4ipnet WHG controller, enabling different accounts to be incorporated into different Groups.

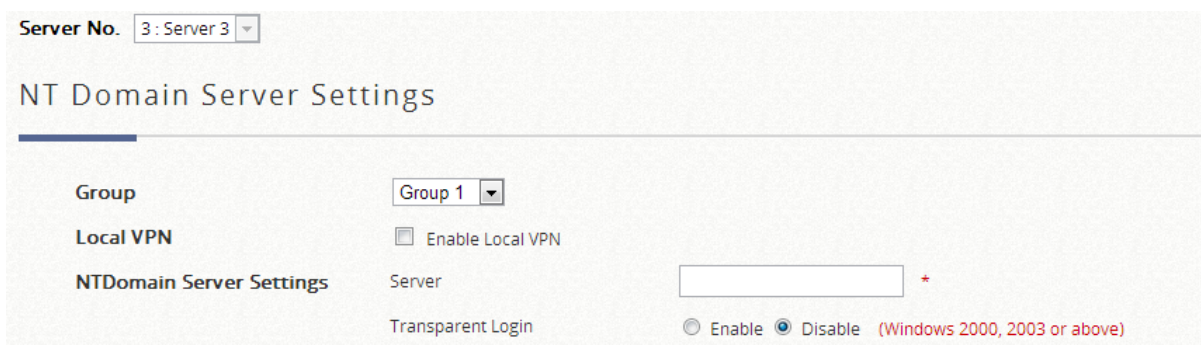
<b>Group</b>		Group 1 ▼
<b>Local VPN</b>		<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Local VPN
<b>Primary LDAP Server Settings</b>		
Server	<input type="text"/>	*(Domain Name/IP Address)
Port	<input type="text"/>	*(e.g. 389 for LDAP, 636 for LDAPS)
Service Protocol	<input checked="" type="radio"/> LDAP <input type="radio"/> LDAPS <input type="radio"/> LDAP+StartTLS	
Base DN	<input type="text"/>	*(e.g. cn=users,dc=domain,dc=com)
Binding Type	User Account ▼	
Account Attribute	<input checked="" type="radio"/> UID <input type="radio"/> CN	
<b>Secondary LDAP Server Settings</b>		
Server	<input type="text"/>	
Port	<input type="text"/>	
Service Protocol	<input checked="" type="radio"/> LDAP <input type="radio"/> LDAPS <input type="radio"/> LDAP+StartTLS	
Base DN	<input type="text"/>	
Binding Type	User Account ▼	
Account Attribute	<input checked="" type="radio"/> UID <input type="radio"/> CN	
<b>Group Mapping</b>		Attribute-Group Mapping <input type="button" value="Configure"/>



#### 4.3.4. NT Domain

NT Domain option supports Windows Domain databases to perform user credential authentication.

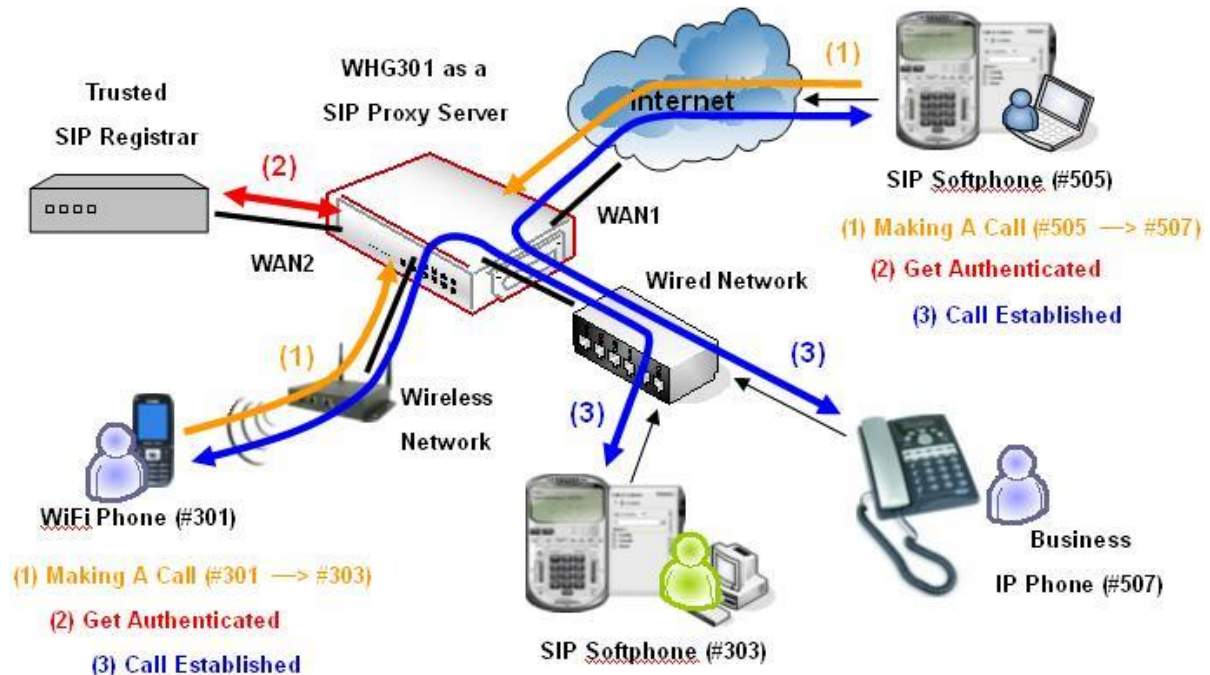
Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> External Authentication](#)



By default Server 3 is selected to use NT Domain. The administrator is only required to enter the Domain Controller IP address where the user credentials are housed. Additionally, if Windows Active Directory is deployed as identity check for device access, **Transparent Login** feature may be enabled to grant access to device and network with a single login action.

#### 4.3.5. SIP

SIP, or the session initiation protocol, is the IETF protocol defined for Voice over Internet Protocol (VoIP) and other multi-media sessions. 4ipnet WHG controllers support SIP authentication as well as the use of SIP phones. In addition to a 4ipnet WHG controller, admin has to set up other devices as to making successful SIP phone calls. This includes: A valid SIP Registrar, SIP phones.



- (1) A user is making a call through a SIP-based phone (e.g. #301 --> #303).
- (2) The user gets authenticated transparently, if the user is registered in the SIP Registrar.
- (3) The call is established successfully.

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> External Authentication](#)

By default SIP is not selected as database for any Auth option. Enable SIP from Authentication Settings in the respective Service Zones. The administrator will need to enter at least one valid SIP Registrar as the call center to provide call service; up to four may be specified. Please note that the corresponding Group profile should have its QoS settings appropriately configured to support voice applications.

**Authentication Server - SIP**

Trusted Registrar

IP Address	Remark
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Please also make sure that the corresponding Service Zone also has 'Enable' checked in the SIP Interface Configuration in order to function properly.

**Authentication Settings**

**Authentication** ☒ Enable ☐ Disable ☐ Suspend  
When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

**Access Permission and Authorization**

**Default Policy** Policy 1   
To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

**MAC Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled  
RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

**PPP Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**SIP Interface Configuration** ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled  
WAN Interface WAN1

**WISPr Settings**

### 4.3.6. Social Media

Social Media Login allows Wi-Fi users to access internet without going through a tedious account registration process. 4ipnet WHG-Series Controller supports three kinds of social media accounts, Facebook, Google+ and Open ID. All administrators have to do is to apply the corresponding ID and secret.

Main › Users › External Authentication › Social Media Login

## Social Media Login

Facebook Login	<input type="checkbox"/>
Facebook App ID	<input type="text"/>
Facebook App Secret	<input type="text"/>
Google+ Sign-in	<input type="checkbox"/>
Google Project Client ID	<input type="text"/>
Google Project Client Secret	<input type="text"/>
Upload JSON data (optional)	<input type="button" value="選擇檔案"/> 未選擇任何檔案

You could upload the OAuth JSON file (from Google Developers Console) to fill in Client ID/Secret.

OpenID Login	<input type="checkbox"/>
OpenID Walled Garden	<div></div>

When a user clicks the button to sign in with social media accounts, he/ she will be redirected to the social media sites for login and granting permissions. This configuration page is where how Controller to connect with social media sites.

- Facebook: visit the website at Facebook developers site (<https://developers.facebook.com/>) and apply for "Facebook Login" APP to get the app ID and app secret.
- Google+: visit the website at Google Developers Console (<https://console.developers.google.com/>) and apply for "Google+ API" to get the client ID and secret.
- Open ID: the login path must be traversed and added into OpenID Walled Garden and the redirection target depends on OpenID provider.

## Chapter 5. Group Attributes & Policy Rules

All 4ipnet WHG Controller models utilize 'Group' and 'Policy' to define user accessibility and network privileges in order to set constraints on users' behavior. Since grouping, policy setting, and service zones are intertwined with one another, this section will proceed to clarify the concepts of grouping, policy, and their relationship with the Service Zone, followed by practical setup processes on these three attributes.

### 5.1 Overview of the Concept

- **Group**



A Group is a set of users that admin considers they share some extent of similar characteristics, i.e. role based. For example, in a university, there are students, the faculty staff, and guests, in general. Therefore an IT staff may set up three Groups that distinguish these three categories of Internet service users apart by giving these Group different permissions of Internet accessibility. In the 4ipnet WHG models, there are eight to twenty-four Group profiles, depending on the model capacity.

On-Demand users, Local users, may be assigned to different Groups per account. As for those who are authenticated by external servers, 4ipnet WHG controllers also offer Group assignment per account for RADIUS and LDAP option via Class-Group

Mapping and Attribute-Group Mapping respectively.

In each Group profile, there are several attributes that can be defined by administrator:

## 1. **Quality of Service (QoS):**

Traffic class choice of Voice, Video, Best effort, and background.

Total uplink and downlink rates shared by all groups members

Individual maximum downlink and uplink rates

## 2. **Privilege Profile:**

*On-Demand account privilege* to enable authenticated users of a certain Group to generate On-Demand accounts in Controller's default / template login success page.

*Password change privilege* to allow users to change their own passwords subsequent to a successful login in Controller's default / template login success page.

*Maximum Concurrent Sessions* determines the number of concurrent log-ins allowed per user.

## 3. **Service Zone accessibility:**

The permission to access or deny access to particular Service Zones as well as the Policy bundled may be configured.

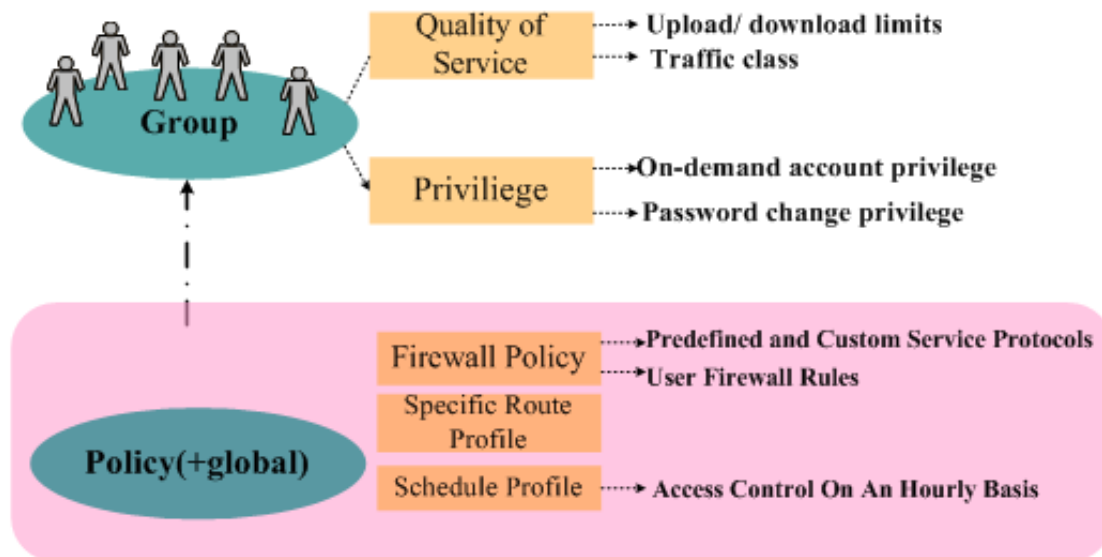
## ● **Policy**

Policy, as the term suggests, are profiles of network governing constraints which are enforced upon users, including firewall rules, login schedule, routing rules and session allowances. There is a **Global** policy, which will be applied if a user belongs to a Group not bound to any Policy. The number of Policy profiles will be model dependent. Group and Policy profiles are separated for more flexibility. This allows users of the same Groups to be bound with different Policies according to Group-Service Zone permission mapping settings the administrator defines. For instance, a user from group 1 may be imposed by policy 1 in service zone 1, but policy 3 when he goes to

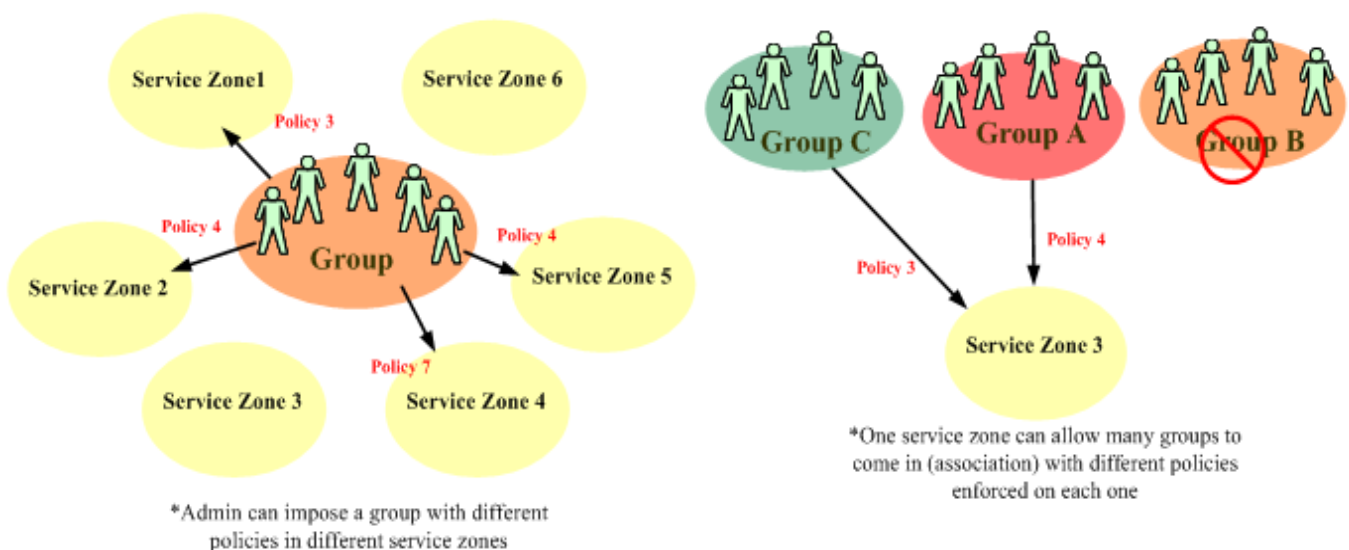


service zone 3.

## ● Relationship Between Group, Policy, and Service Zones



The first figure displays the relationship between group and policy and the attributes that can be defined in each category. Admin can define the relationships between policy, group, and service zone from two points of view- the view of mapping groups to service zones and the other way around. Please see visual explanation below:



## 5.2 Practical Setups of Group and Policies

This section demonstrates with screenshots on how to practically set up the groups and policies on the WMI of the 4ipnet WHG Controller.

### ● Group Overview

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Groups >> Overview](#)

The **Group Overview** table gives a summary of which Authentication Servers are used for each corresponding Group. User Groups assigned to a Billing Plan for the On-Demand Authentication Database are also shown here.

Group Overview	
Group Name	Authentication Type
Group 1	Local Billing Plan 1 Trial POP3-Server 4 RADIUS-Server 2-Default LDAP-Server 3-Default SIP-Server 1
Group 2	Billing Plan 2
Group 3	Billing Plan 3
Group 4	Billing Plan 4
Group 5	
Group 6	
Group 7	

### ● Group Settings

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Groups >> Configuration](#)

The **Group Configuration – Group x** table is for Policy settings to be defined for the Group. Multiple Device Login (except for On-Demand) can be enabled here.

The **Zone Permission Configuration & Policy Assignment – Group x** table enables admin to determine the relationships between Group, Policy, and Service



## Zones.

### Group Configuration

Select Group

Group Name

Remark

Number of devices which are allowed to login   
(0 to 9999 devices, 0: Unlimited)  
For On-Demand accounts, multiple login is configured via the Max User field in the Billing Plan Configuration. Multiple Login Limit is for the following types: LOCAL, POP3, RADIUS, LDAP, and NT Domain.

### Zone Permission Configuration & Policy Assignment

Enabled	Zone Name	Time Span 1	Time Span 2	Time Span 3
		<input type="text" value="Schedule 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Schedule 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Schedule 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : Default	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ1	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ2	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ3	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ4	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ5	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ6	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ7	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ8	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Remote VPN	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>	<input type="text" value="Policy 1"/>

Check the **Status** checkboxes to allow users of this Group to access the corresponding Service Zones. To configure from a Service Zone's perspective please go to Access Permission and Authorization in Service Zone Settings.

## Authentication Settings

**Authentication** ☒ Enable ☐ Disable ☐ Suspend

When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

**Access Permission and Authorization** Configure

**Default Policy** Policy 1 ▼

To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

**MAC Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

**PPP Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**SIP Interface Configuration** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**WISPr Settings** Configure

**Authentication Options**

Auth. Option	Auth. Database	Postfix	Default	Enable
Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Group Overview - SZ1

Name	Status	Time Span 1	Time Span 2	Time Span 3
Group 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 1 <span>▼</span>	Policy 1 <span>▼</span>	Policy 1 <span>▼</span>
Group 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 2 <span>▼</span>	Policy 2 <span>▼</span>	Policy 2 <span>▼</span>
Group 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 3 <span>▼</span>	Policy 3 <span>▼</span>	Policy 3 <span>▼</span>
Group 4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 4 <span>▼</span>	Policy 4 <span>▼</span>	Policy 4 <span>▼</span>
Group 5	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 5 <span>▼</span>	Policy 5 <span>▼</span>	Policy 5 <span>▼</span>
Group 6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 6 <span>▼</span>	Policy 6 <span>▼</span>	Policy 6 <span>▼</span>
Group 7	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 7 <span>▼</span>	Policy 7 <span>▼</span>	Policy 7 <span>▼</span>
Group 8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 8 <span>▼</span>	Policy 8 <span>▼</span>	Policy 8 <span>▼</span>
Group 9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Policy 9 <span>▼</span>	Policy 9 <span>▼</span>	Policy 9 <span>▼</span>

## ● Policy Settings

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Policies >> Policy Configuration](#)

1. **Select Policy** allows administrator to choose which Policy Profile to configure.
2. **Firewall Profile** is for defining service protocols, user firewall rules, and IPv6 firewall rules.
3. **Privilege Profile** configures the On-Demand Account creation, Password change privileges and Maximum concurrent sessions.

4. **QoS Profile** allows administrator to edit traffic configuration.
5. **Specific Route Profile** is where the administrator may statically assign routing nodes to forward traffic to a certain destination.
6. **IPv6 traffic class and 802.1p mapping** (for global policy only) - to map IPv6 traffic class to 802.1p when IPv6 traffic is being forwarded into VLAN IPv4 networks.

Select one of the policies in the drop-down list and start configuring each attribute by clicking **Configure**. After the setting, remember to always click **Apply** to save the changes made. Note again that the Global Policy is the policy that applies to all users in all service zones that is not explicitly governed by a policy profile.

## ● Schedule

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Schedule](#)

The Schedule is the assignment of allowed user login periods from clock time on an hourly basis. The unchecked time slots imply that user under this policy will be unable to login under that specific time interval.

### Schedule Permitted Login Hours - Profile 1

Select Schedule
Schedule 1

Schedule Name
Schedule 1

	Time	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
<input type="checkbox"/>	SUN	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	MON	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	TUE	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	WED	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	THU	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	FRI	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	SAT	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>

☐ Log off authenticated users during unauthorized periods

Defined Schedules are then applied in Group Configuration.

## ● Grouping Users

A Group is determined by authentication servers, class (RADIUS), attribute (LDAP), or accounts individually (Local, On-Demand).

Generally a Group is assigned to all users of an authentication option

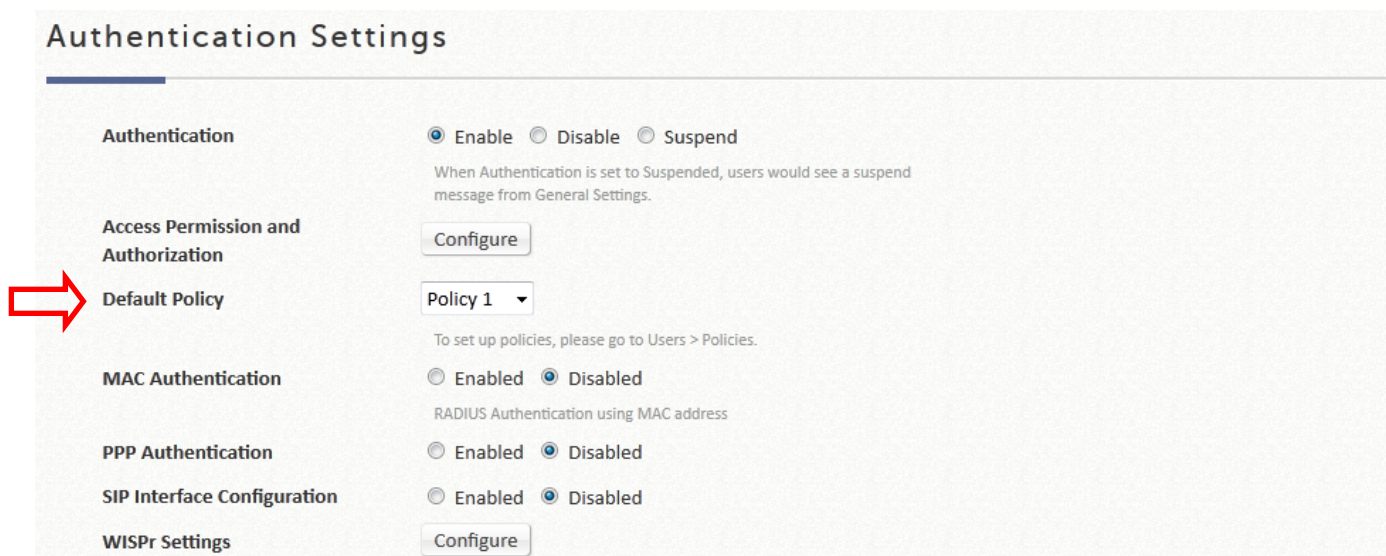
Users > Authentication > Auth Option > Group

### **However, there are the following flexibilities:**

- Local accounts may be assigned a Group per account individually upon creation or from the following path for existing accounts Users > Authentication > Local > Configure > [Local User List](#) > [username](#) (There is an **Applied Group** row for admin to determine the attribute)
- On-Demand accounts may be assigned a Group per account individually upon creation.
- RADIUS users can have users assigned to different Groups based on RADIUS class. The mapping can be configured at Users > Authentication > RADIUS > Configure > [Class-Group Mapping](#) > [Configure](#)
- LDAP users can have users assigned to different Groups based on LDAP attributes, the mapping can be configured at Users > Authentication > LDAP > Configure > [Map LDAP Attributes to Group](#)

## ● Policy Priority

Policy can be configured at Group-Service Zone permission mapping and Service Zone profile.



**Authentication Settings**

**Authentication** ☒ Enable ☐ Disable ☐ Suspend  
When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

**Access Permission and Authorization** [Configure](#)

**Default Policy** Policy 1 ▾  
To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

**MAC Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled  
RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

**PPP Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**SIP Interface Configuration** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**WISPr Settings** [Configure](#)

The Policy enforcement priority is as follows:

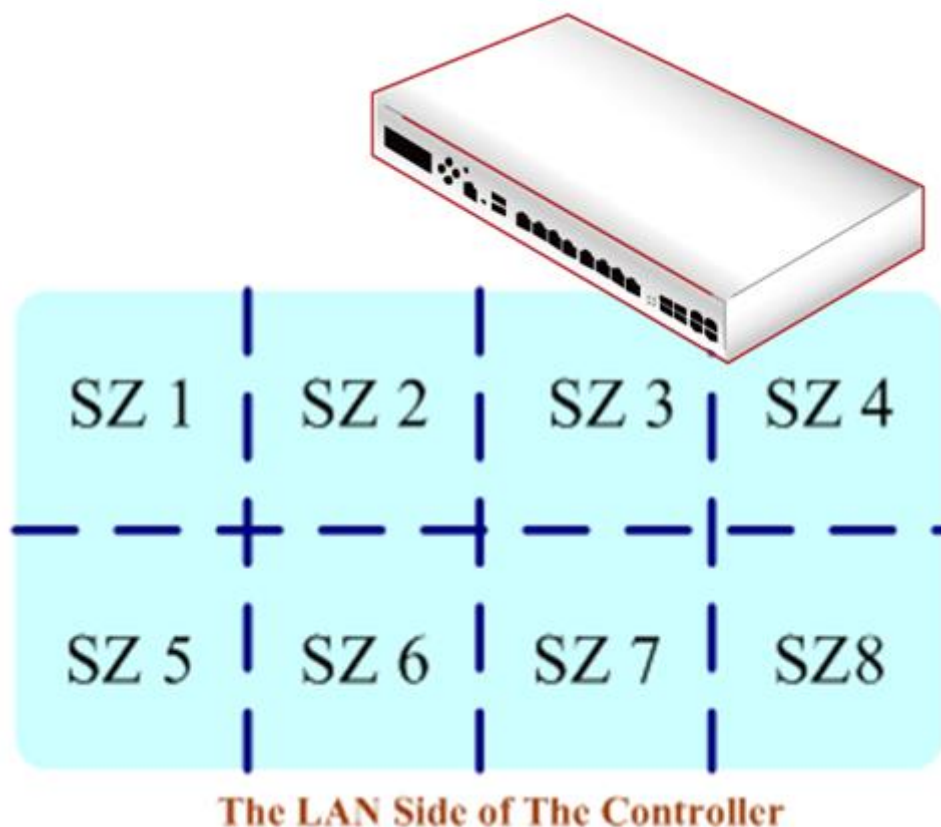
Group-Service Zone Mapping > Service Zone default Policy > Global Policy

Therefore, if the administrator does not specify a Group or Policy in the hierarchy of configurations for a particular user, the system will govern them by Global Policy.

## Chapter 6. Basic Service Zone Configuration

### 6.1 The Concept of Service Zone

Service Zones are virtual partitions of the physical LAN side of a 4ipnet Controller. Similar to VLANs, they can be separately managed and defined, having their own user landing pages, network interface settings, DHCP servers, authentication options, policies and security settings, and so on. By associating a unique VLAN Tag (when it is tag-based) and an SSID with its Service Zone, administrator can flexibly separate the wired and wireless networks easily.



### 6.2 Service Zone Setup

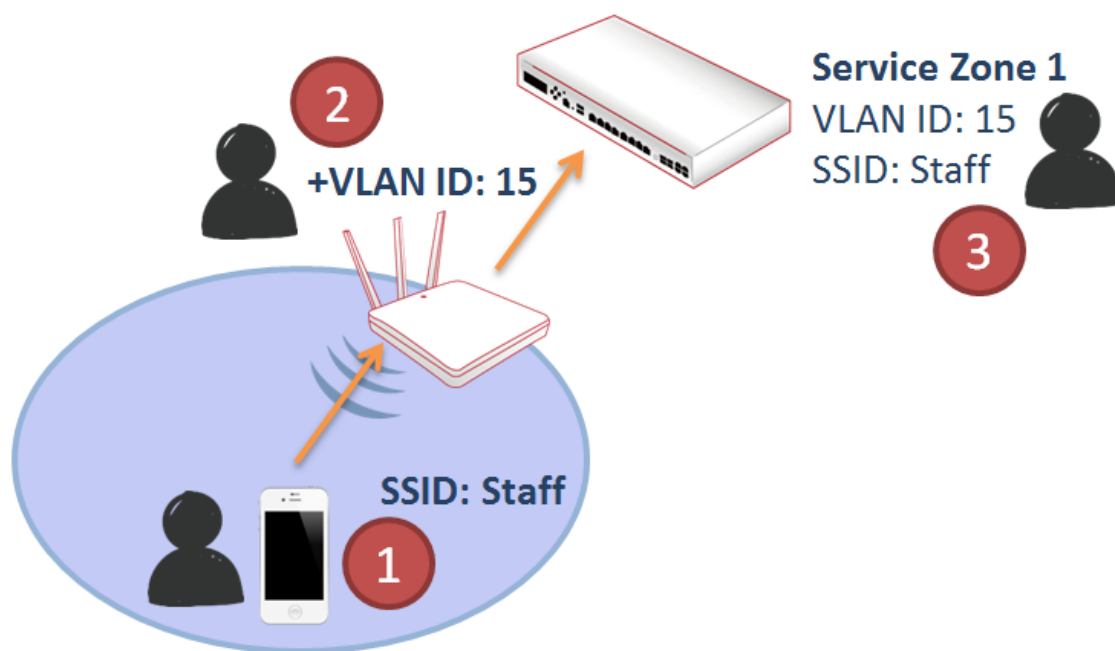
#### 6.2.1. Tag-based or Port-based Service Zones

4ipnet WHG controllers offer two modes of physical LAN port to service zone mappings,



namely port-based mode and tag-based mode. Intuitively as the name suggests, Port-based mode means that each LAN port services one or none Service Zones, so the maximum number of service zones is equivalent to the number of LAN ports on a 4ipnet WHG controller.

On the contrary, Tag-based service zones are not limited by the number of ports, for they are specified by the VLAN tag ID pre-defined by the admin, regardless of which LAN port. A simple concept is displayed in the picture below.



As the figure depicts, a staff of a firm is associated with a certain SSID broadcast by an access point. This SSID belongs to, let's say, VAP with VLAN ID 15. Therefore the AP's traffic when forwarded back to the Controller will be mapped to Service Zone 1 with configurations set for staff access.

## Configuration Mapping

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> LAN Ports](#)

Admin can change the type of service zones. There are some grayed-out service zones because they have been disabled. Therefore, admin should first go to 'System > Service Zones > Configure' to enable the needed service zones.

## LAN Ports

### LAN Port Mode

☒ Port-Based ☐ Tag-Based

When LAN Ports are set to Port-Based Mode, Service Zones will be differentiated by the respective LAN ports. When LAN Ports are set to Tag-Based Mode, VLANs are used to separate traffic to different Service Zones. This is needed for Port Location Mapping and Access Point Management.

### Port - Service Zone Mapping

LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4

Apply Cancel

If the setting is change to **Tag-based**, the correspondence of service zones and ports will be grayed out. Each Service Zone will need to be assigned a unique VLAN ID, ranging from 1 to 4096.

## LAN Ports

### LAN Port Mode

☐ Port-Based ☒ Tag-Based

When LAN Ports are set to Port-Based Mode, Service Zones will be differentiated by the respective LAN ports. When LAN Ports are set to Tag-Based Mode, VLANs are used to separate traffic to different Service Zones. This is needed for Port Location Mapping and Access Point Management.

### Port - Service Zone Mapping

LAN1 LAN2 LAN3 LAN4

Note that the Default Service Zone is designed to be tag-less to manage Local Access Points and process untagged traffic.



### 6.2.2. NAT Mode or Router Mode

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Configure](#)

NAT is the acronym for Network Address Translation which translates private IP addresses for devices on the LAN side of a controller to routable IP before forwarding into uplink network. Private IP addresses are invisible to devices or routers on the WAN side of the controller, only the controller deploying the NAT knows their corresponding translation. This mode not only protects users on the LAN from being 'seen' by external devices but also solves the problem of limited public IP's.

Router mode as the name suggests, is a network operating without address translation in and out of the Controller. Router mode is selected when using public IP or under circumstances where the downstream devices requires a routable IP address to upstream routers.

### 6.2.3. Service Zone Network Interface

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Configure](#)

**IP address** will act as the Controller IP to a user connected to this Service Zone.

**Subnet mask** defines the size of your Service Zone network and defines the range of IP's allowed to access this Service Zone. To allow users using addresses that are out of range, enter the IP's in the **Network Alias List** and check **Enable**. Always remember to click **Apply** upon completion.

There are 3 isolation options when the system is set to Tag-based mode: **Inter-VLAN Isolation**, **Clients Isolation**, and **None**.

- Inter-VLAN Isolation: 2 clients within the same VLAN will not see each other when coming in from different ports. Note that Isolation is done when traffic passes through the gateway. When a switch or AP is being deployed, Station Isolation has to be enabled on the AP/switch.
- Clients Isolation: All clients on the same Layer 2 network are isolated from one another in this Service Zone.
- None: No isolation will be applied to clients in this Service Zone.

Note that when “None” is selected, a switch port connecting to the LAN port of the WHG may be shut down if the switch has loop protection enabled and there are more than 2 VLANs belong to one Service Zone.

#### **6.2.4. DHCP Server options**

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Configure](#)

Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) is a network protocol that enables a server to automatically assign an IP address to a computer from a defined range of numbers (i.e., a scope) configured for a given network. 4ipnet WHG Controllers supports independent DHCP settings for each Service Zone profile. Options include Disable DHCP option, Enable built-in DHCP server or DHCP Relay.

DHCP

DHCP Server Configuration for Service Zone Default

No	Active	DHCP Scope	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Preferred DNS Server	Alternate DNS Server	Domain Name	Lease Time (mins)	WINS Server	Disregard Client's Name
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Scope 1	192.168.1.1	192.168.1.100	192.168.1.254		domain.com	1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 2						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 3						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 4						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 5						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 6						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

Reserved IP Address List

DHCP Lease Protection ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

1. DHCP Server Configuration – The default setting for DHCP Server is “Enable”. Select other options from the drop-down list.
2. Define the IP range for issuing when using Enable DHCP Server (built-in). There are a total of six DHCP pools for configuration.
3. Reserving IP addresses – A configuration list for reserving certain IP’s within the DHCP Server IP range for specific devices, for example an internal file server.
4. DHCP lease protection – This is an optional checking mechanism on the Controller when Enabled, will check to see if the lease expired IP is currently online. If yes, the Controller will halt the issuing of this IP address until the user session terminates.
5. Click “Apply” to activate changes.

## 6.2.5. Authentication Options

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Configure](#)

Once the administrator has properly configured the authentication servers under the Main Menu, each Service Zone can select the authentication option preferred to downstream clients for login. Note that Authentication is always enabled by default.

### 1. Databases

Administrator can designate configured auth servers for use. Postfix will be used as auth server identifier when more than one auth server is enabled for service.

Authentication Options	Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Default	Enable
	Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 3	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 4	LDAP	ldap	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Server 5	POP3	pop3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	On-Demand	ONDEMAND	ondemand	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	SIP	SIP	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
	Guest	FREE	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## 2. Portal URL

The specification of a desired landing page may be configured here. When enabled, the administrator can choose to set the URL of an opened browser after users' initial login.

Authentication Settings

Authentication

☐ Enable
☒ Disable
☐ Suspend

When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

Access Permission and Authorization

Configure

Default Policy

Policy 1

To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

Portal URL

☒ Specific
☐ Original
☐ None

(e.g. http://www.example.com)

MAC Authentication

☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

PPP Authentication

☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

SIP Interface Configuration

☐ Enabled
☒ Disabled

WISPr Settings

Configure

Authentication Options

Auth. Option	Auth. Database	Postfix	Default	Enabled
Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## 3. MAC address authentication

RADIUS MAC authentication feature once enabled, if the connected device has its MAC address entered in the configured RADIUS Server, the Controller will automatically

authenticate and grant access immediately if authentication succeeds. Users will experience transparent login.

**Authentication Settings**

**Authentication** ☐ Enable ☒ Disable ☐ Suspend  
When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

**Access Permission and Authorization** [Configure](#)

**Default Policy** [Policy 1](#) ▼  
To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

**Portal URL** ☒ Specific ☐ Original ☐ None  
 \*  
(e.g. http://www.example.com)

**MAC Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled  
RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

**PPP Authentication** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**SIP Interface Configuration** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**WISPr Settings** [Configure](#)

**Authentication Options**

Auth. Option	Auth. Database	Postfix	Default	Enabled
Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

#### 4. PPP dial-up authentication

Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) is a data link protocol commonly used in establishing a direct connection between two networking nodes. When this feature is enabled for service, end users may configure a dial-up connection setting with a valid username and password (support only Local and RADIUS users). Once the dial-up connection has been established, the user would have been authenticated successfully without further UAM login.

## Authentication Settings

Authentication

☒ Enable ☐ Disable ☐ Suspend  
When Authentication is set to Suspended, users would see a suspend message from General Settings.

Access Permission and Authorization

Configure

Default Policy

Policy 1 ▾  
To set up policies, please go to Users > Policies.

MAC Authentication

☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled  
MAC Auth Server Server 2(radius) ▾  
RADIUS Authentication using MAC address

PPP Authentication

☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled  
Assign IP Address From 172.50.0.1  
Authentication Options

Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Enable
Local	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="checkbox"/>

The **IP Address Range Assignment** field configures the starting IP range which PPP can assign IP addresses to dial-up virtual interfaces. The assigned interface IP address is used to route between the networks on both side of the tunnel.

### 6.2.6. Portal Customization

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Configure](#)

Each Service Zone can be configured to have unique Login Pages or Message Pages. There are 3 types of Login Pages: The General Login Page, PLM Open Type Login Page (for Port Location Mapping free access), and PMS Billing Plan Selection Page. A Service Disclaimer page can be enabled if required. These pages are fully customizable to give administrators complete flexibility. Message Pages can also be customized and message pages include: Login Success Pages, Login Success Page for On-Demand Users, Login Fail Page, Device Logout Page, Logout Success Page, Logout Failed Page, and Online Device List.



### Login Page Customization

Service Disclaimer

Default

General Login Page

Default

PLM Open Type Login Page

Default

PMS Billing Plan Selection Page

Default

☒ 4ipnet Default
 ☐ Customize with Template
 ☐ Upload Your Own
 ☐ Use External Page

Enable Disclaimer

☐






Preview

Apply

Cancel

### Theme for Template

Button Color

☒ 
☐ 
☐ 
☐ 
☐ 

Upload Logo

Browse...

No file selected.

No File

The recommended dimension of the image is 360x120 with a size limit of 512 kB. It will be adjusted if the dimension does not fit.

There are three customization options to choose from apart from the 4ipnet Default Page: Customize with Template, Upload Your Own, and Use External Page.

**4ipnet Default:** The gateway has a standard 4ipnet Default Login Page with the 4ipnet logo and Administrators can choose to enable a Service Disclaimer if needed.

**Customize with Template:** For this option, a template is prepared for the administrator's easy customization. The general layout has been set for the administrator but the contents can be customized to his preference. A color theme and a logo can be uploaded, and contents field such as Service Disclaimer, text colors can entered within the template presentation layout.

**Upload Your Own:** The Administrator has the option to upload a html file as the Login Page. The "Download HTML Sample File" gives administrators a sample HTML code to edit from. Once this sample HTML code is downloaded, open the file with any browser, right click and select "View Page Source". You may edit the HTML code with any text editor as long as the file is saved in .html format.



Use External Page: The Login Page can be a defined external URL. This option requires extensive knowledge of URL parameter utilization that works together with the Message Pages and should be organized carefully. For more details on External Login Page customization, please refer to Appendix C of the User Manual.

For a Preview of the custom page, click “Apply” followed by the “Preview” button. Similarly, the four options are available for Message Pages.

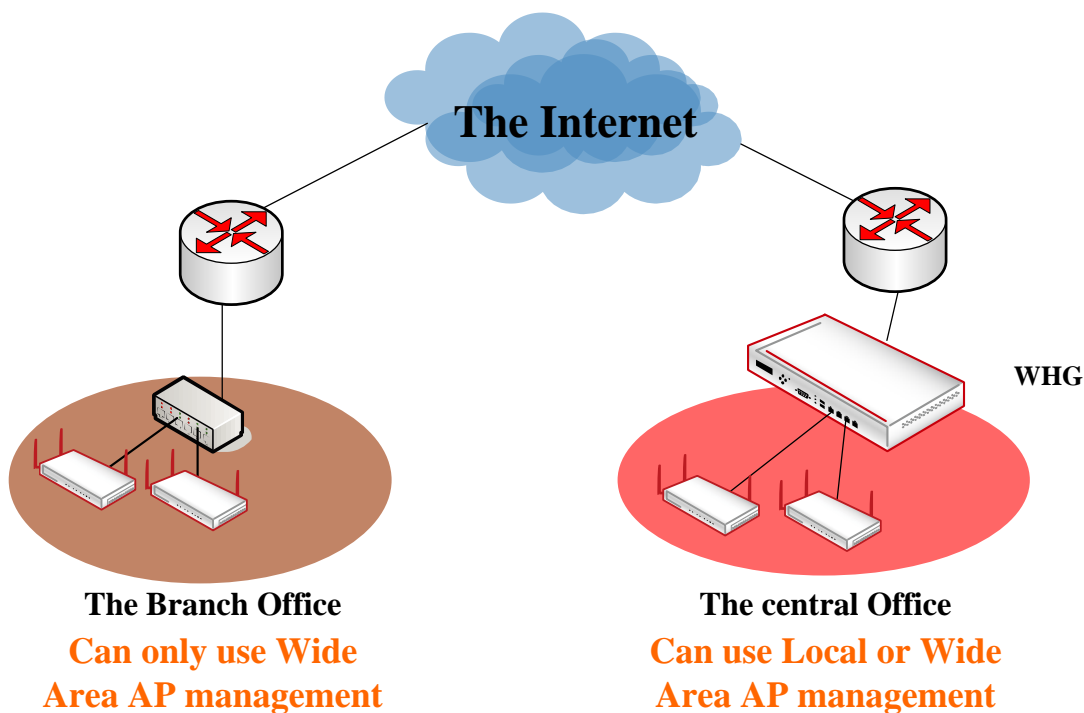
### Message Page Customization

Login Success Page	Default	<div><input checked="" type="radio"/> 4ipnet Default <input type="radio"/> Customize with Template <input type="radio"/> Upload Your Own <input type="radio"/> Use External Page</div> <div>Preview</div> <div><input checked="" type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/></div>
Login Success Page For On-Demand Users	Default	
Login Failed Page	Default	
Device Logout Page	Default	
Logout Success Page	Default	
Logout Failed Page	Default	
Online Device List	Default	

## Chapter 7. Basic AP Management (WHG Only)

### 7.1. Introduction

Management of access points are always of vital importance for a network administrator. Thus 4ipnet delivers a simple, straightforward set of management tools to help you achieve it. Generally, we suggest a centralized network with a controller in charge of access points both on the WAN side and the LAN side. We call the WAN-side AP management '**Wide Area AP Management**,' due to its scalability across the Internet or intranet, and the LAN-side AP management '**Local Area AP Management**.' Below illustrates the concept of these two types of management.



【Illustration of Wide Area and Local AP Management】

4ipnet WHG models have different manageability with 4ipnet access points, i.e., admin should make sure what AP models your 4ipnet WHG controller supports.

Manageable 4ipnet Access Points for Local AP Management may be checked at:

[Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> Overview.](#)

#### AP Type List

AP Type	No. of AP	Online	Offline	No. of Client
EAP110	0	0	0	0
EAP210	0	0	0	0
EAP220	0	0	0	0
EAP260	0	0	0	0
EAP320	0	0	0	0
EAP700	0	0	0	0
EAP701	0	0	0	0
EAP717	0	0	0	0
EAP747	0	0	0	0
EAP750	0	0	0	0
EAP757	0	0	0	0
EAP760	0	0	0	0
EAP767	0	0	0	0
OWL400	0	0	0	0
OWL410	0	0	0	0
OWL500	0	0	0	0
OWL530	0	0	0	0
OWL620	0	0	0	0
OWL630	0	0	0	0

Manageable 4ipnet Access Points for Wide Area AP Management may be checked at:

[Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> Overview.](#)

## AP List

Type
Status
Tunnel
Name

All
All
None

Search

Refresh Interval 120 seconds Refresh

Add Delete Add to Map Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade Apply Settings Reboot

	Type	Name	IP	MAC	Map	Template	Status	# of Users	Tunnel	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP	AP Ver.
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP110	selenium_0	198.65.5.0		Overview	N/A	Un-Sync	0	Edit	System Overview Go	N/A	
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP706	selenium_9	198.65.5.9		Overview	N/A	Un-Sync	0	Edit	System Overview Go	N/A	

Individual AP configuration is very time consuming and impractical when it comes to large scale AP deployments.

Under Local Area AP Management, there are up to 8 templates available for each AP model containing configuration attributes primarily on wireless band, data rate, transmit power, data rate, etc. They may be applied to manage APs automatically or manually, avoiding the process of tedious one by one AP configuration.

Under Wide Area AP Management, there also are templates for the administrator to configure AP by central management.

This chapter further explores how a wireless network environment can be set up in terms of AP management, explaining the aspects such AP discovery & Adding, general AP settings, and so on. It is noteworthy that this section only deals with a clear setting process of various common AP management settings, not advanced ones, for instance, 'rogue AP detection' or 'AP load balancing.' The higher-level applications are introduced in the reference guide.

**NOTE**

1. Before the adding of AP's to any service zone, admin should set up a general wireless environment for the zone in advance, which will be only be applied to Locally managed APs.
2. Each AP will also be assigned one distinctive IP address once under management. In the tag-based mode, the AP addresses are given by the DHCP server in the default service zone; while in the port-based one, an AP will be allocated an IP address by the DHCP server in its affiliated service zone.

## **7.2 Local Area AP Management**

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management](#)

This section handles the management of access points on the LAN side of your 4ipnet WHG controller. It starts with a methodology of adding access points to the AP management list of a controller, all the way to the utilities that can be applied on the controller to its managed AP's.

### **7.2.1 AP List**

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> AP List](#)

All of the supported APs under management of the system will be shown in the list. Check the checkbox for the desired AP Types and click "Apply" to display on the AP List. A search can be performed based on AP Name, IP Address, MAC Address, and Channel by selecting from the drop-down list. The AP's name will be shown as a hyperlink. Click the hyperlink of each managed AP to further configure (General Setting, LAN Setting, Wireless LAN, Layer 2 Firewall) the AP. Click the hyperlink of the shown Status of each managed AP for detailed status information of the AP (System Status, Service Zone Status, Wireless Status, Access Control Status, and Associated Client Status).

Main > Device Management > Local Area AP Management > AP List

### AP List

AP Type ☒ All

<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP110	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP210	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP220	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP260	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP320	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP330
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP430	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP700	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP701	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP705	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP706	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP717
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP727	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP747	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP750	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP757	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP760	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> EAP767
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL400	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL410	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL500	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL530	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL620	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> OWL630
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Others					

---

Refresh Interval

AP Name   (Total: 2)

<input type="checkbox"/>	AP Name	Client	IP Address	Service Zone / VLAN ID / SSID		Status	MAC Address	Channel
<input type="checkbox"/>	test1	0	192.168.1.123	RF Card A Default / 0 / 4ipnetAP-A1	RF Card B Default / 0 / 4ipnetAP-B1	Offline	00:11:22:33:44:55	N/A / N/A
<input type="checkbox"/>	test2	0	192.168.1.124	RF Card A Default / 0 / 4ipnetAP-A1	RF Card B Default / 0 / 4ipnetAP-B1	Offline	00:11:22:33:44:66	N/A / N/A

Administrators may filter the AP List by selecting the desired AP Models. Check the AP Models under AP Type and click "Apply" to apply the filter.

To add an AP or multiple APs, click the "Add" button. This is elaborated in Section 7.2.2 AP Adding and Discovery.

Options such as Enabling or Disabling an AP, applying Templates and Service Zones can be done by checking the checkboxes on the left of the AP List and clicking the respective buttons. Details on AP Templates configuration are elaborated in Section 7.2.3 Templates Configuration. For monitoring, there is a refresh interval option to allow administrator realize what the exact status of each managed AP.

Note that not all firmware versions are fully compatible with WHG's AP Management feature. Check for compatibility under the "Status" column.

## 7.2.2 AP Adding and Configuration Applying

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> AP List >> Add](#)

Once all AP's are properly connected, admin can then start adding them to the management list. This can be accomplished by clicking "Add" above the AP List. APs can be added individually or in batches. This is determined by the "Add Method"; Select "Add AP" from the drop-down list to add APs individually, or select "Find Multiple APs" to add in batches.

To add an AP, specify an AP Name and enter its IP and MAC address. These rows with red asterisks are mandatory information that needs to be provided. After filling in all the fields, click **Apply** at the bottom of the page to add the AP (to add an AP, it doesn't necessarily have to be online). Check the **AP List** to confirm the adding.

Add Method
Add AP

### Add An AP

AP Type	EAP110
AP Name	*
Admin Password	admin
IP Address	*
MAC Address	*
Apply AP Template	TEMPLATE1
Channel	6

To Add APs in batches, the admin scans an IP address range and collectively discover the AP's of the same type, either by

1. 'Factory Default' scanning – used if the administrator has not changed any of the configuration on their AP's. And there is no need to fill in any fields. Just click **Scan Now**
2. 'Manual' scanning- used if the IP addresses of the AP's have been changed to those other than 192.168.1.1. Type in the range of the IP addresses you would like to scan through and click **Scan Now**.



### Find Multiple APs

---

AP Type	EAP110 ▼
Service Zone	Default ▼
Admin Settings Used to Discover	<input type="radio"/> Factory Default <input checked="" type="radio"/> Manual
IP Address:	192.168.1.1 ~ 192.168.1.1
Login ID:	admin
Password:	admin
<input type="button" value="Scan Now"/>	

The **Discovery Results** Table will then display all the AP's found currently alive. After finding the AP, admin can further set up the template to be applied and the operating channel, and furthermore put the AP under a specific service zone you have enabled.

#### NOTE

1. It might take some time for the controller to discover AP's. Please wait for a moment until the AP you are scanning for is displayed on the **Discovery Results** list.
2. Note that the **Background** above the discovery list could be enabled to scan the wireless environment every fixed period of time based on admin's setting. Click **Configure** to set up the function.

Subsequent modifications to AP configurations are possible via the hyperlink under the AP Name. Click one of the [AP Names](#) to access its settings page, including **General Settings, LAN Interface Settings and Wireless Interface Settings**.

There is also a row of buttons indicating **Reboot, Enable, Disable, Delete, Apply template, Apply by Service Zone, and Reset to Default**, which are quite intuitive in terms of the names for changing the content of the AP list. Choose one or more AP's in advance and perform one of the functions.

**Applying template** is designed for initializing the AP configuration such as fundamental wireless parameters which administrators have already prepared in advance. 4ipnet's Local Area AP Management function provides another option for applying settings, namely the **Applying by Service Zone** feature, whenever administrators would like to revise VAP configuration such as SSID name and wireless security pre-shared keys after a period of practical usage. Simply confirm whether a VAP is mapped to the selected Service Zone.

The screenshot displays two side-by-side configuration panels. The left panel, titled 'Apply Template', shows a dropdown menu with 'LAPM767' selected, and 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons. Below this is a table for 'Template: LAPM767' with the following data:

Template: LAPM767	
Band	802.11g+802.11n / 802.11a+802.11n
Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0
Gateway	192.168.1.254

A note below the table states: 'Note: If the Band of the template cannot match current Channel, the Channel will be changed to "Auto".' The right panel, titled 'Apply by Service Zone', features a 'Service Zone' dropdown set to 'Default'. It includes fields for 'SSID' (containing 'SSID0'), 'Authentication' (set to 'Shared Key'), and 'Encryption' (set to 'WEP'). Under 'Encryption', there are settings for 'Key Length' (128 bits), 'Key Format' (ASCII), and 'Key Index' (Key1). Below these are four input fields for 'Key1', 'Key2', 'Key3', and 'Key4', each with a red asterisk indicating a required field. 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons are at the bottom right.

### 7.2.3 Templates Configuration

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> Templates](#)

As said in the introduction, admin is capable of utilizing AP configuration templates to eliminate tedious AP configuration tasks one by one. Click **Configure** for more detailed settings, such as the subnet mask and the default gateway. Up to eight templates can be saved for each AP model. Click the "Add Template" button to increase templates and click the "Edit" icon represented under the Action column to edit configurations.

### AP Template

AP Model:

Template Name	Copy Settings from	Remark	Action
<input type="text" value="TEMPLATE1"/>	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	<input type="text" value="Template 1"/>	
<input type="text" value="TEMPLATE2"/>	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	<input type="text" value="Template 2"/>	

General Settings such as the Default Gateway of the AP and etc. are configured here. Wireless Settings and applicable Service Zones/SSIDs are also configurable here.

### Wireless

Band:

Short Guard Interval:

Channel Width:

Data Rate:

Short Preamble:

Transmit Power:

Beacon Interval (ms):  (Default: 100; Range: 100 ~ 500)

#### VAP Configuration

Status	Profile Name	VLAN ID	Service Zone	SSID	WLAN Encryption	Action
	VAP-1	0	Default	Default	NONE	
	VAP-2	0	Default	Default	NONE	

The SSID and Wireless Security can be specified per Service Zone. Depending on deployment needs, access filtering may be imposed on individual Service Zone's managed AP devices. The Wireless Settings section under the VAP Configuration list allows the specification of wireless settings including Access Control list.

For each Service Zone, administrators can set up the wireless security profile, including Authentication and Encryption. The options available are Open System, Share Key, WPA, WPA2 or WPA/WPA2 Mixed.

**WEP:** When Authentication is Open System or Share Key, WEP will be enabled.

**WPA:** When Authentication is WPA, WPA-PSK or WPA-RADIUS will be the options of WPA. For WPA-PSK, Passphrase or HEX can be selected.

**WPA2:** When Authentication is WPA, WPA-PSK or WPA-RADIUS will be the options of WPA. For WPA-PSK, Passphrase or HEX can be selected.

**WPA/WPA2 Mixed:** When Authentication is WPA, WPA-PSK or WPA-RADIUS will be the options of WPA. For WPA-PSK, Passphrase or HEX can be selected.

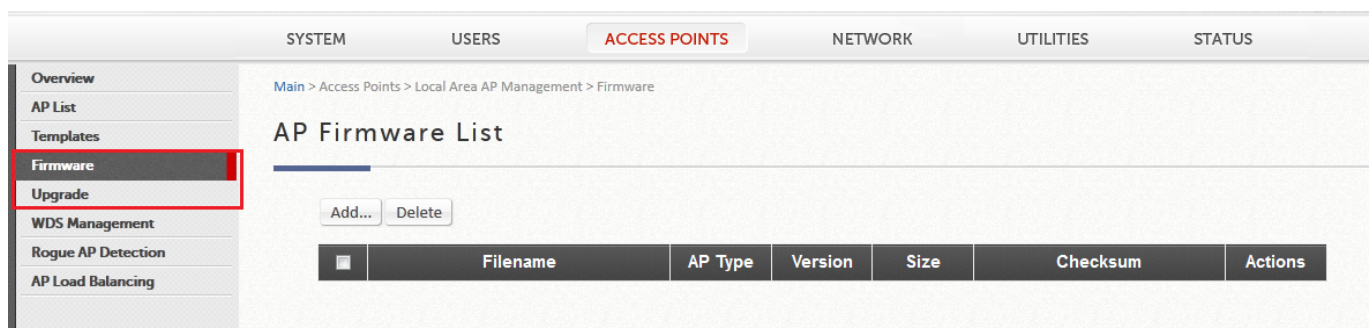
The **MAC address** field is for admin to type in the MAC addresses you would like to deny or allow. Status 'Denied' implies that you are configuring a black list. 'Allowed' implies that you are configuring a white list. 'Disable' implies that no access filtering is imposed regardless of the MAC entries configured below.

Status	MAC Address	The Action taken by the controller
Disabled		Controller does not enforce any MAC ACL on APs of this Service Zone
Allowed	Enabled	AP only allows devices with these addresses to associate with the APs of this Service Zone
Allowed	Disabled	AP does not allow devices with these addresses to associate with the APs of this Service Zone
Denied	Disabled	It allows devices with these addresses to associate with the APs of this Service Zone
Denied	Enabled	AP does not allow devices with these addresses to associate with the APs of this

		Service Zone
--	--	--------------

### 7.2.4. AP Firmware Management

Firmware upgrade matters because much of the software enhancements are released periodically for enhanced standards / features. 4ipnet offers an easy firmware upgrade process from the controller's AP management interface, allowing the administrator to upgrade multiple AP devices at once.



1. First add a firmware and select the firmware file at [Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> Firmware](#) and click **Upload** next to the row to store the AP firmware within the Controller.
2. Upgrade the necessary AP's by going to [Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> Upgrade](#), select the AP's you would like to import the version to. When done with the selection, click **Upgrade** at the bottom of the page.

#### NOTE

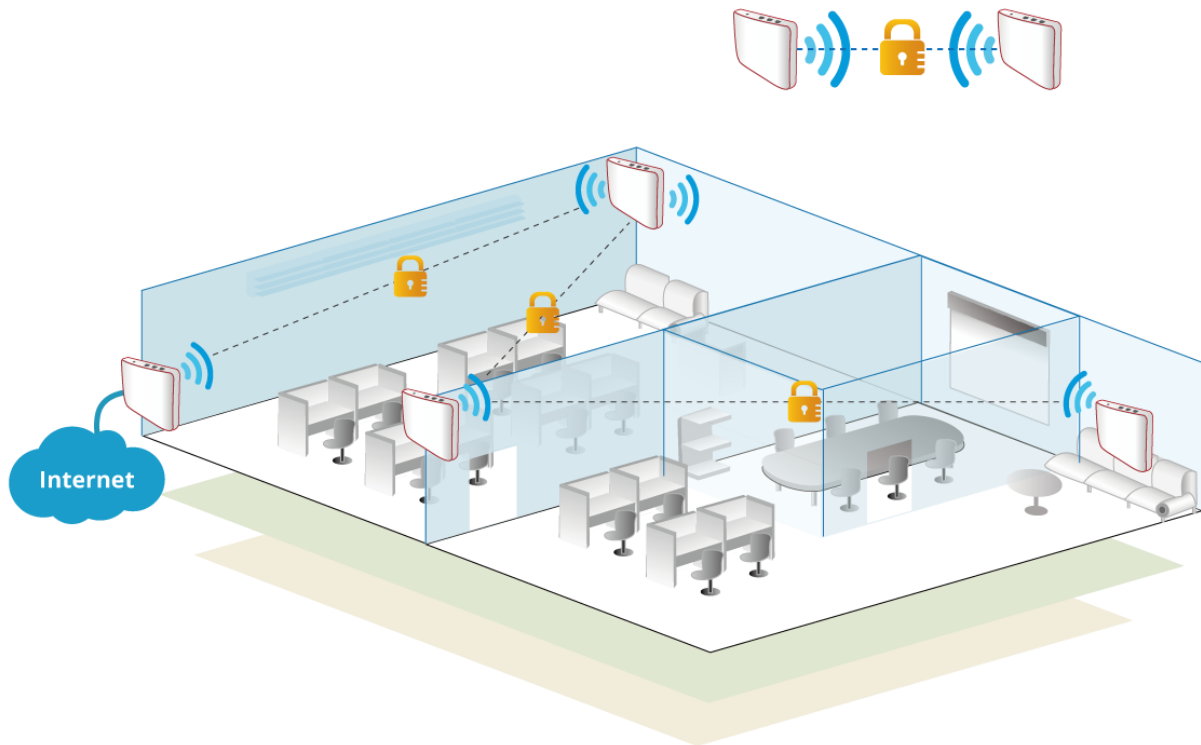
1. Please read through the release note of each AP firmware release to avoid any unexpected outcome.

### 7.2.5 WDS Links

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Local Area AP Management >> WDS](#)

## Management

WDS is the acronym for Wireless Distribution System, a function for extending the wireless coverage of the network with additional APs.



【A simple concept diagram illustrating WDS connection】

The WDS management function helps administrators plan and setup a "Tree" structure of WDS network with managed APs.



### WDS Connection Settings - Settings for a new WDS tree

Channel

Security Type

### WDS Status

Refresh Interval

WDS Tree	Security	Channel	Edit
No current WDS connection.			

### WDS Update

Delete WDS Link

Add WDS Connection New Parent AP  New Child AP

Move WDS Connection Update Parent AP  Update Child AP

**WDS Connection Settings:** Determine the Channel and Security Type for the APs deployed in the WDS network tree.

**WDS Status:** Shows the added APs in the WDS Tree with Security and Channel settings. More than one WDS Tree can be set up in your network. Click "Edit" to change the WDS connection settings for the associated WDS Tree. This list can be set to refresh automatically at fixed intervals (10s, 20s, 30s, 40s, 50s, 60s).

**WDS Update:** To add a new WDS connection, select New Parent AP and New Child AP from the respective drop-down list and click "Add". Note that a new WDS Tree will be added if the selected Parent AP is not in any of the current WDS Trees. To update the current WDS tree, select Update Parent AP and Update Child AP from the respective drop-down list and click "Move". Note that the link to the original parent AP of the selected Update Child AP will be removed. To delete a WDS link, select the AP from the drop-down list and click "Delete". Note that all WDS connections of the selected AP will



be deleted including the WDS connections to its Child APs, and the Child APs without wired connection will become unreachable.

## 7.2.6 Rogue AP Scanning

Rogue AP detection is another essential way of protecting your network environment. Local AP Management supports the detection of non-authorized access points present in the vicinity.

Non-authorized access points pose a possible problem in terms of wireless interference. Go to [Main Menu >> Devices >> Enter Local Area AP Management >> Rogue AP Detection](#) to set up the function. Admin should determine the scanning interval, select an AP for the scanning job as sensors, and add AP's shown in the suspected rogue AP list to the trusted list for further management if it can be manually identified as a safe source.

### General Configuration

**Rogue AP Detection**

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable
 Apply

**Scanning Interval**

minutes
 Configure

**Sensor List**

0/0
 Configure

**Trusted APs**

0/40
 Configure

### Rogue AP List

Add to Trusted AP List

Delete

ESSID

Search

	No	Rogue AP BSSID	ESSID	Type	Channel	Encryption	RSSI	Report Time
(Total:0) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <div></div> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: <div>10</div>								

Discovered access points are temporarily put in the Rogue AP list. Click one of the hyperlinked BSSID's to see its detailed information. However, if admin recognized some of the listed APs as trusted, just check the checkboxes before the BSSID column and then click **Add to Trusted AP List**. This action will be recorded in the **Trusted AP Configuration**.



## 7.3 Wide Area AP Management

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management](#)

This section goes on to explain how to centrally manage the access points on the WAN from a 4ipnet WHG controller. It is worth noting that WAN-side AP's are supposed to have public IP addresses that are routable on the Internet.

Main Benefits of Wide Area AP Management:

- Cross Layer 3 IP network management
- Centralized traffic forwarding for distributed remote AP sites.
- Graphical Map utility for easy reference and deployment planning.
- Traffic transmit statistics for 3<sup>rd</sup> party AP devices.
- CAPWAP support, complete tunnel and split tunnel.

An Overview of Wide Area Managed Access Points is available on the AP List.

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Access Points >> Wide Area AP Management >> AP List](#)

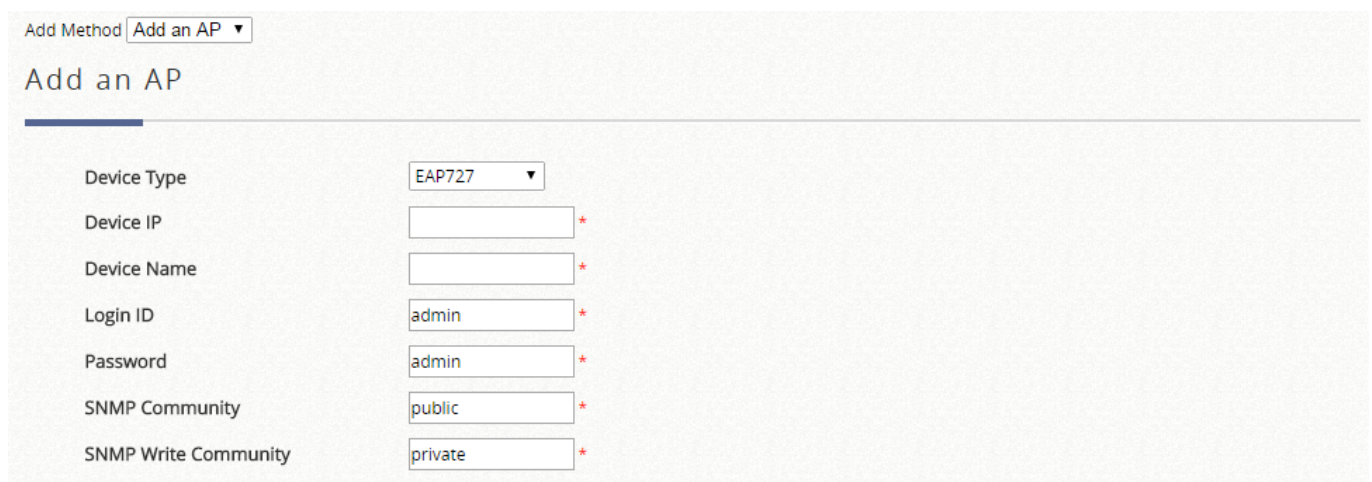
### NOTE

1. Wide Area AP Management can be used to manage APs physically deployed on the WAN side and LAN side of the controller.

### 7.3.1. Adding an Access Point

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Access Points >> Wide Area AP Management >> AP List >> Add](#)

The Adding page allows administrator to directly add a single Access Point to the management list regardless of its Status. Simply configure the device's IP address, name and login credentials, set a SNMP community string and click the Apply button.



### 7.3.2. AP Discovery to find Multiple Access Points

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Access Points >> Wide Area AP Management >> AP List >> Add](#)

With the AP Discovery feature, administrator can scan for APs regardless of their physical location as long as their IP addresses can be reached. An IP scanning range may be configured. Select the target Device Type, define the scan IP range and Admin Settings, then click "Discover". After the discovery process, newly found AP's will be listed under Device Results where the administrator can specify the individual APs Device Name and SNMP Community string. Select and click the Add button and the discovered APs will be added into List.

### Discovery AP

---

Device Type

EAP320 ▾

Admin Settings Used to Discover

Start IP Address

End IP Address

Login ID

admin

Password

admin

---

### Device Results

---

	Device Type	IP Address	Device Name	SNMP Community
--	-------------	------------	-------------	----------------

### 7.3.3 AP Configuration with Templates

Configuration with templates is supported on selected models for Wide Area AP Management.

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> Template](#)

Main > Access Points > Wide Area AP Management > Template

### Template AP Setting

---

Select Template

Template1 ▾

Country Code

USA ▾

General Settings

VAP Configuration

Security Settings

Advanced Wireless Settings

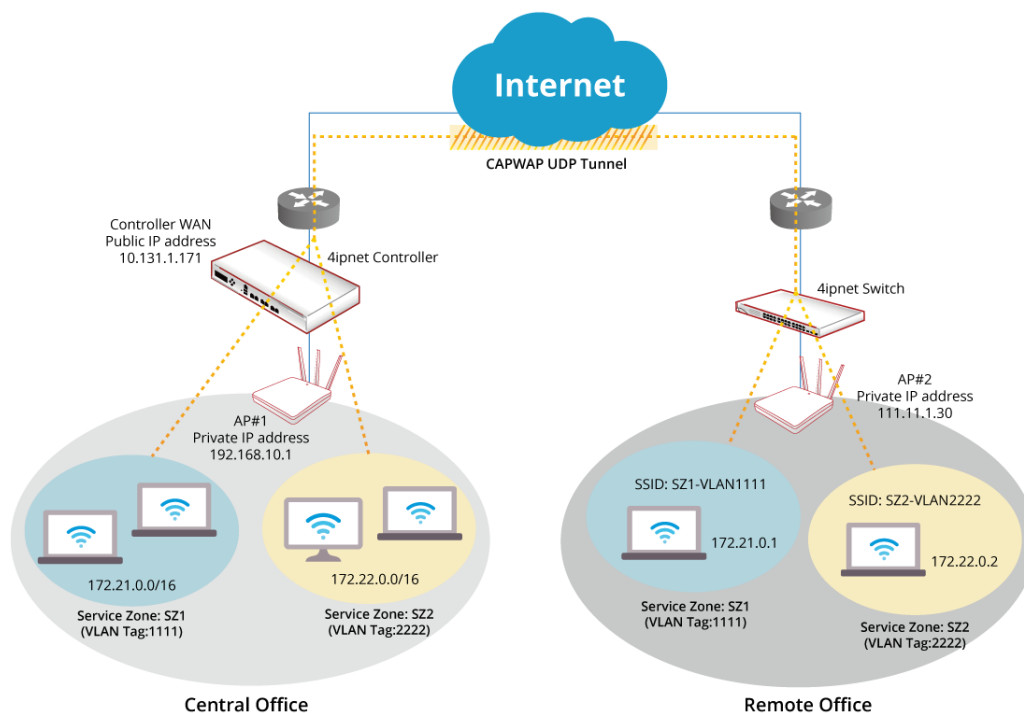


Up to 3 Templates are available and all functions configurable for wireless on the access point can be configured from the template.

**General Settings** on the Access Point include basic wireless settings such as the Band, Channel, Transmit Power, Transmit Rates and etc. **VAP Settings** allows the administrator to enable/disable a VAP, designate an ESSID, and assign VLAN ID with/without corresponding tunnel if needed. Configure **Security Settings**, such as WEP, 802.1X, WPA-Personal, WPA-Enterprise if needed. **Advanced Wireless Settings** allows the administrator to fine-tune performance and efficiency on the Access Points to maintain good wireless connection quality for associated clients.

### 7.3.4 AP auto Discovery and Configuration using CAPWAP

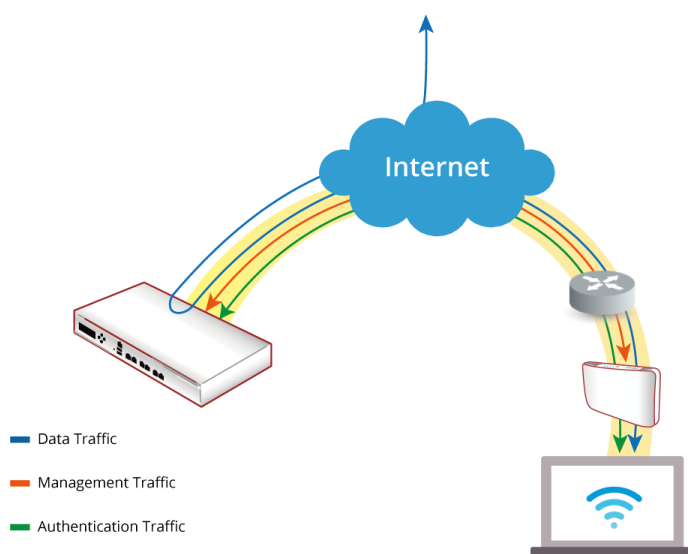
CAPWAP is a standard interoperable protocol that enables a WHG Controller to manage a collection of wireless access points. Two tunneling options are available: complete tunnel and split tunnel.



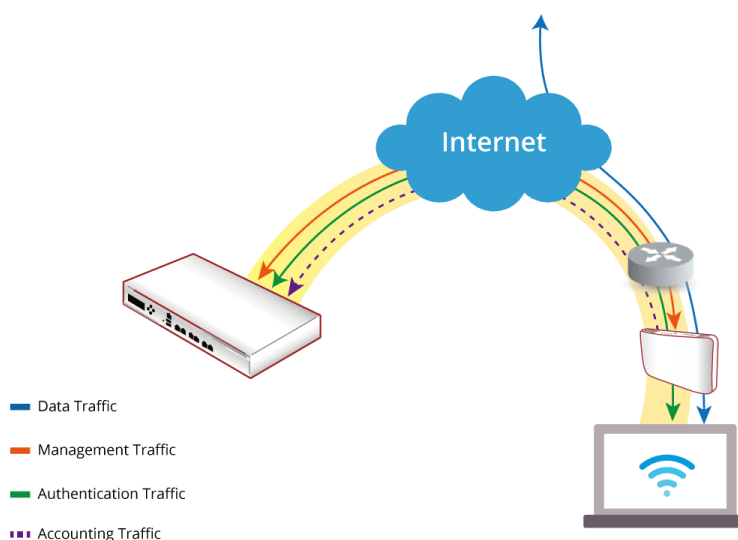
**Complete Tunnel** uses the CAPWAP protocol to communicate with an Access Point so



that all management traffic, authentication traffic and data traffic from the service area AP provided are transmitted back to the Controller, before forwarding data traffic to the internet. The WHG Controller is able to implement role-based policies over Layer 3 networks, with user access control available in the remote sites. This feature allows the 4ipnet WHG Controller to fully support centralized AP management and user management.



For **Split tunnel**, only user authentication related traffic will be directed back to the controller. For authenticated users, data traffic will go to the Internet through the local network directly. The user data can be transmitted with a shorter path and the network load of the controller can also be reduced.



## Configuration Steps:

1. On the 4ipnet controller: Enable CAPWAP from [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> CAPWAP](#)
2. Make sure that the Controllers' CAPWAP settings uses a security certificate that is issued by the same CA. For information on Certificate management on the controller please refer to the subsequent chapter in this guide.

The screenshot shows the 'CAPWAP Configuration' page. At the top, there is a breadcrumb trail: 'Main > Device Management > Wide Area AP Management > CAPWAP'. Below this, the title 'CAPWAP Configuration' is displayed. The configuration options are as follows:

- CAPWAP Status:** Radio buttons for 'Enable' (selected) and 'Disable'.
- Apply Certificate to APs:** A dropdown menu showing 'DEFAULT'.
- Trusted Certificate Authority(CA):** A dropdown menu showing 'DEFAULT'.
- IP Address For Control Channel:** A text input field containing '100.64.145.254'. To its right, a red note says '\*Netmask:255.255.254.0'.
- Control Channel IP Range:** A text input field containing '100.64.144.1 ~ 100.64.145.253'. To its right, a red note says '\*Number of IPs:509'.

At the bottom right, there are two buttons: 'Apply' (with a checkmark icon) and 'Cancel' (with an 'X' icon).

3. Upload the necessary security certificate into the AP in order for the Controller to validate CAPWAP discovery and join requests.
4. Configure the CAPWAP template from VAP Settings in the Template. VAP traffic may be selected to be tunneled back to the controller's enabled SZ profile. There are three types of tunnel interfaces. **Disabled** doesn't establish any tunnel, **Complete Tunnel** creates the tunnel that transfers all data back to the Controller, while **Split Tunnel** collects only management traffic and authentication traffic back for the Controller. Only the latter two tunnel interface require the administrator to select mapping Service Zones for each VAP.

Main > Device Management > Wide Area AP Management > Template > VAP Configuration

### VAP Configuration - Template1

Profile Name	RF Card A : VAP-1
VAP	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable
Profile Name	Guest
ESSID	Guest
Uplink Bandwidth	0 Kbits/s *(1-1048576, 0:Disable)
Downlink Bandwidth	0 Kbits/s *(1-1048576, 0:Disable)
VLAN ID	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable
	VLAN ID 1000 *( 1 - 4094 )
Uplink 802.1p	Best Effort (BE)
Downlink 802.1p AC Mapping	Background (BK) Best Effort
	Best Effort (BE) Best Effort
	Excellent Effort (EE) Best Effort
	Critical Applications (CA) Best Effort
	Video (VI) Best Effort
	Voice (VO) Best Effort
	Internetwork Control (IC) Best Effort
	Network Control (NC) Best Effort
CAPWAP Tunnel Interface	Split Tunnel
Service Zone	<input type="radio"/> Disabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Complete Tunnel <input type="radio"/> Split Tunnel

Apply Cancel

5. On the AP side: Enable the CAPWAP function from System >> CAPWAP, where the administrator will see several discovery methods to be activated, namely:

#### (1) **DNS SRV Discovery**

This type of discovery utilizes a DNS server to complete the discovery method. Through the DNS SRV record acquired, the AP will recognize the Controller to send CAPWAP join request.

## (2) **DHCP Option Discovery**

Administrator should enable the CAPWAP feature and the DHCP server of the controller in order for the AP to get an IP address that is in the same subnet of that of the 4ipnet WHG controller it is trying to connect.

## (3) **Broadcast Discovery**

The AP sends broadcast requests to all the IP addresses in a subnet. 4ipnet WHG controllers, and other gateways mostly, do not allow broadcasts to go over subnets. Make sure the controller is in the same subnet as the AP when you enable the function.

## (4) **Multicast Discovery**

Multicast discovery works by sending a multicast discover packet to the network in hopes of the correct controller responding to it. This function should go with a proper setup on the routing paths of the AP. Please make sure you enable it with the related settings in place.

## (5) **Static Discovery**

Static discovery is the most recommended discovery method since it is intuitive to implement without any pre-settings to complete in advance. Simply enable the function and type in the IP address of the 4ipnet WHG controller you want this AP to join to.

Successful CAPWAP joining will lead to the AP being listed in the managed AP list, as illustrated below:

CAPWAP column will display a 'RUN' status, and the tunnel status will show a clickable 'edit' button in black if a VAP is configured to be tunneled back to the controller.

AP List

Type: All  
Status: All  
Tunnel: None  
Name:  Search

Refresh Interval: 120 seconds Refresh

Add Delete Add to Map Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade Apply Settings Reboot

	Type	Name	IP	MAC	Map	Template	Status	# of Users	Tunnel	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP	AP Ver.
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP767	EAP767_TW	172.201.100.3	00:1F:D4:04:74:0F	Overview	30	Online	0	Edit	System Overview Go	RUN	1.20.00
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP767	Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP767	10.131.3.100	00:1F:D4:AB:82:0C	Overview	2	Online	0	Edit	System Overview Go	RUN	1.20.00

(Total 2) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 Row per Page 20

AP WMI will show with the VAP enabled and tunnel status as well on the System Overview page:

**LAN Interface**

MAC Address: 00:1F:D4:04:74:0F

IP Address: 10.131.7.67

Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Gateway: 10.131.1.254

**AP Status**

RF Card Name: RF Card A

Profile Name	BSSID	ESSID	Security Type	Online Clients	TUN
767-A1	00:1F:D4:04:74:10	EAP767-A1	Open	0	
767-A16	E2:1F:D4:04:74:10	EAP767-A16	Open	0	

**CAPWAP**

Status: Run (10.131.5.57)

Data Channel: Active

**IPv6**

Status: Disabled

The VAP Configuration on the AP WMI also displays which kind of CAPWAP Tunnel Interface is operation in different VAP.

4ipnet® Logout

System Wireless Firewall Utilities Status

VAP Overview General VAP Config Security Repeater Advanced Access Control Hotspot 2.0

Home > Wireless > VAP Configuration

### VAP Configuration

Profile Name : RF Card A : 767-A1 ▼

VAP : ☐ Disable ☒ Enable

Profile Name : 767-A1

ESSID : EAP767-A1

VLAN ID : ☒ Disable ☐ Enable

VLAN ID :  \*(1 - 4094)

CAPWAP Tunnel Interface : Split Tunnel ▼

Service Zone : Default ▼

SAVE CLEAR

## NOTE

1. AP tunnels will be established automatically when the CAPWAP template has selected VAP to be enabled and tunneled back to a SZ.
2. If the CAPWAP discovery process fails, please check the certificate settings used on the Controller and the certificate uploaded into the AP.
3. Controllers CAPWAP Log may be referenced during trouble shooting process.

## 7.3.5 Tunneled VAP Location Mapping Setup

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> List](#)

For VAPs which are tunneled back to the controller from remote APs. Administrator may wish to allocate a NAS Identifier as well as designate an IP pool for service.

In the managed AP list in Wide Area AP Management, administrator can allocate NAS Identifier and designate an IP pool for service for each VAP of a Managed AP. This can be configured while establishing tunnels between the AP and Controller.



## AP List

Type   
 Status   
 Tunnel

[Add](#) [Delete](#) [Add to Map](#) [Backup Config](#) [Restore Config](#) [Upgrade](#)

<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Name	IP	MAC	Status	# of Users	Tunnel Status	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP260	Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP260	10.29.43.131	00:1F:D4:01:DD:BC	Online	0	 <a href="#">Edit</a>	System Overview <input type="text" value="Go"/>	RUN

(Total 1) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page

Row per Page

## Enterprise\_Access\_Point\_-\_EAP260: VAP Status

Profile Name	ESSID	VLAN ID	Tunnel Port Location Mapping Setup	Mapped Service Zone
VAP-1	EAP260-1	1000	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="text" value="Default"/>
VAP-2	EAP260-2	1001	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="text" value="SZ1"/>
VAP-3	EAP260-3	1002	<a href="#">Configure</a>	<input type="text" value="SZ2"/>

## Tunnel Port Location Mapping Setup

Service Zone / Prefer DHCP Pool

User Limitation  (Blank is for unlimited.)

ESSID

Room Number / Location ID

Room Description / Location Name

NAS Identifier

Once the VAP tunneled back, complete tunnel or split tunnel, has been configured with PLM (Port Location Mapping), remote sites may also benefit from the PMS system or other centrally managed hotspot operations which require location attributes or information.

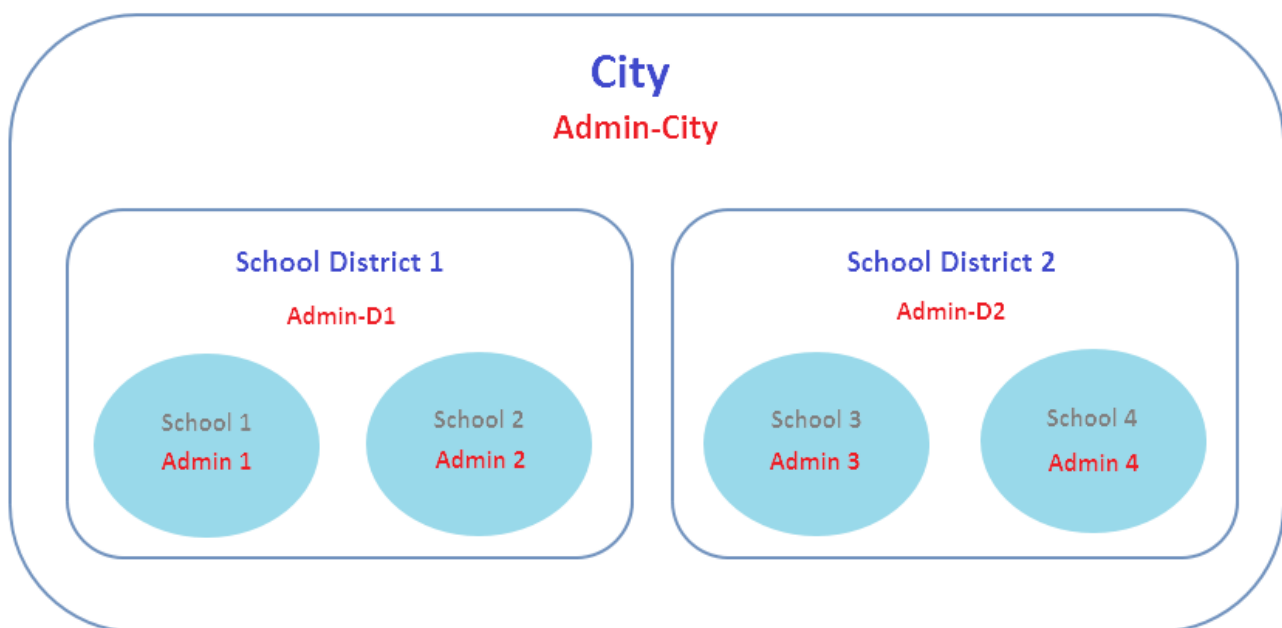


### 7.3.6 Access Points on Map & AP Grouping

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> AP Grouping >> Map Configuration](#)

In Wide Area AP Management, all the managed APs must be designated to an AP Group by Maps. Each AP must be configured to belong to a map. All APs will be added to the Default Map, or you may create a new map for selection before you add a new AP.

AP grouping allows different levels of administrators to manage APs by different AP group. An AP Group can include multiple maps and AP templates. On the other hand, a map can be included by different AP groups. You may assign different administrator groups to have different read/write permission for each AP group.



【A simple concept diagram illustrating AP Grouping】

4ipnet controller supports adding AP's on Google Map. The process is shown below:

1. Create your own map by clicking **Add** under **Map List** at the bottom page and then fill in the necessary fields shown in the popup window. Click **Apply**.
2. Add the deployment location of the AP in the AP's attribute profile (longitude and latitude). [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> List - AP Attribute \(Edit\)](#)

AP List

Type: All  
Status: All  
Tunnel: None

Add Delete Add to Map Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade

Type	Name	IP	MAC	Status	# of Users	Tunnel Status	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP
EAP260	Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP260	10.29.43.131	00:1F:D4:01:DD:BC	Online	0	<span>●</span> Edit	System Overview Go	RUN

(Total 1) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 Row per Page 20

3. Go back to the List page, choose the AP, and then click the **Add to Map** button, and choose the desired map.

Add to Map

Add AP(Enterprise\_Access\_Point\_-\_EAP260) into a Map

Please Select a Map :

Apply Cancel

After the settings, admin should be able to see an icon of the AP on the selected map.

Overview path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> Map](#)

## NOTE

1. The button **Show Coverage** on the main page of **Map** indicates the wireless coverage on the map for the deployment's use. There's also a tool on the bottom of the page for admin to calculate the distance between two APs.

Go to [Main Menu >> Devices >> Wide Area AP Management >> AP Grouping >> AP Grouping List](#) to add or delete the AP group.

### AP Grouping

Add
Delete

	AP Group	Map	Template
<input type="checkbox"/>	456	123	1 3 5

Click Add to add an AP group, each AP group can include maps and templates to be managed.

### AP Grouping Add

AP Group Name

Map

Selectiable

Selected

Overview

123

Template

Selectiable

Template2
Template4
Template5
Template7
Template8

Selected

Template1
Template3
Template6

After an AP group is created, you may assign access permission to each AP group by

adding an Administrator Group to the Administrator Group List.

Main > Utilities > Administrator Accounts > Administrator Group List

## Administrator Group List

<input type="checkbox"/>	name	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Super Group	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Manager	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Operator	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	On Demand	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom 1	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom 2	remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	Custom 3	remark

Assigning permission to an AP group.

	Disabled	▼	SZ7
	Disabled	▼	SZ8
AP GROUP	Disabled	▼	Select All
	Disabled	▼	456
AP Management	Read Only		
	Read/Write		
	Disabled	▼	Select All
AP Management	Disabled	▼	Local Area AP Management
	Disabled	▼	Wide Area AP Management
Switch Management	Disabled	▼	

### 7.3.7 Rogue AP Scanning

Rogue AP detection is another essential way of protecting your network environment. Wide AP Management supports the detection of non-authorized access points present in the vicinity.

Non-authorized access points pose a possible problem in terms of wireless interference. Go to [Main Menu >> Devices >> Enter Local Area AP Management >> Rogue AP Detection](#) to set up the function. Admin should then determine the scanning interval, select an AP for the scanning job as sensors, and add AP's shown in the suspected rogue AP list to the trusted list for further management if it can be manually identified as a safe source.

#### General Configuration

Rogue AP Detection	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	Apply
Scanning Interval	<input type="text" value="0"/> minutes	
Channel Switching	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable	
Sensor List	0/0	Configure
Trusted APs	0/40	Configure

#### Rogue AP List

Add to Trusted AP List Delete

ESSID

<input type="checkbox"/>	No	Rogue AP BSSID	ESSID	Type	Channel	Encryption	RSSI	Report Time
--------------------------	----	----------------	-------	------	---------	------------	------	-------------

(Total:0) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page  (Page:1/1) Row per Page:

The discovered access points are temporarily put in the Rogue AP list. Click on one of the hyperlinked BSSID's to see its detailed information. However, if admin recognizes some of the listed APs as trusted, just check the checkboxes before the BSSID column and then click **Add to Trusted AP List**. This action will be recorded in the **Trusted AP Configuration**.

### 7.3.8 AP Load Balancing Feature

It is a function to prevent managed APs from overloading. When the system detects the occurrence of APs' associated-client numbers exceeding a predefined threshold at circumstances and other APs in the same group are still below the threshold, the balancing function will be activated to decrease the overloading APs' transmit power and increase other available APs' transmit power; this would increase chances for other available APs to be associated. The system can divide the managed APs into groups; define the group threshold, and a time interval which will trigger the AP load balancing.

Wide Area AP Management feature also supports the grouping of various managed APs and perform transmit power management to spread the network load as evenly as possible among APs of the same group.

The administrator can specify the criteria under which AP load balancing feature will be enforced. The attributes that can be customized for creating your own load balancing initiation criteria includes the enforcement interval and the associated client or traffic threshold.

#### WAPM Load Balancing

Load Balancing

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

AP Distance

meter(s)

Interval

minute(s)

Threshold

☒ Number of Clients  clients  
☐ Number of Packets

Cluster

Apply

Configure

#### Device List

AP Type

EAP320

List

Cluster	Device Name	MAC Address	IP Address	Power Level	Loading	Log
---------	-------------	-------------	------------	-------------	---------	-----

These are automatically calculated by the Controller via the distance attributes of each of the managed AP profile.



## Chapter 8. Advanced Settings for Network Environment

### 8.1 IPv4 / IPv6 Dual Stack Network

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> System >> IPv6](#)

4ipnet WHG Controller supports operating in an IPv6 networking environment. When IPv6 configuration option is enabled, administrator may assign IPv4 IP address as well as IPv6 address to either WAN1 or WAN2 of the network interface. There are three ways to configure an IPv6 address for the chosen WAN interface, namely Static, 6to4, and go6. Please select the option applicable to your environment.

IPv6 Setting

IPv6 ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Interface ☒ WAN1 ☐ WAN2

Type ☐ Static (Use the following IPv6 settings)  
☒ Use 6to4 transition

Mode: ☒ Automatic ☐ Configured

IPv6 Address:

Prefix Length:

Preferred DNS Server:

Alternate DNS Server:

☐ Use go6 transition

- **6to4:** 6to4 is an Internet transition mechanism for migrating from IPv4 to IPv6, a system that allows IPv6 packets to be transmitted over an IPv4 network (generally the IPv4 internet) without the need to configure explicit tunnels. 6to4 option can only be chosen when the selected WAN interface is set with a static IPv4 address.
- **Go6:** Go6 is based on the provision of dedicated servers, called Tunnel Brokers, to automatically manage tunnel requests from users. A set of Username and

Password will be provided by the ISP for authentication. The Username, Password and Server Address are the only mandatory fields for go6 transition. The list of Tunnel Brokers is growing and administrators can choose to define a specific Tunnel Broker by enabling "Assign Broker Address" and entering the Broker Address.

## ▪ IPv4 / IPv6 Network Utilities

Configure Network Utility; go to: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> Network Utilities](#)

The system provides network utilities to help administrators manage the network easily.

### Network Utilities

Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> IPv4 <input type="radio"/> IPv6 <input type="radio"/> Sniff	
IPv4	Ping	<input type="text" value="IP/Domain Name"/> <input type="button" value="Ping"/>
	Trace Route	<input type="text" value="IP/Domain Name"/> <input type="button" value="Start"/> <input type="button" value="Stop"/>
	ARPing	<input type="text" value="IP/Domain Name"/> Interface <input type="text" value="WAN1"/> <input type="button" value="ARPing"/>
	VLAN ID	<input type="text" value="IP/MAC"/> <input type="button" value="Find"/>
	ARP Table	<input type="button" value="Show"/>
Status		
Result		

Item	Description
<b>IPv4</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Ping:</b> It allows administrator to detect a device using IP address or Host domain name to see if it is responding.</li> <li>▪ <b>Trace Route:</b> It allows administrator to recover the real path of packets from the gateway to a destination using IP address or Host domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>ARPing:</b> Allows administrator to send ARP request for a specific IP address or domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>ARP Table:</b> It allows administrator to view the IP-to-Physical address translation tables used by address resolution protocol (ARP).</li> </ul>
<b>IPv6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Ping:</b> It allows administrator to detect a device using IPv6 address or Host domain name to see if it is responding.</li> <li>▪ <b>Trace Route 6:</b> It allows administrator to recover the real path of packets from the gateway to a destination using IPv6 address or Host domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>Neighbor Discovery:</b> The administrator can use this feature to learn about IPv6 Neighbor nodes that are on the same IP segment or domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>Neighbor Cache:</b> a node manages the information of its neighbors in the Neighbor Cache. This feature allows the administrator to view the information stored on system's neighbor cache.</li> </ul>
<b>Sniff</b>	With this feature the administrator can listen for packets from selected Interfaces. The administrator can further filter the types of packets to capture by using tcpdump commands

	under the <b>Expression</b> field.
<b>Status</b>	When the administrator is executing any Network Utilities features, the status of the operation is displayed here.
<b>Result</b>	The operation result is displayed here.

## 8.2 User Access Control

Network operators may want to limit the accessibility of certain accounts or devices from authentication or association from time to time. This section describes the ways in which user or device restrictions may be achieved.

### 8.2.1 Black List

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Black List](#)

The black list is a tool for user access control. Each black list can hold specific user accounts that will be denied of network access. The administrator can use the pull-down menu to select the desired black list profile to edit.

Select Blacklist 1: Blacklist1

### Blacklist Settings

Blacklist Name Blacklist1 Apply

Add Delete

User Name	Remark
-----------	--------

(Total:0/40) First Prev Next Last Go to Page (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 10

## Adding User(s) to Blacklist1

40 users can be added to this Blacklist.

No.	Username	Remark
1	<input type="text" value="User1"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
10	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

After entering the usernames in the **Username** blanks fields and the related information in the **Remark** blank fields (not required), click **Apply** to add the users.

To remove a user from the black list, select the user's **Delete** hyperlink to remove that user from the black list.

Select Blacklist 1: Blacklist1 ▼

### Blacklist Settings

Blacklist Name

<input type="checkbox"/>	User Name	Remark
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	User1	

After the Black List is setup completed, select the Black List in the desired Authentication Server for it to become effective.

### Local Authentication

User Postfix	local
Blacklist	1 : Blacklist1
Local User List	Configure
Account Roaming Out	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
802.1X Authentication	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

## 8.2.2 MAC ACL

Configuration Path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Additional Controls](#)

**MAC ACL** is a MAC address Access Control List where specific MAC addresses may be listed for access filtering, either allow or deny. User authentication is still required for MAC ACL Allowed users. Click **Configure** to enter the **MAC Address Control** list. Click **Add MACs** to fill in the desired MAC addresses, select **Allow** or **Deny** and then click **Apply**.

### MAC Access Control List

MAC Access Control List **Configure**

MAC Access Control is used to grant or deny permission to access the User Login Page.

List Type ☒ Allow ☐ Deny ☐ Disable **Apply**

### Access Control List

**Add MACs** Delete

No.	MAC Address
(Total:0/400) First Prev Next Last Go to Page (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 20	



**NOTE**





1. The format of the MAC address is: xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx or xx-xx-xx-xx-xx-xx. Colon will be automatically inserted by the system.

## 8.3 Certification

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> Certificate](#)

WHG Access Controller can issue certificates to APs that it manages in its private network. Administrator can sign certificates issues by the system's root CA and load these certificates to managed APs. These security certificates will be used in verifying the identity and authenticity of CAPWAP discovery requests between AP and AC. Also, they could be used for authentication of Built-in RADIUS Server users roaming out. 'Certificate Management' gives a summary of certificates available and which are currently in use.

### Certificate Management

Cert Name	Common Name	Used by
System Certificate		
 Default Certificate	CN=gateway.example.com	WEB Server
Internal Root CA		
 Internal Root CA	N/A	
Internally Issued Certificate		
 N/A	N/A	
Trusted Certificate Authorities (CA)		
		

To enter settings, click "Edit" icon on the top-left corner of each category.

### 8.3.1. System Certificate

This is the certificate that identifies the system. These certificates may be used for applications such as HTTPS login, CAPWAP, and etc. The Controller has a built-in Factory Default Certificate (gateway.example.com) that cannot be removed, but allows certificates to be uploaded. To view details of the certificate, click the corresponding "View" button.

System Certificate		
Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
<b>Factory Default Certificate</b>		
Factory Default Certificate	CN=gateway.example.com	<a href="#">View</a>
<b>Internally Issued Certificate</b>		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>
<b>Uploaded Certificate</b>		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

Certificate	
DEFAULT	
Subject	C=US ST=US L=CA O=EXAMPLE,INC CN=gateway.example.com
Issuer	C=US ST=US L=CA O=EXAMPLE,INC CN=gateway.example.com
Validity	2020/08/13 10:36:37
<a href="#">Get CERT</a> <a href="#">Get Key</a>	

Click "Get CERT" and "Get Key" to download the certificate and public key onto your local disk.

To Upload a Certificate/Private Key/Intermediate CA, click "Browse", select the appropriate files, and click Upload Files.

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Upload System Certificate". It contains three rows of input fields: "Certificate", "Private Key", and "Intermediate CA". Each row has a text input field followed by a "Browse..." button. Below these fields is a "Certification Path Verification" section with two radio buttons: "Enable" and "Disable", where "Disable" is selected. At the bottom left of the form is an "Upload Files" button.

### 8.3.2. Internal Root CA

The administrator can upload an Internal Root CA, or generate a root CA for private use. The created root CA certificate can be downloaded and used to sign certificates generated by the system. Note that the system only allows one Internal Root CA to be created.

The screenshot shows a web form titled "Generate Root CA". It contains several input fields for certificate details: "Common Name", "Email Address", "Country Name", "State or Province Name", "Locality Name", "Organization Name", and "Organization Unit Name". Below these are two dropdown menus: "Key Type" (set to "RSA") and "Key Length" (set to "512"). A "Generate Certificate" button is located at the bottom left of the form.

To upload an Internal Root CA, click browse to select the Certificate and matching Private Key from your local disk, and click "Upload Files".

Once an Internal Root CA is uploaded/generated, details will be shown in the following format.

Internal Root CA		
Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Internal Root CA		
Root CA	CN=4ipnet.com	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

To view details of the certificate, click the "View" button.

### 8.3.3. Internally Issued Certificate

Internally Issued Certificates can be generated on this page. Note that an Internal Root CA needs to be created first before Internally Issued Certificates can be signed. Certificate Information is an overview that displays all current Internally Issued Certificates. To view details of the certificate, click the corresponding "View" button.

## Certificate Information

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Internally Issued Certificate		
cert1	CN=4iptest.com	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

## Use Internal Root CA to generate certificate

Common Name	<input type="text"/>
Email Address	<input type="text"/>
Country Name	<input type="text"/>
State or Province Name	<input type="text"/>
Locality Name	<input type="text"/>
Organization Name	<input type="text"/>
Organization Unit Name	<input type="text"/>
Key Type	RSA ▼
Key Length	512 ▼
<a href="#">Generate Certificate</a>	

### 8.3.4. Trusted Certificate Authorities

Apart from self signed certificate and system's root CA, administrators can also upload other certificates signed by other CA entities or Trusted CAs into the system. These trusted root CA certificates are intended for the Controller to recognize and trust certificates of External Payment Gateway and/or CAPWAP capable APs. To upload a Trusted CA, click browse to select the Certificate and click "Upload Files". To view details of the certificate, click the corresponding "View" button.

### Trusted Certificate Authorities (CA)

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Certificate Authorities (CA)		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

### Upload Trusted CAs

Certificate

Browse...

Upload Files

## 8.4 Management Access

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> System >> General >> Management IP Address](#)

On the WHG Access Controller, the administrator can grant access to the web management interface by specifying a list specific IP addresses or ranges of IP addresses, both from WAN or from LAN. For example, entering "192.168.3.1" and "192.168.1.0/24" means that only the device at 192.168.3.1 and devices in the range of 192.168.1.0 to 192.168.1.255 are able to reach the web management interface.

The Console interface may be accessed remotely when the **Remote Console** is enabled. For security purposes, console access is disabled by default to prevent malicious users from accessing the system.



## Chapter 9. Utilities for Controller Management

### 9.1 WHG Controller Management

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> Administrator Account](#)

The WHG controller's root management account is the "admin" account with full access, modification and application privilege and authority. There are however, 2<sup>nd</sup> tier accounts with less authority which may be created for management personnel to access their designated assigned areas of authority, a necessary feature for large scale deployment requiring multiple management personnel.

This configuration path will lead to the page for assigning authority property, and generation of other management accounts customizable to suit the needs of your network.

There is only one management account under default status. **Group Permission Settings** will allow you to customize the accessible WMI pages for a particular management group and in turn, create management accounts for that group.

#### Step 1: Configure Password Safety Settings

The screenshot shows the 'General Settings' page with the following configuration options:

- Password Complexity**:
  - ☒ Enable ☐ Disable
  - Min Password Length:  (2~20)
  - Min Password Category:  (2~4)
- Limit Login Attempts**:
  - ☒ Enable ☐ Disable
  - Block access after:  tries
- Password Expiration**:
  - ☒ Enable ☐ Disable
  - Password expires:  day(s) after creation
- Password Limits**:
  - ☒ Enable ☐ Disable
  - Users to choose passwords different from their past:  passwords
- Access Permission**:

Password Safety can be enabled to protect the Web Management Interface from unauthorized personnel. Note that these settings are disabled by default.

## Step 2: Configure Group Access property

Administrator Group Edit

Admin Group Name	Custom 1 *
Service Zone	<div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Select All</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Default</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ1</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ2</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ3</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ4</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ5</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ6</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ7</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> SZ8</div>
AP GROUP	<div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Select All</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> 456</div>
AP Management	<div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Select All</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Local Area AP Management</div> <div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/> Wide Area AP Management</div>
Switch Management	<div>Disabled <input type="button" value="v"/></div>

The Controller supports customizable administration account types, namely Super Group, Manager, On-Demand Manager or Operator. Admin is classified under Super Group, with all access and configuration authorities. Only Super Group members can generate other administrative accounts (Manager, OnDemand Manager and Operator). Permission Settings for all administrative accounts can be customized. With the exception of the Super Group members, other administrative accounts can be configured to have read-write or read-only access.

## Step 3: An Administrator Accounts List is available to display Administrator Accounts

information and their statuses. Create an account by clicking "Add", then inputting the desired account name, password and the assigned authority group. Subsequent to clicking **Apply**, the newly generated account will be displayed in the table below.

Administrator Accounts					
<div>Add ... Delete Lock Admin Unlock Backup List Restore List</div>					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Group	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	10.29.129.162	DC:0E:A1:27:F4:63	Super Group	Current Page: /Utilities/MlaUser.shtml
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	10.30.42.168		Super Group	Current Page: /SystemConfiguration/SCAPList.shtml?sz_id=0

**NOTE**

1. The Password Safety Settings contain constraints or rules which must be followed upon management account creation or password change.
2. Admin List will display all existing management accounts and login status if this account is currently accessing the WMI.
3. Admin account is the root account and may not be deleted or have its authority modified.

## 9.2 Configuration Backup & Restore

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> Backup & Restore](#)

This function is used to backup/restore the WHG Controller settings. Backup can be done periodically via FTP. Furthermore, WHG Controller can be restored to the factory default settings here.

### Backup System

General Backup

Backup

Period Backup

Configure

### Restore System

Restore System Settings

Browse...

No file selected.

☒ Keep WAN1 setting and Management IP Address List.
 ☐ Keep LAN, Alias and DHCP setting.
 ☐ Keep Certificates.
 ☐ Keep Local Area AP Management setting.
 ☐ Keep Wide Area AP Management setting.
 ☐ Keep Internal Authentication Server accounts.

Restore

### Reset to Default

Reset to Factory Default

Reset

## NOTE

1. The General Backup feature will lead to a pop up window prompting to save a db file.
2. Restoring previous db configurations may be performed with options such as keep WAN settings to prevent the loss of WMI connection if this action is performed remotely.
3. Resetting to factory default will erase all configurations and restore the controller to factory configuration. This action also has additional options to keep critical settings.

## 9.3 Firmware Upgrade

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> System Upgrade](#)

The administrator can obtain the latest firmware from 4ipnet's website or 4ipnet's Support Team and upgrade the system. Click **Browse** to search for the firmware file on your local drive and click **Apply** to firmware upgrade. It might take a few minutes before the upgrade process completes and the system needs to be restarted afterwards to activate the new firmware. FTP firmware upgrade is also an option, enter the FTP server IP address, FTP server port, and the FTP account name and password, and lastly specify the complete firmware filename stored on the FTP server that will be used to upgrade the system.

Before performing an upgrade, the system checks for version compatibility ensure system sanity. You may contact the 4ipnet Support Team regarding version compatibility.

The screenshot shows a web interface titled "System Firmware Upgrade". It contains the following fields and controls:

- Current Version:** 3.00.00
- Upload New Firmware:** A text input field followed by a "Browse..." button and an "Apply" button.
- Upgrade Firmware Via FTP:**
  - Anonymous:** Radio buttons for "Yes" (selected) and "No".
  - IP Address:** A text input field.
  - Port:** A text input field.
  - File Name:** A text input field with placeholder text "File Name or Dir/File Name".
  - An "Apply" button is located to the right of the File Name field.

## NOTE

The system **MUST** be restarted before resetting to factory defaults after firmware upgrade.

## 9.4 Restart

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Utilities >> Restart](#)

This function allows the administrator to safely restart WHG Controller, and the process might take several minutes to complete. Click **Apply** to restart WHG Controller. If the power needs to be turned off, it is highly recommended to

restart WHG Controller first and then turn off the power after completing the restart process. The administrator may enter Reason for Restart for maintenance purposes.

## Restart

Do you want to **RESTART** the system?

Reason for Restart:

☐ Perform detailed filesystem check during booting

### NOTE

1. The connection of all online users of the system will be disconnected when system is in the process of restarting.



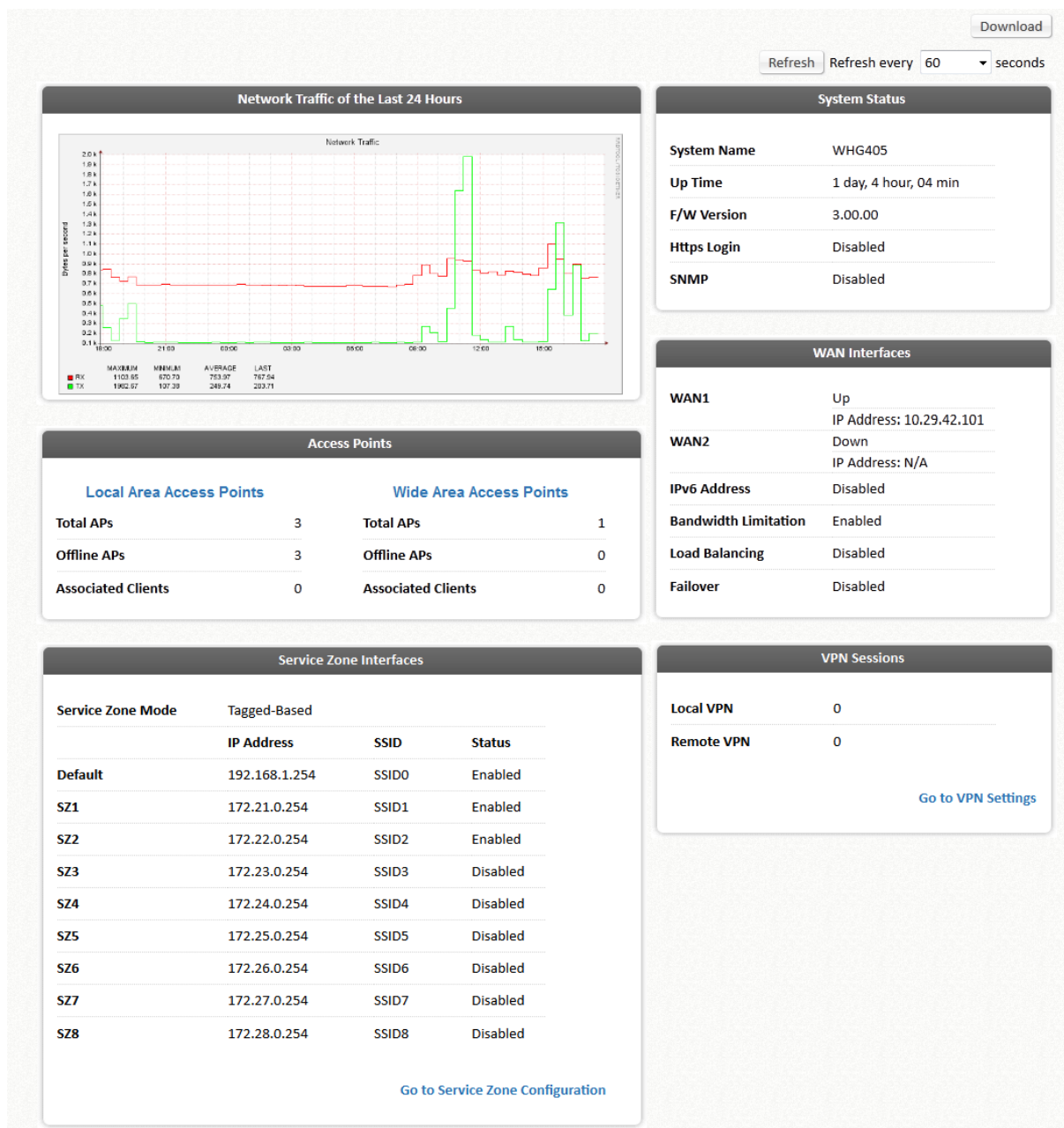
## ***Chapter 10. Reports and Logs for Monitoring***

### **10.1 System Related Status**

#### **10.1.1 The Dashboard**

This page displays important system related information that the administrator might need to be aware of at a glance, which includes General System settings, Network Interface and Online Users etc. A drop-down menu is available for selecting the information refresh rate for this page, or you may click the "Refresh" button to refresh manually.

The download button on the top-right corner is a tool that captures system settings. This is used for maintenance or troubleshooting purposes.



## 10.1.2 System Summary

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> System Summary](#)

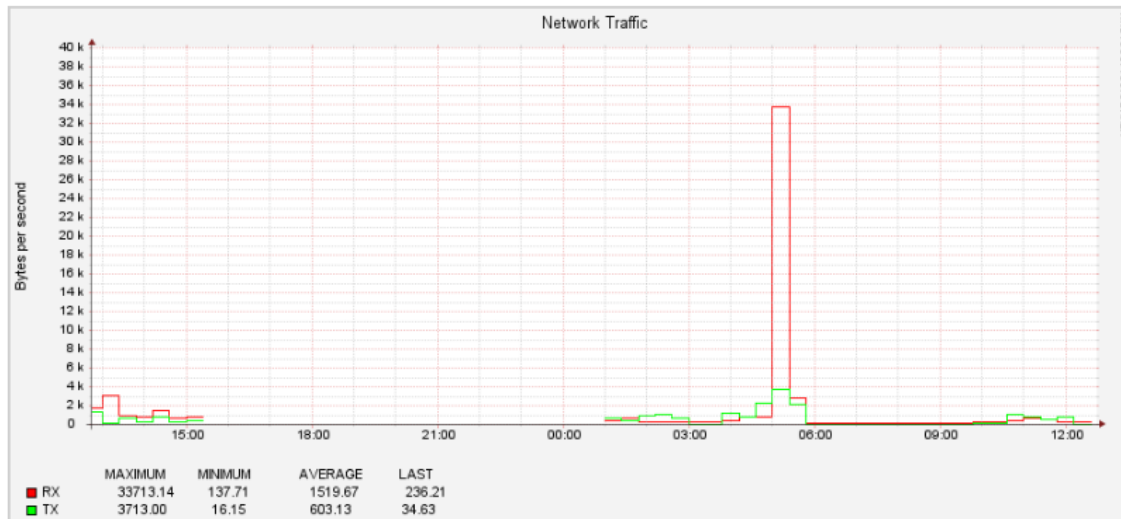
The system status page displays a table of contents including system firmware version, report servers configured, WAN optional settings, User log profile, system time and session control settings. This overview is designed for main configuration items. For detailed status, please proceed to corresponding

configuration pages.

## System Summary

[See Reports](#)

### Network Traffic (WAN1) for the Last 24 Hours



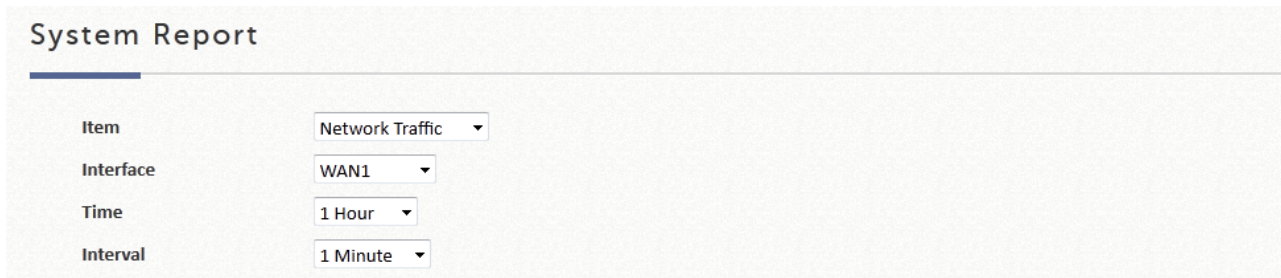
### General

System Name	WHG405	Firmware Version	3.00.00
System Up Time	13 hour, 35 min	Build Number	1.55.4.1-1.6164
System Time	2013/02/07 12:43:02 +0900	NTP Server	N/A
Preferred DNS Server	168.95.1.1	Alternate DNS Server	N/A
Proxy Server	Disabled	Portal URL	http://www.google.com
WAN Failover	Disabled	Load Balancing	Disabled
SNMP	Disabled	Warning of Internet Disconnection	Disabled
Idle Timeout	10 Min(s)	Multiple Login	Disabled

### Report

SYSLOG server 1		N/A:N/A
SYSLOG server 2		N/A:N/A
User Logs	Retained Days	30 days
	Receiver E-mail Address(es)	N/A
		N/A
		N/A
		N/A
		N/A

A selection of Reports is available when the "See Reports" button is clicked. These reports can be sorted based on interface, time and intervals.



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "System Report". Below the title, there are four rows of configuration options, each with a label and a dropdown menu:

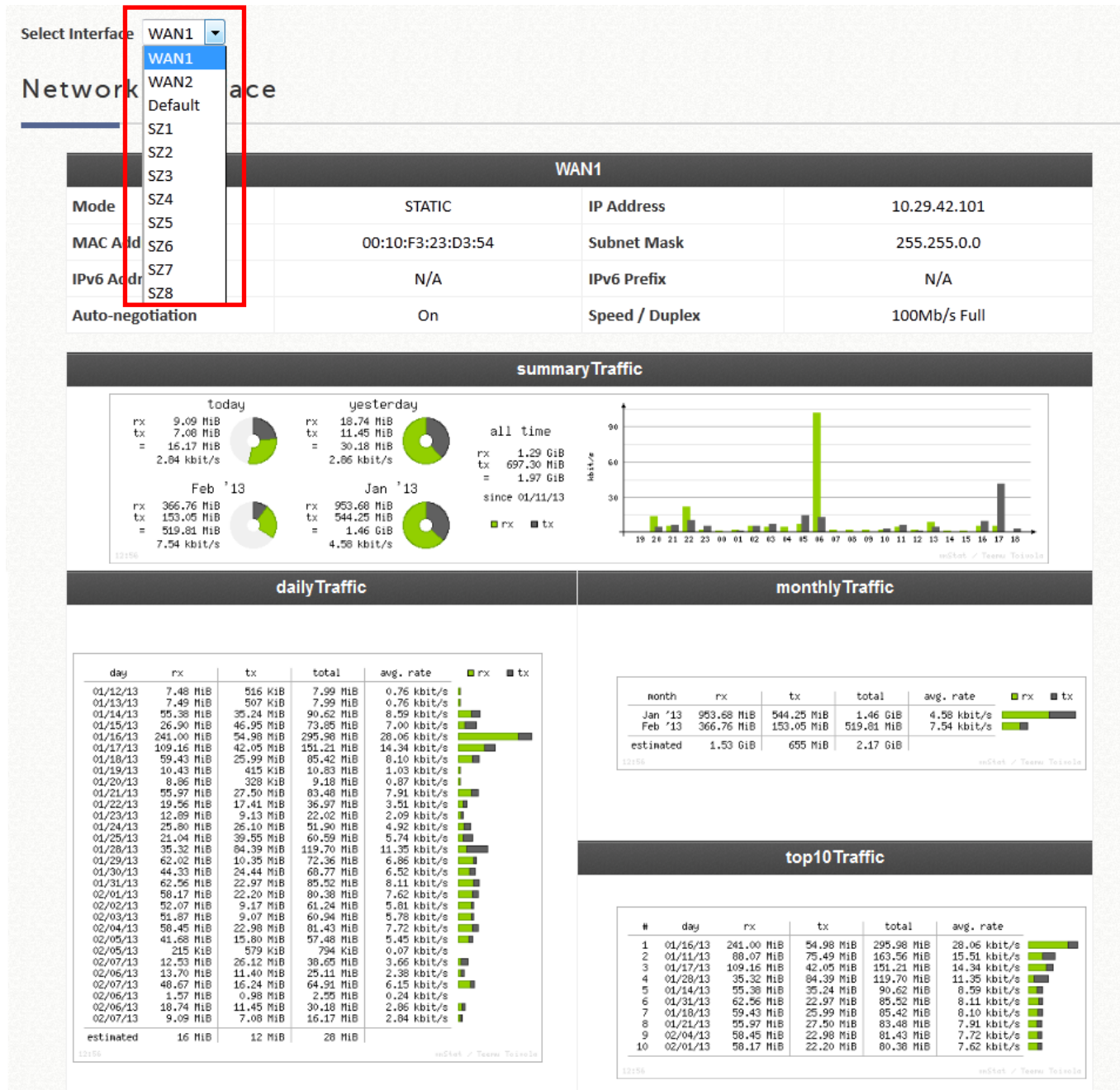
Label	Selected Value
Item	Network Traffic
Interface	WAN1
Time	1 Hour
Interval	1 Minute

### 10.1.3 Network Interface

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Interface](#)

This section provides the details of each of the network interfaces for the administrator to inspect, including **WAN1**, **WAN2**, **SZ Default**, **SZ1 ~ SZ8**.

Select the network interface that you are interested to see. If the selected interface is enabled, the corresponding network settings will be displayed. Scrolling down the page, the traffic statistics for different scales, including traffic summary, traffic of the day, traffic of the month, and traffic of the top 10 days is presented in a graphical manner.



## NOTE

1. If statistics are required to be saved for long term keeping, See Report & Notification section for instructions to send and save network traffic on external servers.

### 10.1.4 Routing

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Routing Tables >> IPv4/IPv6](#)

This status page displays all the **Policy** Route rules, and **Global Policy** Route rules will be listed here. It provides a fast reference window for the administrator to see the routing rules enforcements for users belonging to different Policies. It also shows the **System** Route rules specified for each network interface.

IPv6 are available for Global policy, and the rules configured there will also be shown in the IPv6 routing table page along with System interface settings for IPv6 traffic.

### 10.1.5 DHCP Server

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> DHCP Leases](#)

The DHCP IP lease statistics can be viewed after clicking on **Show** Statistics List on this page.

- **Statistics of offered list**

Valid lease counts of the **Last 10 Minutes, Hours** and **Days** are shown here. The header 1 ~ 10 are unit multipliers; for instance the number under column 2 indicates the lease count in the last 20 minutes/hours/days, the number under column 3 indicated the lease count in the last 30 minutes/hours/days and so on.

- **Statistics of expired list**

IP leased to clients that have expired in the **Last 10 Minutes, Hours** and **Days** are shown here. The header 1 ~ 10 are unit multipliers; for instance the number under column 2 indicates the expired count in the last 20



minutes/hours/days, the number under column 3 indicated the expired count in the last 30 minutes/hours/days and so on.

### IPs Offered

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Last 10 Minutes	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Hours	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Days	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### IPs Expired

Refresh

Refresh Disable

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Last 10 Minutes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Hours	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Days	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

## DHCP Lease List

Valid IP addresses issued from the DHCP Server and related information of the client using this IP address is displayed here.

### DHCP Leases

Statistics List

Show

DHCP Lease Log


Show

### DHCP Lease List

Refresh

Delete

Refresh Disable

	No.	IP Address	MAC Address	Host Name	VLAN	Lease Expires
	1	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	3154	2013/02/08 11:08:14

(Total:1) [First](#) [Previous](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page 1 (Page:1/1)

Row per Page: 50

## 10.2 Client Related Status

### 10.2.1 Online User

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Monitor Users >> Online Users](#)

Users displayed on this page are the ones that are authenticated by this Controller under its managed network either LAN or remotely tunneled site.

Main > Status > User Monitor > Online Users

Online Users List

Select Mode: ☒ Summary ☐ Detail

Logout Refresh

IP or MAC Search

Refresh 10 Sec. ▼

No.	Status	Username	IP Address	IPv6 Address	MAC Address	SZ / VLAN	Access From
1	Online	example@4ipnet.com	192.168.1.17	N/A	B4:CE:F6:A7:DD:C0	Default / TN#3.1000	<a href="#">Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP760</a>

(Total:1) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 50 ▼

There are 2 modes to select from. Select 'Detail' to display more information, such as Pkts In/Out, Bytes In/Out and etc. Administrators can force out a specific online user by clicking **Kick Out** and check the user access AP status by clicking the hyperlink of the AP name for **Access From**. A "Search" tool is available for searching IP or MAC address of specific online user. Click **Refresh** to update the current users list or you can select the time interval for automatic refresh from the drop-down box in the lower right corner of this page.

### 10.2.2 Associated Non Login Users

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Monitor Users >> Non-Login Devices](#)

This page shows users that have acquired an IP address from the system's DHCP server but have not yet been authenticated, either under the LAN or remotely tunneled site. This feature is designed for administrators to keep track

of systems' resources from being exhausted. The list shows the client's **MAC Address, IP Address** and associated **VLAN ID, Service Zone** as well as **Associated AP** if the client uses wireless connection.

#### Non-Login Devices List

Refresh

Refresh Disable ▾

MAC Address	IP Address	VLAN ID	Service Zone	Associated AP
00:09:6B:CD:82:47	IPv4:192.168.1.47 IPv6:N/A	3154	Default	N/A

(Total:1) ⏪First ⏴Prev Next⏵Last⏩ Go to Page 1 ▾ (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 50 ▾

### 10.2.3 Cross Gateway Roaming Users

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Monitor Users >> Roaming In Users](#)

This page displays the users that are physically under this controller but are authenticated by a roaming peer controller. The users listed here will have their traffic tunneled back to their home controller and forwarded into the internet.

#### Cross Gateway Roaming In Users

Refresh

Refresh Disable ▾

Name	IP Address	MAC Address	VLAN ID	Home	Detail

(Total:0) ⏪First ⏴Prev Next⏵Last⏩ Go to Page ▾ (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 50 ▾

### 10.2.4 On-Demand Roaming Out User

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Monitor Users >> Roaming Out Users](#)

This page shows the users that are authenticated by other Controllers using this Controller's On-Demand database as RADIUS database.

On-Demand Roaming Out Users						
Refresh		Refresh Disable				
Name	IP Address	MAC Address	NAS ID	Session Time	Bytes In / Out	Login Time
					Pkts In / Out	Last Update Time
(Total:0) First Previous Next Last Go to Page (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 50						

## 10.2.5 Session List

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Sessions](#)

This page allows the administrator to inspect sessions currently established between a client and the system. Each result displays the IP and Port values of the Source and Destination. You may define the filter conditions and display only the results you desire.

Session List

Filter

Address Family

Protocol

Source IP

Port

Destination IP

Port

IPv4

All

Apply Filter

Display Mode: ALL

No	Protocol	Source IP	Port	Destination IP	Port	State	Timeout
1	udp	10.29.129.110	17500	10.29.255.255	17500	UNREPLIED	29
2	udp	10.29.36.203	17500	10.29.255.255	17500	UNREPLIED	5
3	udp	10.29.13.1	50119	10.29.255.255	8765	UNREPLIED	9
4	udp	10.29.43.131	35811	10.29.42.101	5246	ASSURED	179
5	tcp	10.28.128.188	54547	10.29.42.101	80	TIME_WAIT	38
6	udp	10.29.42.101	57930	10.29.43.131	161	ASSURED	148

## 10.3 Logs and Reports

### 10.3.1 System Related

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Logs and Reports](#)

This page displays the system's local log and User events since system boot up. Administrators can examine the log entries of various events. However, since all these information are stored on volatile memory, they will be lost during a restart/reboot operation. Therefore if the log information needs to be documented, the administrator will need to make back up manually.

- **CAPWAP Log:** This page shows the CAPWAP message communicated between the Controller and CAPWAP enabled APs.
- **Configuration Change Log:** This page shows the account, and IP of the person that has made changes to Controllers WMI configurations.
- **Local Monthly Usage:** This page shows the aggregated statistics for Local users, showing the transmitted traffic for the month
- **Local Web Log:** This page shows which of the web pages have been accessed on the Controllers built-in web server.
- **On-Demand User Billing Report Log:** This page displays a summary of On-Demand account transactions.
- **RADIUS Server Log:** This page displays the RADIUS messages that pass through the controller.
- **SIP Call Usage:** The log provides the login and logout activities of SIP clients (device and soft clients) such as Start Time, Caller, Callee and Duration (seconds)
- **System Log:** This page displays system related logs for event tracing.
- **UAMD Log:** Displays the UAM related information output from the UAM daemon.

## 10.3.2 User Events

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Logs and Reports >> User Events](#)

This page is packed with all user logs and events. User logs and events can be stored up to 40 days. Displays all user related information customizable to administrator's preference. The administrator gets to choose the number of rows (20, 40, 60, 80, 100) to display per page. Select the Begin and End date from the calendar to filter unwanted User Events. After the Begin and End dates are selected, click "Display" to display all User Events within the selected dates.

The "Download" button downloads the displayed User Events into a comma separated .txt file. Save as a new file with .csv extension to sort the downloaded data into cells. The "Clear" button deletes current User Events displayed on the User Interface.

### User Events

Display Mode

Configure

From

2013-01-19

Select

Display

To

2013-02-17

Select

User Type

☒ Local
 ☒ On-Demand
 ☐ Trial
 ☒ Roaming Out
 ☒ Roaming In
 ☐ External

Download

Date

Search

Date	Type	Event	Name	Policy	IP	MAC	Source
2013-02-07 06:08:35 +1000	Local - Mobile	Login	duncan@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-07 06:18:12 +1000	Local - Mobile	Admin-Reset	duncan@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-07 14:22:41 +0900	Local - Mobile	Login	duncan@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-07 14:23:03 +0900	Local - Mobile	Logout	duncan@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-07 14:23:58 +0900	Local - Mobile	Login	example@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-07 14:34:03 +0900	Local - Mobile	Idle-Timeout	example@local	1	192.168.1.89	68:09:27:A4:48:80	
2013-02-06 11:38:17 +0800	Ondemand	Create_OD_User	28v2		0.0.0.0	00:00:00:00:00:00	WEB:PLM3154

Note that different User Types contain different user information. Categories will be left blank if inapplicable to the User Type.



## 10.4 Reports & Notification

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Status >> Reporting](#)

WHG Controller can automatically send various kinds of user and/or system related reports to configured E-mail addresses, SYSLOG Servers, or FTP Server.

Notification Settings

	Receiver E-mail Address(es)						SYSLOG	Primary FTP	Interval
	1	2	3	4	5	Detail / Test			
Monitor IP Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	1 Hour ▼
Local Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
On-Demand Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Guest Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Roaming Out Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Roaming In Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
External Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Session Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Firewall Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A	1 Hour ▼
High Availability Mode Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	N/A
Local Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▼
On-Demand User Billing Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> 0 ▼ Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Sun ▼ Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> 1 ▼ Monthly Report
Wide Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▼
Wide Area AP Report									
<input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading <input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Network Delay <input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> Associated Clients <input type="checkbox"/> VAP Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> WDS Traffic	N/A						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
Switch Status	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▼
Switch Report									
<input type="checkbox"/> PoE overview	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
Local HTTP Web Log	N/A						<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
HTTP Web Log	N/A						<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Configuration Change Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
DHCP Server Log	N/A						<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A	N/A
DHCP Lease Log	N/A						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
System Report									
<input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading <input type="checkbox"/> CPU Temperature <input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Storage Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> Online User <input type="checkbox"/> Successful Login <input type="checkbox"/> Session <input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Lease <input type="checkbox"/> DNS Query	N/A						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
Traffic Report (Text)									
<input type="checkbox"/> Service Zone <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN	N/A						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼

- **SMTP Settings:** Allows the configuration of 5 recipient E-mail addresses and necessary mail server settings where various user related logs will be sent to.
- **SYSLOG Settings:** Allows the configuration of two external SYSLOG servers where selected users logs as well as system logs will be sent to.
- **FTP Settings:** Allows the configuration of an external FTP Server where selected users logs as well as system logs will be sent to.
- **Notification Settings:** Provides an overview of all the available users and system logs for selection. Selected logs can be sent to the chosen location (E-mail, SYSLOG, FTP) on customizable time intervals.

## Chapter 11. Hotspot Application

### 11.1 On-Demand Billing Plans

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> On-Demand >> Billing Plans](#)

Billing plan profiles define the terms and conditions of guest internet access. Click the **Billing Plan Number** link to enter the configuration page of a selected Billing Plan profile. Once you have finished configuring a billing plan profile, go back to the screen of **Billing Plans**, check the **Active** checkbox and click **Apply** to activate.

No	Plan Type	Quota	Price	Active	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
2	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
3	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
4	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>
5	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<button>Reset</button>

- **Plan:** The number of the selected Billing Plan profile.
- **Plan Type:** The account type chosen for this plan. Different account types have different properties. A suitable account type should be selected that will best meet guest usage requirements.
- **Quota:** The usage terms on how much or how long an On-Demand users are allowed to access the network.
- **Price:** The unit price of the respective billing plan.
- **Active:** Check the checkbox to activate the billing plan. Deactivated billing plans cannot be used to generate On-Demand guest accounts.
- **Group:** Group assignment of On-Demand users associated with the respective billing plan.
- **Function:** Click the "Reset" button to clear settings on the selected Billing plan Profile.

## 11.2 On-Demand Billing Plan Types

### 11.2.1 Usage-time with Expiration Time

Users can access internet as long as account is valid with remaining quota (usable time). Users need to activate the purchased account within a given time period by logging in. This is ideal for short term usage such as in coffee shops, airport terminals etc. Quota is deducted only while in use, however the count down to Expiration Time is continuous regardless of logging in or out. Account expires when **Valid Period** has been used up or quota depleted.

- **Quota** is the total period of time (*xx days yy hrs zz mins*), during which On-Demand users are allowed to access the network. The total maximum quota is "364Days 23hrs 59mins 59secs" even after redeeming.
- **Account Activation** is the time period for which the user must execute a first login. Failure to do so in the time period set in Account Activation will result in account expiration.
- **Valid Period** is the valid time period for using. After this time period, even with remaining quota the account will still expire.
- **Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

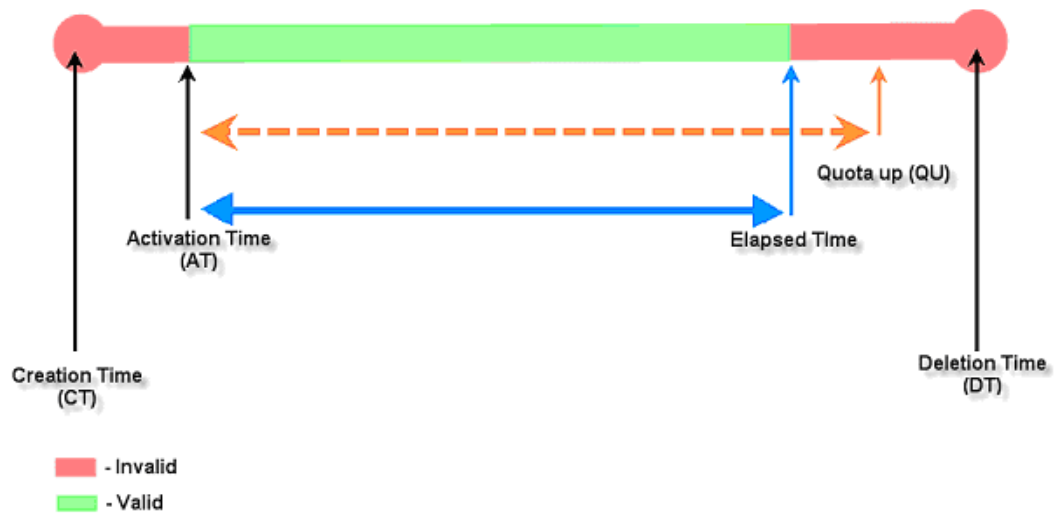
## Billing Plan Configuration

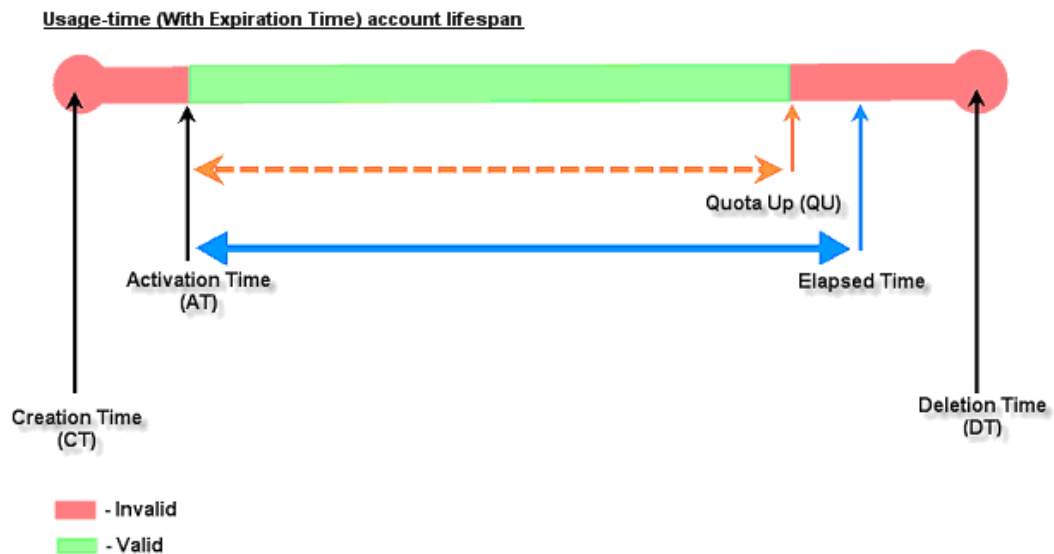
Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Usage-time ▾
Activation	User's First time login must be done within <input type="text" value="0"/> day(s) <input type="text" value="2"/> hour(s) <small>The value for hour(s) has to be between 0~23; Day(s) and hour(s) cannot be both zeros.</small>
Expiration	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable Account will expire in <input type="text" value="7"/> day(s) after activation
Quota	<input type="text" value="0"/> day(s) <input type="text" value="2"/> hr(s) <input type="text" value="0"/> min(s) <small>The value for day(s) cannot exceed 364; The value for hr(s) has to be 0~23; The value for min(s) has to be between 0~59.</small>
Unit Price	<input type="text" value="1.99"/> <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▾
Reference	<input type="text"/>

✓ Apply

✕ Cancel

### Usage-time (With Expiration Time) account lifespan





### 11.2.2. Usage-time with No Expiration Time

Users can access internet as long as account has remaining quota (usable time). Users need to activate the purchased account within a given time period by logging in. This is ideal for short term usage such as in coffee shops, airport terminals etc. Quota is deducted only while in use and account expires only when quota is depleted.

- **Quota** is the total period of time (*xx days yy hrs zz mins*), during which On-Demand users are allowed to access the network. The total maximum quota is "364Days 23hrs 59mins 59secs" even after redeem.
- **Account Activation** is the time period for which the user must execute a first login. Failure to do so in the time period set in Account Activation will result in account expiration.
- **Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.



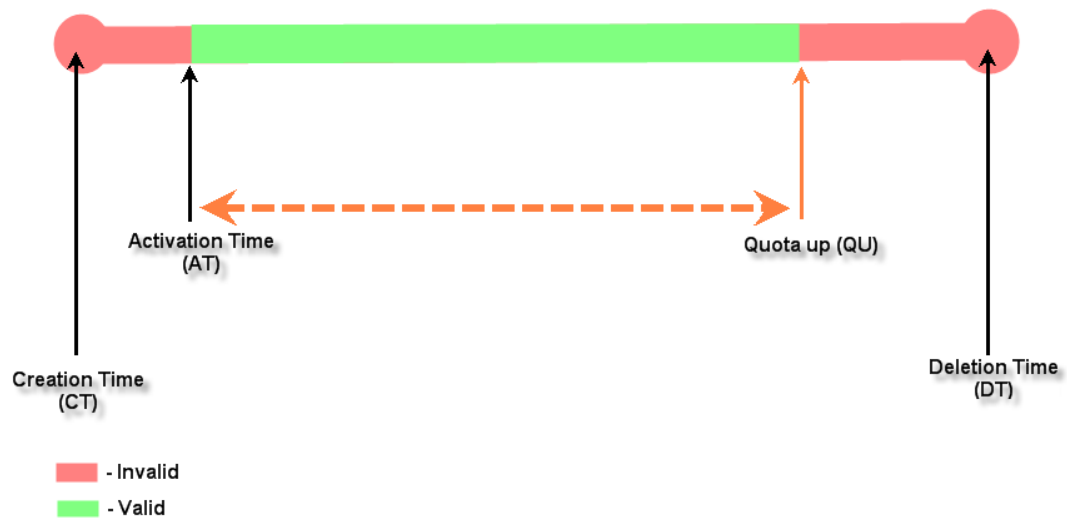
## Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Usage-time ▼
Activation	User's First time login must be done within 0 day(s) 2 hour(s) <small>The value for hour(s) has to be between 0~23; Day(s) and hour(s) cannot be both zeros.</small>
Expiration	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Quota	0 day(s) 2 hr(s) 0 min(s) <small>The value for day(s) cannot exceed 364; The value for hr(s) has to be 0~23; The value for min(s) has to be between 0~59.</small>
Unit Price	1.99 <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	

Apply

Cancel

### Usage-time (No Expiration) account lifespan



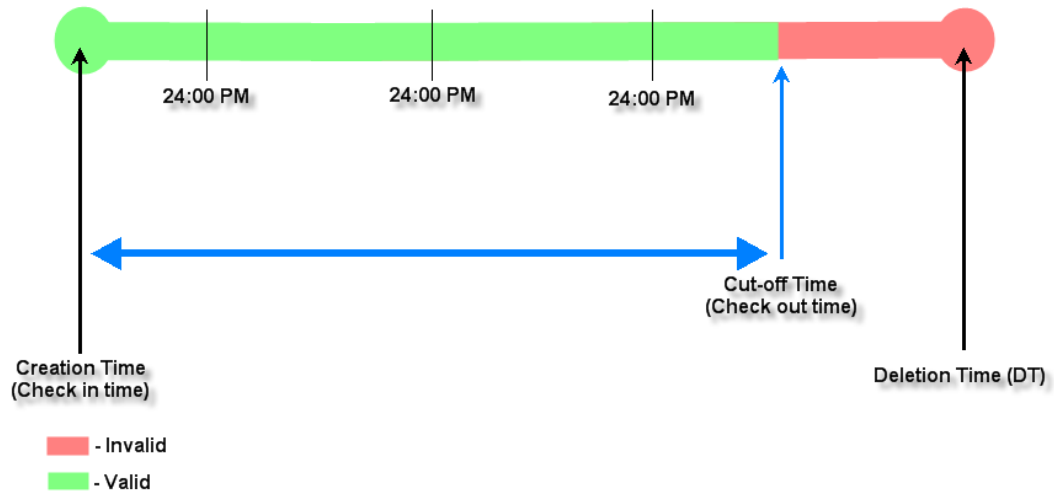
### 11.2.3. Hotel Cut-off-time

**Hotel Cut-off-time** is the clock time (normally check-out time) at which the On-demand account is cut off (made expired) by the system on the following day or many days later. On the account creation UI of this plan, operator can enter a Unit value which is the number of days to Cut-off-time according to customer stay time. For example: Unit = 2 days, Cut-off Time = 13:00 then account will expire on 13:00 two days later. **Grace Period** is an additional, short period of time after the account is cut off that allows user to continue to use the On-Demand account to access the Internet without paying additional fee. **Number of Devices** is to define the number of allowed simultaneous logged in devices per account. **Unit Price** is a daily price of this billing plan. This is mainly used in hotel venues to provide internet service according to guests' stay time. **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan. **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

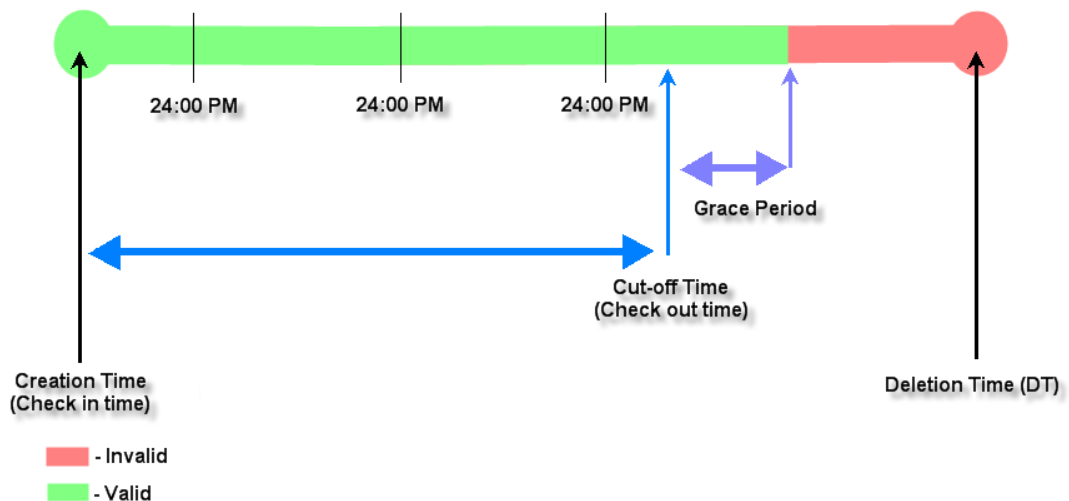
#### Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Hotel Cut-off time ▼
Cut-off Time	<input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> <small>The cut-off time has to be between 00:00~23:59 in the form of hh:mm.</small>
Grace Period	0 ▼ hour(s) after Cut-off
Number of devices	1 device(s) <small>Number of devices is an integer from 0 to 9999, representing the number of simultaneous logged-in devices allowed per account (0: Unlimited).</small>
Unit Price	11 per day <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	<input type="text"/>

Hotel Cut-off-time account lifespan (3 night stay example)



Hotel Cut-off-time account lifespan (3 night stay example with Grace Period)



## 11.2.4. Volume

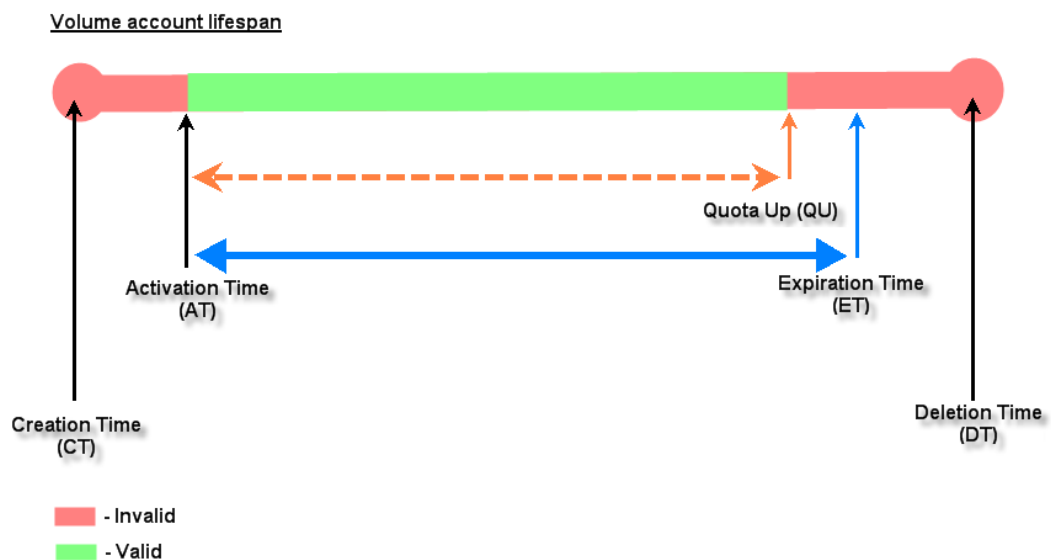
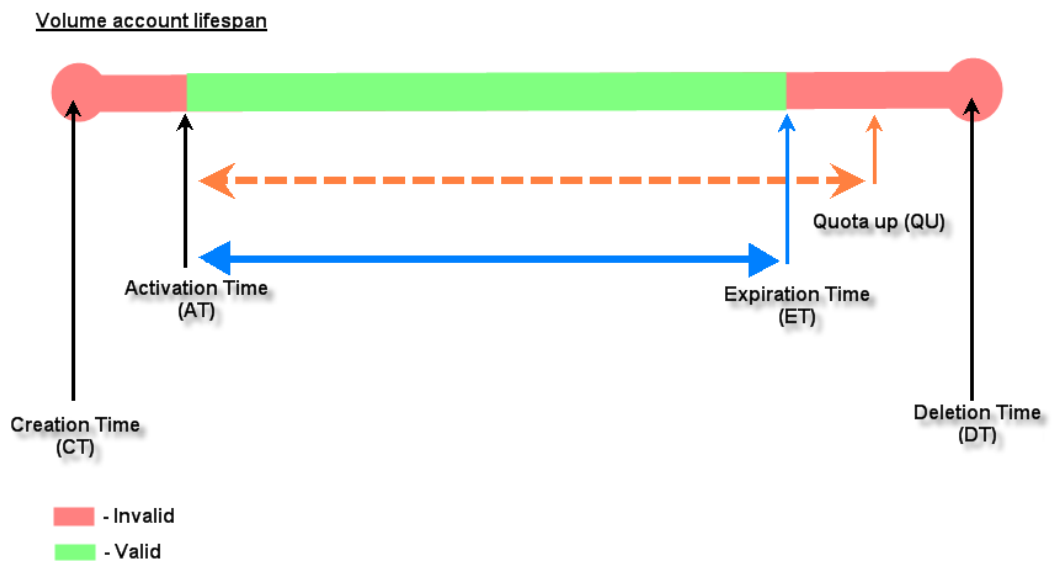
Users can access internet as long as account is valid with remaining quota (traffic volume). Account expires when *Valid Period* is used up or quota is depleted. This is ideal for small quantity applications such as sending/receiving

mail, transferring a file etc. Count down of Valid Period is continuous regardless of logging in or out.

- **Account Activation** is the time period for which the user must execute a first login. Failure to do so in the time period set in Account Activation will result in account expiration.
- **Expiration** is the valid time period for using. After this time period, the account expires even with quota remaining.
- **Quota** is the total Mbytes (1~1000000), during which On-Demand users are allowed to access the network.
- **Number of devices** is to define the number of allowed simultaneous logged in devices per account. (0: unlimited)
- **Unit Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

### Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Volume ▼
Activation	User's First time login must be done within <input type="text" value="0"/> day(s) <input type="text" value="2"/> hour(s) <small>The value for hour(s) has to be between 0~23; Day(s) and hour(s) cannot be both zeros.</small>
Expiration	Account will expire in <input type="text" value="7"/> day(s) after activation
Quota	<input type="text" value="100"/> MByte(s) <small>*( Range : 1 ~ 1000000 )</small>
Number of devices	<input type="text" value="3"/> device(s) <small>Number of devices is an integer from 0 to 9999, representing the number of simultaneous logged-in devices allowed per account (0: Unlimited).</small>
Unit Price	<input type="text" value="2"/> <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	<input type="text"/>



### 11.2.5. Duration-time with Elapsed Time

Account is activated upon account creation. Count down begins immediately after account is created and is continuous regardless of logging in or out. Account expires once the *Elapsed Time* is reached. This is ideal for providing internet service immediately after account creation throughout a specific period of time.

- **Begin Time** is the time that the account will be activated for use. It is set

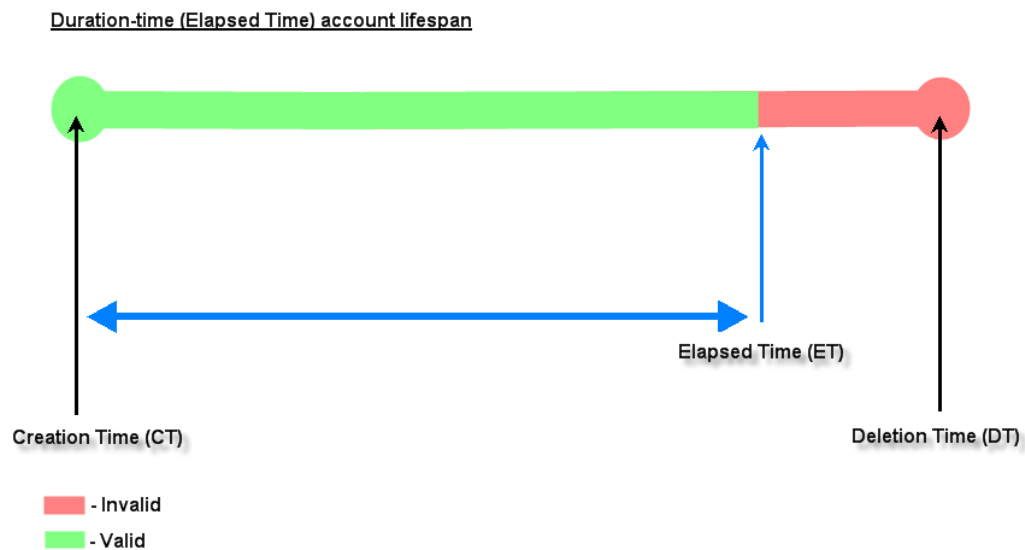
to account creation time.

- **Elapsed Time** is the time interval for which the account is valid for internet access (xx hrs yy mins).
- **Number of Devices** is to define the number of allowed simultaneous logged in devices per account.
- **Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

## Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Duration-time ▼
Duration Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Elapsed Time <input type="radio"/> Begin-and-End Time <input type="radio"/> Cut-off Time
Begin Time	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Upon Account Creation <input type="radio"/> Upon First Login
Quota	<div> <input type="text"/> day(s)           <input type="text"/> hr(s)           <input type="text"/> min(s) </div> <p>The value for day(s) cannot exceed 364; The value for hr(s) has to be 0~23; The value for min(s) has to be between 0~59.</p>
Number of devices	<div> <input type="text"/> device(s) </div> <p>Number of devices is an integer from 0 to 9999, representing the number of simultaneous logged-in devices allowed per account (0: Unlimited).</p>
Unit Price	<div> <input type="text"/> 11 </div> <p>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</p>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	<input type="text"/>





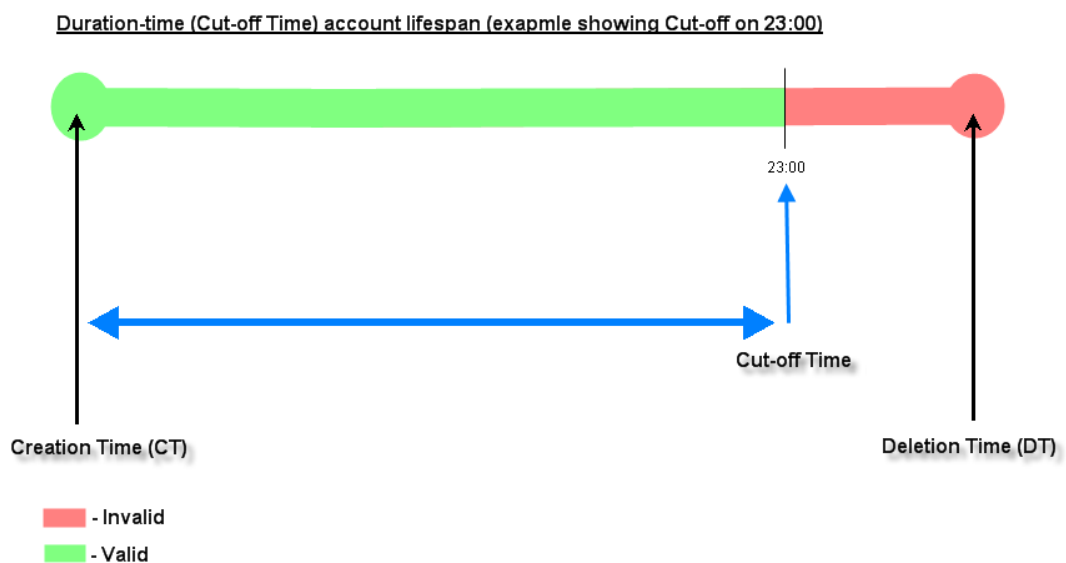
### 11.2.6. Duration-time with Cut-off Time

**Cut-off Time** is the clock time at which the On-Demand account is cut off (made expired) by the system on that day. For example if a shopping mall is set to close at 23:00; operators selling On-Demand tickets can use this plan to create ticket set to be Cut-off on 23:00. If an account of this kind is created after the Cut-off Time, the account will automatically expire.

- **Begin Time** is the time that the account will be activated for use. It is set to account creation time.
- **Cut-off Time** is the clock time when the account will expire.
- **Number of Devices** is to define the number of allowed simultaneous logged in devices per account.
- **Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

## Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Duration-time ▼
Duration Type	<input type="radio"/> Elapsed Time <input type="radio"/> Begin-and-End Time <input checked="" type="radio"/> Cut-off Time
Begin Time	Upon Account Creation
Cut-off Time	<input type="text"/> : <input type="text"/> <small>The cut-off time has to be between 00:00~23:59 in the form of hh:mm.</small>
Number of devices	<input type="text"/> device(s) <small>Number of devices is an integer from 0 to 9999, representing the number of simultaneous logged-in devices allowed per account (0: Unlimited).</small>
Unit Price	<input type="text"/> 11 <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	<input type="text"/>



### 11.2.7. Duration-time with Begin-and-End Time

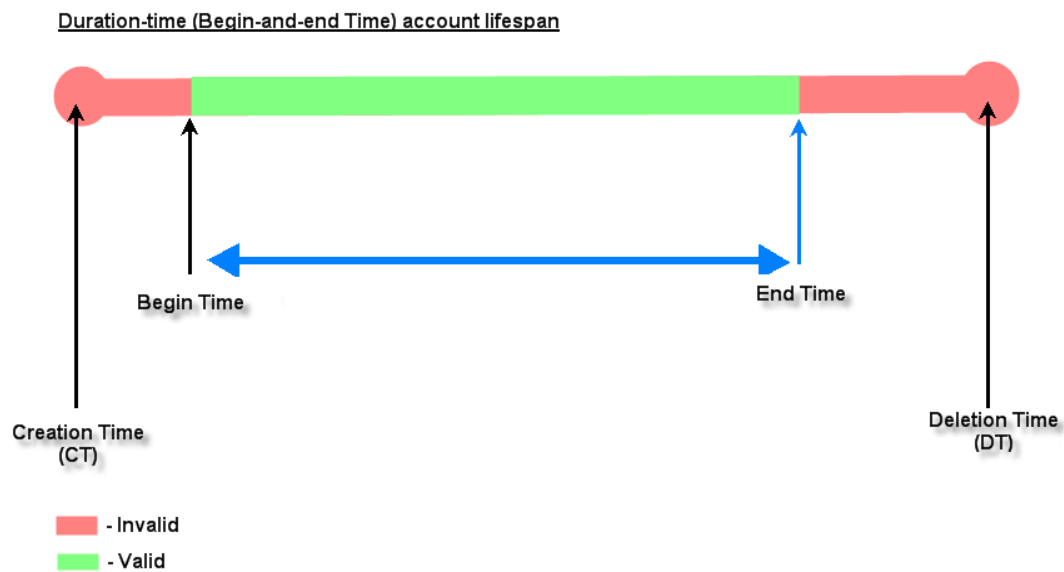
The *Begin Time* and *End Time* of the account are defined explicitly. Count down begins immediately after account activation and expires when the *End Time* has

been reached. This is ideal for providing internet service throughout a specific period of time. For example during exhibition events or large conventions such as Computex where each registered participant will get an internet account valid from 8:00 AM Jun 1 to 5:00 PM Jun 5 created in batch like coupons.

- **Begin Time** is the time that the account will be activated for use, defined explicitly by the operator.
- **End Time** is the time that the account will expire defined explicitly by the operator.
- **Number of Devices** is to define the number of allowed simultaneous logged in devices per account.
- **Price** is the unit price of this plan.
- **Group** will be the applied Group to users created from this plan.
- **Reference** field allows administrator to input additional information.

## Billing Plan Configuration

Plan Number	1
Plan Type	Duration-time ▼
Duration Type	<input type="radio"/> Elapsed Time <input checked="" type="radio"/> Begin-and-End Time <input type="radio"/> Cut-off Time
Begin Time	-- ▼ : -- ▼ , -- ▼ -- ▼ ---- ▼
End Time	-- ▼ : -- ▼ , -- ▼ -- ▼ ---- ▼
Number of devices	<input type="text" value="1"/> device(s) <small>Number of devices is an integer from 0 to 9999, representing the number of simultaneous logged-in devices allowed per account (0: Unlimited).</small>
Unit Price	<input type="text" value="11"/> <small>The unit price cannot exceed 100000, and can take values up to two decimal places.</small>
Group	Group 1 ▼
Reference	<input type="text"/>



## 11.3 Terminal Server Setup

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Authentication >> On-Demand User >> General Settings >> Terminal Server](#)

Terminal Configuration is a list of serial-to-Ethernet devices that communicate with the system only; and does not need to go through authentication.

### Overview of Network Ticket Generator

SDS200W is an innovative product 4ipnet offers to facilitate the communication between 4ipnet hotspot gateway and serial POS printer. It is mainly used to have the connected printer fast-print necessary account information extracted from a 4ipnet hotspot gateway for a user who would like to access the Internet or managed networks, making provisioning of wired or wireless connection easier and more

user-friendly. What is noteworthy is that, SDS200W supports wireless connectivity to the uplink gateway. That is, operators now can deploy a network with lesser physical wires.

## Keypad Panel Overview



## Useful Shortcut Keys

Combination	Function
'Number' + Enter	To create and print out an On-Demand account of an enabled billing plan of the uplink Hotspot gateway mainly for the user who purchased an account.
'Number 1' + 'asterisk (*)' + 'Number 2' + ENTER	Print a ticket of billing 'Number 1' with 'Number 2' units. For example, '8' + asterisk(*) + '3' + ENTER is equal to create an On-Demand account of billing plan 8 with 3 units and have the POS printer print out the corresponding ticket. That is, the quota that billing plan 8 grants is multiplied by 3.
FUNC + '1' + ENTER	To print out the information of SDS200W, including (1) its IP address (2) the firmware version and the build number (3) the current listening port (4) uplink connection status (5) the IP address of the uplink 4ipnet gateway (HSG/WHG).
FUNC + ENTER	To clear what is pressed. This is used when the operator pressed a wrong button or combination. The system will also clear it automatically after five

	seconds.
<b>FUNC + '0' + ENTER</b>	To activate Safe Mode – disabling the <b>FUNC + '1' + ENTER</b> shortcut key in order to protect SDS200W's information leakage.
<b>'4-digit' + ENTER</b>	To unlock Safe Mode. This 4-digit password can be changed on the WMI at "System >> Safe Mode (Password)." The default value is '0000.'
<b>'asterisk (*)' + ENTER</b>	To lock the keypad, excluding the TAS and the Reset button. In Lock Mode, the Status indicator will enter into special flashing. Press <b>asterisk (*) + ENTER</b> again to disable the function, and the LED indicator <b>Status</b> will go back to <u>short illuminated intervals</u> or <u>long illuminated intervals</u> .

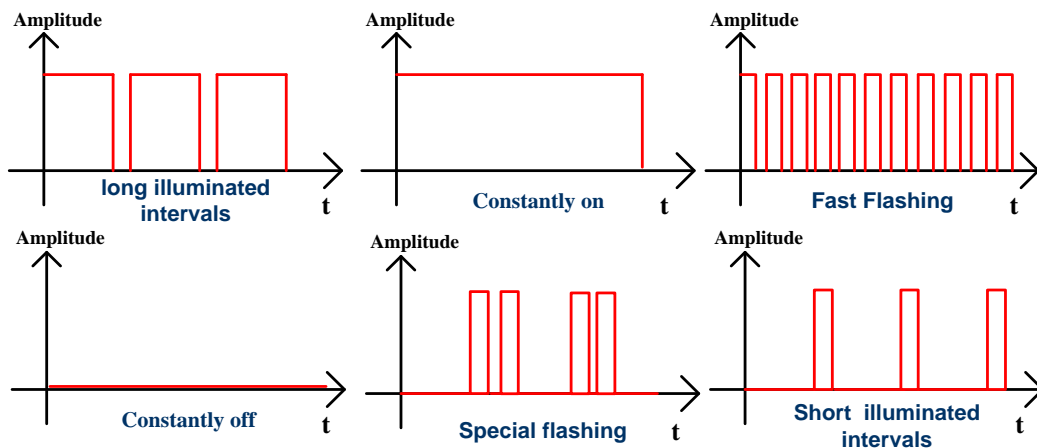
## LED Panel

LED Indicators	
Power	When the power adapter is connected, <b>Power</b> will become <u>constantly on</u> ; when disconnected, the light turns into <u>constantly off</u> . Always check if <b>Power</b> is on before using SDS200W.
Status	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Short illuminated intervals means SDS200W successfully booted up. It flashes slowly.</li> <li>2. Long illuminated intervals means SDS200W and uplink device connected</li> <li>3. Special flashing means the keypad locked. The indicator fast-blinks twice periodically. Note: &lt;TAS Mode only&gt;</li> <li>4. Fast flashing means SDS200W trying to connect to uplink device.</li> <li>5. Constantly off for ten seconds means SDS200W fails to connect to uplink device after step 4. Afterwards, <b>Status</b> will go back to step 1.</li> <li>6. Constantly on for ten seconds means SDS200W succeeds in connecting to uplink device after step 4. Afterwards, <b>Status</b> will go to step 2.</li> </ol>
Ethernet	<b>Ethernet</b> turns into <u>constantly on</u> when an Ethernet cable is connected. <b>Ethernet</b> blinks when the system detects wired traffic passing Ethernet. It is <u>constantly off</u> when no cable is connected.
WLAN	<b>WLAN</b> behaves similarly as <b>Ethernet</b> - becoming <u>constantly on</u> when wireless connectivity is enabled (not necessarily connected. It just means that the RF card is ready to serve). <b>WLAN</b> blinks when the system detects wireless traffic. It is <u>constantly off</u> if the RF card is disabled.



## Understanding the LED indicators

There are four LED indicators on the panel : **Power**, **Status**, **LAN**, and **WLAN** from left to right. Below summarizes all indication types in different states:



## Right Side Panel Overview



### Ride Side Panel

1. Kensington Lock	Be used to lock the device to a pole.
2. Restart / Reset	Press once to reboot the system. Hold for <u>five seconds</u> to make SDS200W set back to factory default settings.
3. TAS	Terminal Auto Setup (TAS). Press <u>three seconds</u> to initiate the auto uplink connection process. This will be introduced later.

## Left Side Panel Overview

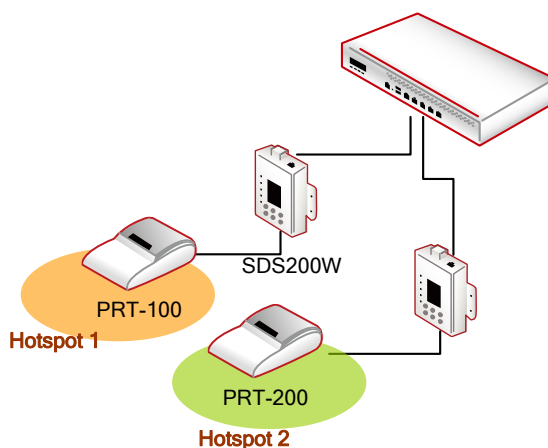
### Left Side Panel

1. Console	Serial port for connecting to a POS printer.
2. Ethernet	RJ-45 Ethernet port Serial port for connecting to the uplink gateway via wire.
3. 5V / 1.5A	The DC power socket for connecting to an external power source through a

	DC power supply.
4. Antenna Connector	Assemble the dipole antenna within the package here.

## Including SDS200W into Your Network

The following diagram illustrates a deployment example that shows how the SDS200W can be connected to the POS printer and the 4ipnet Gateway/Controller.



1. Put the devices in place.
2. Attach a SDS200W to a power adaptor provided in the package.
3. Attach a POS printer to a power adaptor provided in the package and turn on the power switch situated on the left side of the device.
4. Connect a POS printer to the Console port of SDS200W by a RS-232 cable provided within the POS printer package.
5. Connect SDS200W to your 4ipnet Gateway/Controller via Ethernet port.

### » Note:

You need to connect to the correct LAN port if your Gateway/Controller is operating in Port-based mode.

6. To verify if the connection, press **FUNC + '1' + ENTER** to see if SDS200W is attached to a correct gateway and is able to get an IP address from it. Additionally, press 'Number' + **ENTER** to see if an account with a certain billing plan can be printed out.

## Managing SDS200W on the Web Management Interface

SDS200W is designed specifically to operate in conjunction with all 4ipnet Gateways/Controllers, including both HSG and WHG series. If you are not using default settings, before connecting SDS200W to your 4ipnet Gateway/Controller, some configurations steps are required.

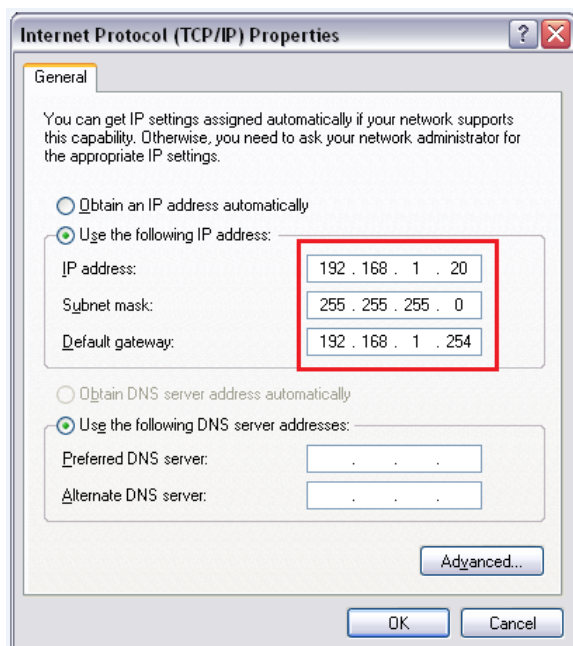
Go to the Web Management Interface (WMI) for SDS200W's relevant configurations. The default values are:

**IP address: 192.168.1.10**

**Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0**

**Default Gateway: 192.168.1.254**

Remember to set the TCP/IP settings of the computer you use with a static IP address that is under the same subnet as SDS200W. For example: 192.168.1.20.



The settings of SDS200W are separated into seven categories, which are

1. **System** – to setup the system name and device control.
2. **Uplink** – to determine wired / wireless relevant parameters. Any change on this page will take effect after rebooting the system.
3. **Console** – to change console related settings for POS printers.
4. **Utility** – to upgrade the firmware version or backup/ restore SDS200W's configuration settings.
5. **Password** – to change administrator's password.
6. **Reboot** – to reboot (restart) the system.
7. **Status** – to overview device, system, uplink, and radio status if available.

## Setting Up SDS200W with the POS Printer

### Serial Settings

To make a POS printer properly functions with SDS200W, set up serial settings in advance in **Console** on SDS200W's WMI.

### Printing On-Demand Tickets for Your Customers

Operators have two ways of printing On-Demand account tickets for their customers. One is to go onto the WMI of 4ipnet Gateway/Controller and create one (or more). See the manual of the 4ipnet Gateway/Controller you use; the other is to use SDS200W by the following two shortcut keys.

- (1) **'Number' + ENTER** or
- (2) **'Number 1' + asterisk (\*) + 'Number 2' + ENTER**

For example,

**'3' + ENTER** is to have POS printer print out a billing 3 ticket;

**'4' + asterisk (\*) + '2' + ENTER** allows operator to print a single ticket of billing plan 4 with two units of the quota.

That is, the given quota is multiplied by two. Note that the keys can only print out tickets one at a time. To

Batch-create tickets, turn to

[Main Menu](#) > [Users](#) > [Authentication](#) > [On-Demand User Server Configuration](#) > [On-Demand Account Batch Creation](#)

on 4ipnet controller's WMI.

#### ►► Note:

When wired connection is established, the wireless connectivity will be turned off by the system automatically, meaning wireless and wired connection will not co-exist at any time. Wired connection has a higher priority.

Use **FUNC + ENTER** or wait 5 seconds to clear the wrong number just pressed.

## Setting Up SDS200W with the 4ipnet Gateway/Controller

SDS200W offers 'manual' and 'auto' connection to uplink 4ipnet Gateway/Controller. The former requires the administrator to go on to SDS200W's WMI to enter necessary columns that are supposed to fit what is set up on the controller end. However, the auto connection – called Terminal Auto Setup (TAS) – is particularly designed to establish a quick connection without previous setting.

### Manual setup

To connect SDS200W manually to a 4ipnet Gateway/Controller, connect the SDS200W to the 4ipnet Gateway/Controller via an Ethernet cable. Enter the Network Settings and make sure they match what is determined

on the controller. The change will take effect after (1) clicking **Save** and (2) rebooting the system. After SDS200W and the uplink device has built a successful connection, the **Status** indicator will blink with long illuminated intervals.

The recommended step-by-step setup process is shown as follows.

## Basic Settings

1

Service Zone Status: Enabled

Service Zone Name: Default

Network Interface: Operation Mode ☒ NAT ☐ Router

IP Address: 192.168.1.254 Subnet Mask: 255.255.0.0

Network Alias List: [Configure](#)

This list defines other IP Addresses (range) that are routable in this Service Zone.

DHCP: Enabled [Configure](#) The SDS200W must be in range.

## Terminal Server Configuration

2

Status	Item	Server IP	Port	Location	Remark
	1	192.168.1.10	5000		
	2	Add SDS200W to the Terminal Server List			
	3				
	4				
	5				
	6				

## Billing Plans

3

No	Plan Type	Quota	Price	Active	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<a href="#">Reset</a>
2	Hotel Cut-off-time	Valid until 5:01 the following day	1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<a href="#">Reset</a>
3	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<a href="#">Reset</a>
4	N/A			<input type="checkbox"/>	Group 1	<a href="#">Reset</a>

When the settings are done completely on the 4ipnet Gateway/Controller side, go to SDS200W's WMI and check if every uplink setting matches that on the controller.

### Terminal Auto Setup (TAS – Only available on SDS200W)

TAS refers to an automatic connection mechanism that requires **NO previous network settings**. Just press the TAS button on SDS200W for three seconds, and it will automatically look for and associate to a suitable 4ipnet gateway that supports this function.

The TAS connection will rewrite previous manual settings. You will see the **Uplink** page of the WMI grayed out and the **Status** page will show that the system is in TAS mode. The TAS process takes about thirty seconds to complete. Whether the connection attempt succeeds or fails, the SDS200W will always have the printer print out if the connection is 'successful' or it 'failed.' Please make sure beforehand that the Ethernet cable is plugged in

» **Note:**

The SDS100 can be set up the same way but it does not support wireless connections. Wired TAS uses port 5000 as the default value. The controller has to set the port to the right number, as well. Additionally, when trying to deploy TAS, make sure that the table of Terminal Server Configuration on the controller side is not filled up. Otherwise, the connection will fail.

## 11.4 Customizing POS Tickets

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> On-Demand >> POS Tickets](#)

For deployment flexibility on your hotspot, customization of POS tickets using templates is supported on the WHG controller. Up to 5 ticket templates can be saved on the system.



## POS Tickets

Templates

Image

Width

Languages

length of password

Ticket Type

Template 1 ▾

Upload

2" ▾

English ▾

☒ 4 characters
 ☐ 8 characters

Type I ▾

Restore

For Usage-Time with expiration time & Volume

- An image can be uploaded (such as your company logo) in TMB format if needed.
- There are 2 Width types, 2" for PRT100 and 3" for PRT200.
- Select the desired language for the configured ticket template. WHG supports English, French, German, Japanese, Spanish, Simplified Chinese, and Traditional Chinese.
- For accounts generated with the SDS200W, passwords are random, but the administrator has the option of selecting between a 4-character and a 8-character password.
- Select the appropriate Ticket Type depending on the configured billing plan.

Type I





Parameters	<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;"> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-right: 5px;"> \$remain ▼ </div> <div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px; margin-left: 5px;">Insert Parameters</div> </div>	
	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px;"> \$remain  \$username  \$username_without_postfix  \$password  \$usage  \$price  \$extid  \$activationtime  \$expiretime  \$expire_time  \$duration  \$remark  \$image  \$unit  \$date  \$quota  \$sprice  \$qr  \$max_user </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 5px; min-height: 150px;"> SN:\$remain </div>
Username: \$username Password: \$password Quota: \$quota Price: \$price		
ESSID: 		
Activation: Before \$expire_time Expiration: \$duration days after activation		

Preview

You may start customizing your POS ticket from the window below manually typing or by inserting parameters from the drop-down list as shown in the above example.

Once this is done, you may start assigning Billing Plans and Ticket Templates for your Terminal Servers.

## Terminal Server Configuration


Status	Item	Server IP	Port	Remark	Ticket template	Billing plan
	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Template 1 ▾	<div> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/>  6 <input type="checkbox"/> 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 8 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 0 <input type="checkbox"/> </div>
	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Template 1 ▾	<div> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/>  6 <input type="checkbox"/> 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 8 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 0 <input type="checkbox"/> </div>
	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Template 1 ▾	<div> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/>  6 <input type="checkbox"/> 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 8 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 0 <input type="checkbox"/> </div>
	4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	Template 1 ▾	<div> 1 <input type="checkbox"/> 2 <input type="checkbox"/> 3 <input type="checkbox"/> 4 <input type="checkbox"/> 5 <input type="checkbox"/>  6 <input type="checkbox"/> 7 <input type="checkbox"/> 8 <input type="checkbox"/> 9 <input type="checkbox"/> 0 <input type="checkbox"/> </div>

The administrator can now select the desired Ticket Template for a specific ticket generator from the drop-down list.

## Applications for QR Code Log-in

```

-----
Username : $username
Password : $password
Quota : $usage
Total Price : $price
External ID : $extid
-----
ESSID : $wlan_ess_id
Wireless Key : $wep_key
-----
Your first time login must be
done before $expire_time

The account is valid within
    $duration days
after your first login.
-----

QR Code Login
Scan the QR code your device to login automatically
  
```

On-Demand Account generation with a ticket generator is a very common deployment for hotspot providers. What makes it a hassle is to manually enter the Username and Password of the account, especially for mobile devices which require typing on small keyboards and are not easy on the eyes.

Log-in credentials including your Username, Password, Usage quota, Price and etc. are all embedded in the QR code.

Simply associate with the SSID, scan QR Code, and you are ready to surf the internet!

## Configuring your web ticket to support QR Code

The ticket needs to be customized in order to support the printing of QR Code. Under **Main Menu >> Users >> Authentications**, click **On-Demand User** and **Configure** for Ticket Template Customization.

## POS Tickets

**Templates** Template 1 ▾  
**Image** Upload  
**Width** 3" ▾  
**Languages** English ▾  
**length of password** ☒ 4 characters ☐ 8 characters  
**Ticket Type** Type I ▾ Restore  
For Usage-Time with expiration time & Volume

### Type I

Parameters		Insert Parameters
	\$remain	
	\$password	
	\$usage	
Price : \$	\$price	
-----	\$extid	
ESSID : \$	\$wlan_ess_id	
-----	\$wep_key	
Activation:	\$activationtime	
Before \$e	\$expiretime	
Expiration:	\$expire_time	
\$duration	\$duration	ivation
-----	\$footer	
External ID	\$2footer	
Remark: \$re	\$3footer	
-----	\$remark	
	\$image	
	\$unit	ou
	\$date	
	\$quota	
	\$sprice	
	\$qr	

Preview

For the utilized Billing Plan, the corresponding ticket template needs to be customized to support QR Code.

- 1) The width needs to be changed to 3" (default value = 2")
- 2) The parameter needs to be added by typing in "\$qr" on the template, or select "\$qr" from the drop-down menu and click Insert Parameters.

►► **Note:**

Only 4ipnet PRT200 thermal printers support the printing of QR code.  
Installation of a QR Code scanning App on your mobile device is required (such as QuickMark, QR Reader, Barcode Scanner).  
Switch off Auto-Join and Auto-Login to prevent the mobile device from jumping back to the remembered network.

## 11.5 Creating Accounts

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> On-Demand Accounts >> Accounts Creation](#)

Administrators have the option of creating single accounts or batch accounts. For potential hotspot operators who may wish to pre-generate guest accounts for sale, On-Demand feature has a batch create functionality which allows the administrator or operator with access authority to On-Demand page, to create multiple accounts for an enabled billing plan in batch, and send them to POS printer for generating physical ticket printout for sale.

### On-Demand Account Creation

Plan	Account Type	Quota	Price ()	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	1 min(s) of connection time quota with expiration	11	1	Create Single Create Batch
2	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
3	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
4	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
5	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
6	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
7	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
8	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
9	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
0	N/A				Create Single Create Batch

Administrator can choose to use random generated Usernames and Passwords or custom-create them when creating batch On-Demand accounts. For random generated passwords, they can be short (4 characters) or long (8 characters).

## Creating Batch On-Demand Accounts

Plan : Account Type	1 : Usage-time
Quota	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration
Numbers	<input type="text" value="1"/> Number of tickets to batch create
Account Creation	<input type="radio"/> System created <input checked="" type="radio"/> Manual created
Username	Prefix: <input type="text"/> *(A-z/0-9 and max length is 5) Serial Number: <input type="text"/> *(1~5 digits and max length is 5) Postfix: <input type="text"/> *(A-z/0-9 and max length is 5) *(Total length is less than 10)
Password	<input type="radio"/> Randomly <input type="radio"/> Same as username <input checked="" type="radio"/> Admin Assign <input type="text" value="4ipnet"/>
Valid Period	After activation, the account will be expired in 7 day(s)
Total Price	1.99
Unit	<input type="text" value="1"/> Number of units per ticket
Group	Group 1

Please confirm the information and press Create button to create accounts.

When creating custom Usernames, the Prefix and Postfix will be kept constant while the Serial Number for the accounts will have single increments.

The generated accounts may be downloaded for safe keeping, or sent to printer for batch printout.

## Success

**Users have been successfully created.**



## 11.6 User Self Service

### Credit Card via External Payment Gateway

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Authentication >> On-Demand User >> External Payment Gateway](#)

WHG Controller supports different types of payment gateway options depending on the account types possessed by the operator, including Authorize.net, PayPal, SecurePay, WorldPay, and PeleCard.

The most commonly used PayPal is used as an illustration example below.

Before setting up "PayPal", it is required that the hotspot owners have a valid PayPal "Business Account".

After opening a PayPal Business Account, the hotspot owners should find the **"Identity Token"** of this PayPal account to continue "PayPal Payment Page Configuration".

Fill in the necessary merchant account credentials in the Payment Page Configuration. Please be careful that if your controller's WAN IP is under a NAT, you will need to configure IP forwarding information in the **Instant Payment Notification (IPN)** field in order for the paying end user to receive transaction outcome.

## External Payment Gateway

## Selection

☐ Disable
 ☐ Authorize.Net
 ☒ PayPal
 ☐ SecurePay
 ☐ WorldPay
 ☐ PeleCard

Number of SMS quota  \*(1~10)

**SMS gateway configure**

The function to send SMS after purchasing an account is not ready. This is the given SMS quota to the client when multiple messages are required, either for multiple devices or if the SMS needs to be re-sent.

## PayPal Payment Page Configuration

Business Account  \*  
 Payment Gateway URL  \*  
 Identity Token  \*  
 Instant Payment Notification (IPN) ☒ Enable ☐ Disable  
☐ Behind NAT  
 Verify SSL Certificate ☒ Enable ☐ Disable  
 ▼

Select the enabled billing plans that are allowed for end users to self purchase through the payment gateway.

## Choose Billing Plan for PayPal Payment Page

Plan	Activation	Quota	Price	Remark
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99	<input type="text"/>
2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Valid until 5:01 the following day	1	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>
0	<input type="checkbox"/>			<input type="text"/>

The service disclaimer can be customized by configuring Web Page Customization.

Subsequently after the configuration of your external payment gateway, the

login page will be shown with a hyperlink which guides the end user step by step to purchase an account with a valid credit card.

In order for users to get account info via SMS after buying a new account online, and eliminate the risk of forgetting his/her username and password at the next time of login, administrators may choose to integrate SMS gateway with the payment gateway.

### External Payment Gateway

**Selection**

☐ Disable
 ☐ Authorize.Net
 ☒ PayPal
 ☐ SecurePay
 ☐ WorldPay
 ☐ PeleCard

Number of SMS quota  \*(1~10) [SMS gateway configure](#)

The function to send SMS after purchasing an account is not ready. This is the given SMS quota to the client when multiple messages are required, either for multiple devices or if the SMS needs to be re-sent.

**PayPal Payment Page Configuration**

Business Account  \*

Payment Gateway URL  \*

Identity Token  \*

Instant Payment Notification (IPN) ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

☐ Behind NAT

Verify SSL Certificate ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Upon successful set up, the **Number of SMS Quota** field will be available.

### External Payment Gateway

**Selection**

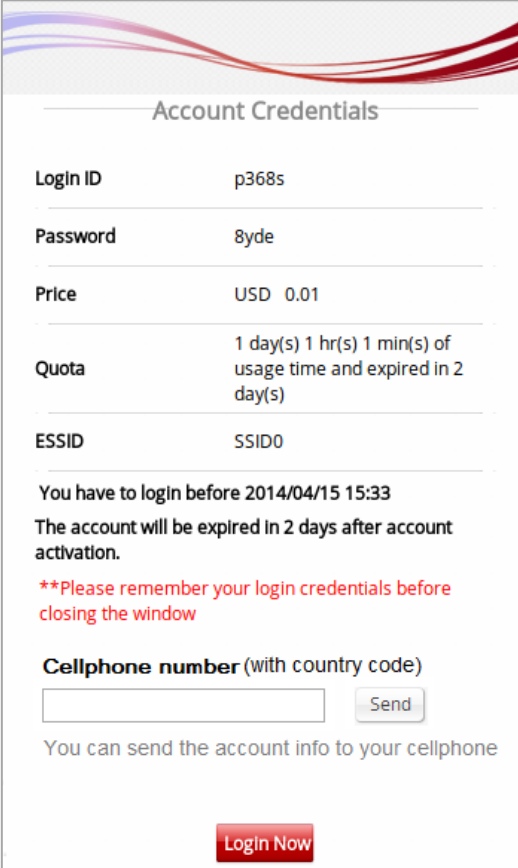
☐ Disable
 ☐ Authorize.Net
 ☒ PayPal
 ☐ SecurePay
 ☐ WorldPay
 ☐ PeleCard

Number of SMS retry  [SMS gateway configure](#)

The function to send SMS after purchasing an account is ready

Account buyers enter a cellphone number after paying a fee for the account online. The account buyers can then re-send the SMS no more than the configured number.

To preview your External Payment Portal, click "Configure" for **Web Page Customization** at the bottom of the page. Just like all customizable web pages in the system, this page also supports customization with templates, uploading html, or using an external page. An example of what will be displayed when External Payment Gateway is used with SMS Gateway is shown below:



The screenshot shows a web interface titled "Account Credentials". It contains the following information:

Login ID	p368s
Password	8yde
Price	USD 0.01
Quota	1 day(s) 1 hr(s) 1 min(s) of usage time and expired in 2 day(s)
ESSID	SSID0

Below the table, there is a warning message: "You have to login before 2014/04/15 15:33. The account will be expired in 2 days after account activation." followed by a red reminder: "\*\*Please remember your login credentials before closing the window".


There is a section for "Cellphone number (with country code)" with an input field and a "Send" button. Below this, it says "You can send the account info to your cellphone".

At the bottom, there is a red "Login Now" button.

## PMS Self Service

After planning your VLAN network and completing all the Port Location Mapping settings, you should verify whether the configurations are working properly. According to the Port Type set, when a user tries to access the internet from a VLAN mapped room, the pages or messages displayed are as follows:

When a user tries to access internet from a room, the browser will show the Login page with a list of available plans and service agreement. The Service Agreement body can be configured at the applied Service Zone's Custom Pages settings. User may choose a billing plan, click the Confirm button and the system will display the generated account name and password. If you already have a user account, you can click the "**here**" link to login with the user account that you possess.



### Welcome to Broadband Internet Service

Please choose from the following service selection

Plan	Price
<input checked="" type="radio"/> 2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99
<input type="radio"/> Valid until 5:01 the following day	1

### Service Agreement

Please kindly note that there will be no refund once connectivity is confirmed.

Please click Confirm to accept the usage charge or Cancel to exit.

The selected service charge will be posted directly into your guest folio.

Confirm

Cancel

If you already have a user account, please click [here](#) to login.

## **Chapter 12. PMS Integration**

This section introduces the Port Location Mapping feature used with PMS integration. This feature is designed for creating multiple VLAN divisions (as if they were separate LAN ports) under a Service Zone and mapping these VLANs to different locations individually. This feature can be utilized to provide separate VLAN to separate clients in MTU/MDU deployments where a VLAN switch is deployed under the gateway to provide VLAN connection to individual rooms.

The Port Location Mapping feature is also commonly used in hospitality venues to manage the internet service for their guest rooms and public areas. In addition it can operate in conjunction with third party hospitality applications and has been tested with the Net Retriever middleware which provides seamless integration between the gateway and the popular High Speed Internet Access (HSIA) hardware and Front Office System (FOS) software.

Each Port Location Mapping entry can be configured to provide charged (single or multiple user), free or blocked internet service at the location corresponding to the entry's VLAN Tag. Please note that for charged service to work, it is required that at least one or more On-Demand Billing Plans are created, allowing the user to choose a desired plan to pay for their internet access.

### **NOTE**

1. WHG Controllers default support Micros PMS interface and NetRetriever middleware interface, if you require dedicated support in creating or customizing your own interfacing hospitality software, please contact your 4ipnet sales representative.



## 12.1 Hotel Room Location Mapping

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> System >> Port Location Mapping](#)

The Port Location Mapping feature allows each Service Zone to own multiple VLANs (as if each VLAN is a port) in order to identify where the clients are coming from. Before the configuration of the PMS Middleware or adding VLANs to a Service Zone, the Port Mapping feature must be enabled first.

Create

Status ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Mapping

Subinterface Use LAN Port LAN1 ▾

Subinterface ID

Remark

Lists

PLM List

Subinterface List

Tunnel PLM List

Administrator could use Port Location Mapping feature to map a location (such as a hotel room) to a VLAN port of VLAN switch or a DSLAM device. Each Room is mapped to a VLAN Tag. And each Room can be assign to different Service Zone to get different policy. Furthermore, according to your application, you can configure the different rooms to different Port Type: **Open**, **Block**, or **Auth. Required**.

- **Open**, this port type means the user can access internet in this room without any charge.
- If you do not want to provide any internet access right in the rooms, you may

change the Port type of the rooms to **Block**. If the user opens a browser and tries to access internet, it will pop up a Blocking message to notify the user.

- **Auth. Required** port type is used mainly for hospitality application to charge users. When the user opens a browser and tries to access internet, a page with disclaimer and billing plan options will be displayed. The user can select the desired plan and click confirm button to purchase an account. The account cost will be sent to the PMS and added to the hotel bill via the configured middleware.

## NOTE

1. VLAN Ports may be created one by one or batch at once. Subsequent changes are possible by Change Port Type configuration box.
2. The VLAN Tags configured in Port Location Mapping must not conflict with any of the VLAN Tags that has been assigned to each Service Zone.

The **Port Location Mapping List** displays all the profile entries with information such as its' VLAN ID, Room Num/Location ID, Port Type and Service Zone. Clicking the **Delete** link can erase an individual Port Location Mapping profile. Clicking **Delete All** button will erase all of the Port Location Mapping profiles.

### Port Location Mapping List

<div> Delete Export List Import List Change All Port Types </div> <div> All <input type="text"/> <input type="button" value="Search"/> </div>							
<input type="checkbox"/>	VLAN ID	Room Number (Location ID)	Room Description (Location Name)	Port Type	From	Service Zone	Availability
<input type="checkbox"/>	100	1000		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	101	1001		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	102	1002		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	103	1003		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	104	1004		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	105	1005		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	106	1006		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	107	1007		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	108	1008		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	109	1009		Single User	LAN1	Default	
<input type="checkbox"/>	110	1010		Single User	LAN1	Default	

## 12.2 Net-Retriever

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Middleware >> Net Retriever](#)

In the Middleware tab page of Users category, administrator may choose to select the interfacing protocol that is compatible with their site's hospitality management system or PMS system.

### PMS Interface Configuration

---

**PMS Interface Type**

☐ Disable
 ☒ Net Retriever
 ☐ Micros Opera

Secret

Interface Port

\*

Middleware ID (MI ID)

\*(1 ~ 9999)

Access Controller ID (AC ID)

\*(1 ~ 9999)

Link Test Interval

\*(60~600 seconds)

User Account Log

Delete Account on Check-Out

☐ Disable
 ☐ Expired
 ☒ Enable

Configure the corresponding middleware's ID and the Access Controller ID to establish the link. Use the default Interfacing Port number unless modified on the middleware side. A common secret key is required to successfully setup the link. Link test frequency is customizable. Furthermore, the room guest's status may be optionally altered upon receipt of a check out message from the middleware system, either making the account expire, deleted or take no action.

## 12.3 Micros Opera

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Middleware >> Micros Opera](#)

In the Middleware tab page of Users category, administrator may choose to select the

interfacing protocol that is compatible with their site's hospitality management system or PMS system.

## PMS Interface Configuration

<b>PMS Interface Type</b>	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Net Retriever <input checked="" type="radio"/> Micros Opera	
<b>PMS IP Address</b>	<input type="text" value="10.29.42.101"/>	
<b>PMS Port</b>	<input type="text" value="5010"/>	
<b>Account Credentials</b>	Username	<input type="text" value="RN"/> ▼
	Password	<input type="text" value="RN"/> ▼
<b>Room Bill Description</b>	<input type="text" value="Wireless Access"/>	
<b>Login Error Message</b>	<input type="text" value="An error has occurred during login. Please contact the front desk for assistance."/>	
<b>User Account Log</b>	<input type="button" value="View"/>	
<b>Synchronize Data with PMS</b>	<input type="button" value="Sync"/>	
<b>PMS External Page Customization API</b>	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
<b>External Page Validity Verification</b>	Username	<input type="text" value="adminkey"/>
	Password	<input type="text" value="adminkey"/>
<b>Sample External Login Page</b>	<input type="button" value="Download"/>	

Fill in the Micros PMS IP and Port as configured on the PMS system end. Administrators may define User Account credentials using a combination of RN (Room number), GN (Guest Name) or G# (Guest Number) to designate the Micros protocol parameter for carrying the username and password information. More information on Micros Opera Users may also be monitored from the On-Demand Account List.

## On-Demand Account List

<a href="#">Delete</a>	<a href="#">Restore List</a>	<a href="#">Backup List</a>	<a href="#">Delete Expired</a>	<a href="#">Delete Out of Quota</a>	<a href="#">PMS Micros Opera</a>	<input type="text"/>	<a href="#">Search</a>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Username	Remaining Quota	Status	Group	Reference	External ID	Redeem
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	16 hr(s) 9 min(s) 8 sec(s)	Expired	Group 1			
<input type="checkbox"/>	pf3k	Until 2013/10/29-12:30	Expired	Group 1	roomN-100-9C:EB:E8:0B:76:8B		
<input type="checkbox"/>	8krm	Until 2013/10/29-22:11	Expired	Group 1	122		
<input type="checkbox"/>	gtum	Until 2013/10/29-22:11	Expired	Group 1	aaaa		
<input type="checkbox"/>	6uw5	Until 2013/10/29-22:11	Expired	Group 1	111		
<input type="checkbox"/>	42s7	Until 2013/10/29-22:11	Expired	Group 1	xx		
<input type="checkbox"/>	qr6e	Until 2013/10/29-22:11	Expired	Group 1	aqg		

## Micros Opera User List

On-Demand Account List

Search

G#	GN	RN	Username	Password	Remaining Quota	Status	Group
0123456789	0123456789	102	102	0123456789	Until 2013/11/06-22:11	Normal	Group 1

## PMS API for External Login Page

PMS API provides administrator a flexible implement with customized login page, where login information, billing plan chosen, purchase unit and so on could complete the accessing process. Administrator also could utilize its own username and password to secure the API protocol between external web server and WHG Controller. Furthermore, there is a downloadable example which administrator could easily modify from.

## **Chapter 13. Account Roaming**

### **13.1 Roaming Related**

Roaming capability is an essential feature requirement for large scale deployments or alliance co-operation for operators who seek to provide network access for other ISP subscribers to generate more sources of profit.

WHG Controllers support the WISPr attributes required to establish roaming relationship with most roaming brokers in the market such as Boingo, iPass Connect etc.

For more in depth support regarding compatibility and technical evaluation on your telecom operator, please contact 4ipnet support team.

### **13.2 WISPr for ISP Roaming**

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> System >> Service Zones >> Service Zone Configuration](#)

WISPr or Wireless Internet Service Provider roaming - Pronounced "whisper," is a draft protocol submitted to the Wi-Fi Alliance that allows users to roam between wireless internet service providers, in a fashion similar to that used to allow cell phone users to roam between carriers. A RADIUS server is used to authenticate the subscriber's credentials.

If a RADIUS server has been configured, the WISPr attributes used during RADIUS authentication can be defined here in this Service Zone.



WISPr Configuration

WISPr Smart Client

☒ Enabled
 ☐ Disabled

Smart Client Black List

☐ Enabled
 ☒ Disabled

(Separate by comma)

WISPr Location ID

ISO Country Code

(e.g. US)

E.164 Country Code

(e.g. 1)

E.164 Area Code

(e.g. 408)

Network (SSID/ZONE)

(e.g. MYWIFI)

WISPr Location Name

Hotspot Operator

(e.g. MYISP)

Location

(e.g. Lobby\_of\_Airport)

WISPr Billing Time

0

:

0

(HH:MM)

**WISPr Smart Client:** Select Enable if you wish to allow customers with a roaming account from a WISPr agent (iPass, WiFi Skype, Boingo, and etc.) to access your internet. Make sure to Enable the HTTPS Protected Login field under System >> General in order for roaming software on the client's device to work properly.

**Smart Client Black List:** Fill in the WISPr agent names and enable to block users from that particular WISPr roaming agent to access your internet. For example, if you fill in "ipassconnect", the iPass clients will be denied roaming access in your network.

**WISPr Location ID:** These attributes, which enable wireless hotspot providers to customize their web portals, are based on the client device location and are RADIUS vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

**WISPr Location Name:** These attributes, which enable wireless hotspot providers to customize their web portals, are based on the client device location and are RADIUS vendor-specific attributes (VSAs).

**WISPr Billing Time:** Set RADIUS account billing time.

## 13.3 Cross Gateway Roaming

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Network >> Client Mobility](#)

Cross Gateway roaming feature enables an end user to seamlessly move around large network deployment where there are multiple Controllers in service.

Normally when a user moves from edge AP to another edge AP that is managed by another Controller, the user would experience network disconnection and would require re-login procedure in order to continue surfing the net.

With Cross Gateway roaming enabled, the end user would not experience network interruption. The traffic would be tunneled back to the original Controller for forwarding into the internet.

Cross Gateway roaming architecture design adopted is a star topology design where one Master Node may have up to 15 Slave Node peers. The term master Node simply means that this node takes its place in the center of the star topology.

The role determination is completely dependent on the administrator settings. To establish roaming partnership, configure a Controller to be Master Node, and another Controller to be Slave Node. Make sure that the Secret Key and both Controller's WAN interface are routable.

Configure Slave Node's IP address and secret key.

### Cross Gateway Roaming

Mode ☐ Disable ☒ Master Mode ☐ Slave Mode

Status

Slave Nodes Setting	No.	Active	Remote IP Address*	Secret Key*	Remark
	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	4	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	5	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Configure the Slave Node's Master Node and secret key.

### Cross Gateway Roaming

Mode ☐ Disable ☐ Master Mode ☒ Slave Mode

Status

Master Node Setting

Remote IP Address  \*

Secret Key  \*

Remark

## 13.4 Local / On-Demand Account Roaming Out

The built-in user account databases both Local and On-Demand of the WHG Controller may be used for other Controllers as their external RADIUS authentication database.

This application offers the ability to refer to a single central Controller for account credential lookup during the authentication process, and is ideal for enterprises or businesses with multiple branch offices.

To use Local user database as the RADIUS database of another Controller:

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> Local](#)

### Local Authentication

User Postfix: radius

Blacklist: None

Local User List: [Configure](#)

Account Roaming Out: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

802.1X Authentication: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

[RADIUS Client Device Settings](#)

[Apply](#) [Cancel](#)

To use On-Demand user database as the RADIUS database of another Controller:

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Users >> Internal Authentication >> On-Demand](#)

### On-Demand Authentication

User Postfix: ondemand

Billing Plans: [Configure](#)

Currency: ☒ None ☐ \$ USD ☐ € EUR ☐ £ GBP

This is used when the currency is not defined in the Paypal account. Or input another desired monetary unit (max. 3 letters) in the blank field.

Expired Account Cache: 30 day(s)

Out-of-quota Account Cache: 30 day(s)

Set Ticket's Serial Number: 000005 [Set](#)

Web Printout: [Configure](#)

This will be applied to the regular printer printout when creating a single On-Demand account.

POS Tickets: [Configure](#)

Number of Tickets: ☒ 1 ☐ 2

This will be applied to printouts from the POS ticket printer. Templates can be edited for customization.

Terminal Server: [Configure](#)

Terminal Servers are add-on devices such as the SDS100 or SDS200W.

Payment Gateway: [Configure](#)

Remaining Quota Reminder: ☒ 10mins ☐ 15mins ☐ 20mins

Account Roaming Out: ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

[RADIUS Client Device Settings](#)

## RADIUS Client Device Settings

No.	Type	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Secret Key	SNMP Community
1	Roaming Out ▾	10.30.40.45	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾	••••	
2	Disable Roaming Out		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
3	802.1X DM & CoA		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
4	Disable ▾		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
5	Disable ▾		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
6	Disable ▾		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
7	Disable ▾		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		
8	Disable ▾		255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾		

After enabling the Roaming out feature for Local or On-Demand, click the RADIUS Client Device Settings hyperlink. The redirected page allows the administrator to specify the Controller IP which is allowed to behave as a RADIUS client and authenticate against this Controller's enabled user databases.

### NOTE

1. Please make sure that the user database postfixes are configured without conflicting with one another over the two Controllers.

## Chapter 14. VPN

### 14.1 Site-to-Site

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Network >> VPN >> Site-to-Site VPN](#)

WHG Controller supports **Site-to-Site VPN** for more than 2 WHG Controllers to create VPN tunnel to each other over the WAN network. For example, if there are 2 WHG Controllers, you can create a VPN tunnel to let a subnet of one WHG Controller to access the subnet of another WHG Controller.

#### Site-to-Site VPN

**Local Sites**

Add... Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Local Host/Subnet	Local Interface	Remote VPN Gateway	Remote Host/Subnet	Test Tunnel to Remote IP
--------------------------	-----	-------------------	-----------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------------

**Remote Sites**

Add... Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	No.	Name	IP Address	Pre-shared Key
--------------------------	-----	------	------------	----------------

First, you need to add a Remote Site with at least one remote subnet.



## Remote Site Configuration

Name	<input type="text"/>
IP Address	<input type="text"/>
Authentication Method	Pre-shared Key ▾
Pre-shared Key	<input type="text"/>
Phase1 Proposal	Encryption AES256 ▾ Authentication SHA-1 ▾
Diffie-Hellman Group	<input type="checkbox"/> Group 1 <input type="checkbox"/> Group 2 <input type="checkbox"/> Group 5
IKE Life Time	8 <input type="text"/> h ▾ (The time is a 5-digit number; e.g. 36h stands for 1 day and 12 hours)
Dead Peer Detection	DPD Delay 10 (second) DPD Timeout 15 (second)

Remote Subnet

No.	Network	Mask
1	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾
2	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▾

**NOTE**

1. The IPSec settings in both sites must be same.

Then create a Local Site with subnet for mapping to the remote site. Such as "192.168.11.0/24" of WHG Controller\_A >> "192.168.111.0/24" of WHG Controller\_B, after the tunnel is created, the users within these two subnets can reach each other.

### Local Site Configuration

Local Interface	WAN1 ▾
Remote VPN Gateway	▾ <a href="#">Edit Host</a> <a href="#">Add a New Host</a>
Local Host/Subnet	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Host <input type="radio"/> Subnet
Remote Host/Subnet	▾
Phase2 Proposal	Encryption AES256 ▾ Authentication SHA-1 ▾
Key Life Time	24 ▾ h ▾ ( 1 ~ 99999; e.g. 36h stands for 1 day and 12 hours)
Rekey	<input type="checkbox"/> Enable Rekey Rekey Margin 9 ▾ m ▾ ( 1 ~ 99999; e.g. 36h stands for 1 day and 12 hours)
Perfect Forward Secrecy	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Enable PFS PFS Group Group 2 ▾

**NOTE**

1. You can create more than one VPN tunnel, but the IP segment mapping can not be overlap, because one IP segment can not have two routing rules.

## 14.2 Remote Client

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Network >> VPN >> Remote VPN](#)

WHG Controller supports **Remote VPN** for user login to system from a remote area. After the user is logged in to system from the outside network of WAN, it will appear to the user that the login to WHG Controller is under the service zone locally. Policy can also be applied and users are controlled by system to access the network.

### Remote VPN

Function

☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Allocate IP Address from

172.29.0.1

Group Permission

Configure

Remote VPN Login Page

Configure

WISPr

Configure

Authentication Options

Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Default	Enable
Local	LOCAL	radius	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 1	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 2	RADIUS	radius_ex	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 3	LDAP	ldap	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 4	POP3	pop3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

All settings are similar to the settings in a Service Zone. Remote VPN can also be setup with a **SIP WAN Interface**, **Authentication Options**, **Group Permission**, **Applied Policy** and customizable Login Page.

After Remote VPN is enabled, when users browse the home page with the WAN IP, they will get to the Remote VPN login page. Input the enabled authentication options username and password, and the user will login successfully to the system.

#### NOTE

1. After Remote VPN is enabled, the default home page will be the Remote VPN login page. If you want to access the WMI of WHG Controller, please input "login.shtml" after the WAN IP. For example, : "http://192.168.X.X/login.shtml"

## Chapter 15. Switch Management

The 4ipnet SW1024 is a powerful 24+2 Port VLAN switch with 500W of power budget. The WHG Controller gives administrators one comprehensive interface for managing your 4ipnet equipment including the 4ipnet SW1024.

### 15.1 Switch List

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Switch Management >> Switch List](#)

The screenshot shows the WHG Controller interface with the 'DEVICES' tab selected. The breadcrumb trail is 'Main > Device Management'. The page title is 'Welcome to Device Management'. Below the title, there are three rows of settings:

Setting	Status	Action
Local Area AP Management	Enable	Enter
Wide Area AP Management	Enable	Enter
Switch Management	Enable	Enter

A 4ipnet SW1024 switch connected either to a WAN port or LAN port of the WHG Controller can be added manually or by discovery.

The screenshot shows the 'Add switch' form in the WHG Controller interface. The breadcrumb trail is 'Main > Switches > Switch List > Add switch'. The 'Add Method' dropdown menu is open, showing 'Add Switch' and 'Discovery' options. The 'Add Switch' option is selected. Below the dropdown, the form fields are as follows:

Field	Value	Required
Device Type	sw1024	
Device IP		*
Device MAC		*
Device Name		*
Login ID	admin	
Password		*
SNMP Community Read		*

Once the Switch is successfully added to the list, we can see that its Status is now shown:

Switch List

Status All ▼

Add Delete Restart Backup Restore

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Type	Status	IP address	MAC address	Total allocated/Used/Max supply power [W]	Switch UI
<input type="checkbox"/>	seleniumTest	sw1024	Offline	10.66.4.8	AA:BB:CC:DD:EE:FF	Switch Offline	<span>Go to</span>

The Switch List displays the Switch Name, Switch Type, Status, IP Address, MAC Address, Power Budget, and a shortcut link to the Switch's management web interface.

## 15.2 PoE Schedule Template

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Switch Management >> PoE Schedule Template](#)

The PoE Schedule Template allows administrators to set a schedule for delivering power on the assigned ports of the managed switch. This function can be used to control AP schedules when the APs are powered by PoE from the managed switch.

Main > Switches > PoE Template

PoE Schedule Template

Add template

Template Name	Copy Settings From	Remark	Action
<input type="text" value="Default"/>	<span>NONE ▼</span>	<input type="text"/>	

✓ Apply ✗ Cancel

Templates may be added, or customized by clicking the pencil icon.



## Template Edit - Power supply schedule : Template\_2

■	Day	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sun	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mon	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Tue	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Wed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Thu	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Fri	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sat	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Apply to

Refresh

Switch Name ▼

■	Port	PoE Mode	Connected Device	■	Port	PoE Mode	Connected Device
<input type="checkbox"/>	1			<input type="checkbox"/>	13		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2			<input type="checkbox"/>	14		
<input type="checkbox"/>	3			<input type="checkbox"/>	15		
<input type="checkbox"/>	4			<input type="checkbox"/>	16		
<input type="checkbox"/>	5			<input type="checkbox"/>	17		
<input type="checkbox"/>	6			<input type="checkbox"/>	18		
<input type="checkbox"/>	7			<input type="checkbox"/>	19		
<input type="checkbox"/>	8			<input type="checkbox"/>	20		
<input type="checkbox"/>	9			<input type="checkbox"/>	21		
<input type="checkbox"/>	10			<input type="checkbox"/>	22		
<input type="checkbox"/>	11			<input type="checkbox"/>	23		
<input type="checkbox"/>	12			<input type="checkbox"/>	24		

## 15.3 Backup Configuration

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> Devices >> Switch Management >> Backup Configuration](#)

Backup Configuration displays a list of backed up configuration from a managed switch. Configuration can be saved to this list by selecting a switch and clicking "Backup".

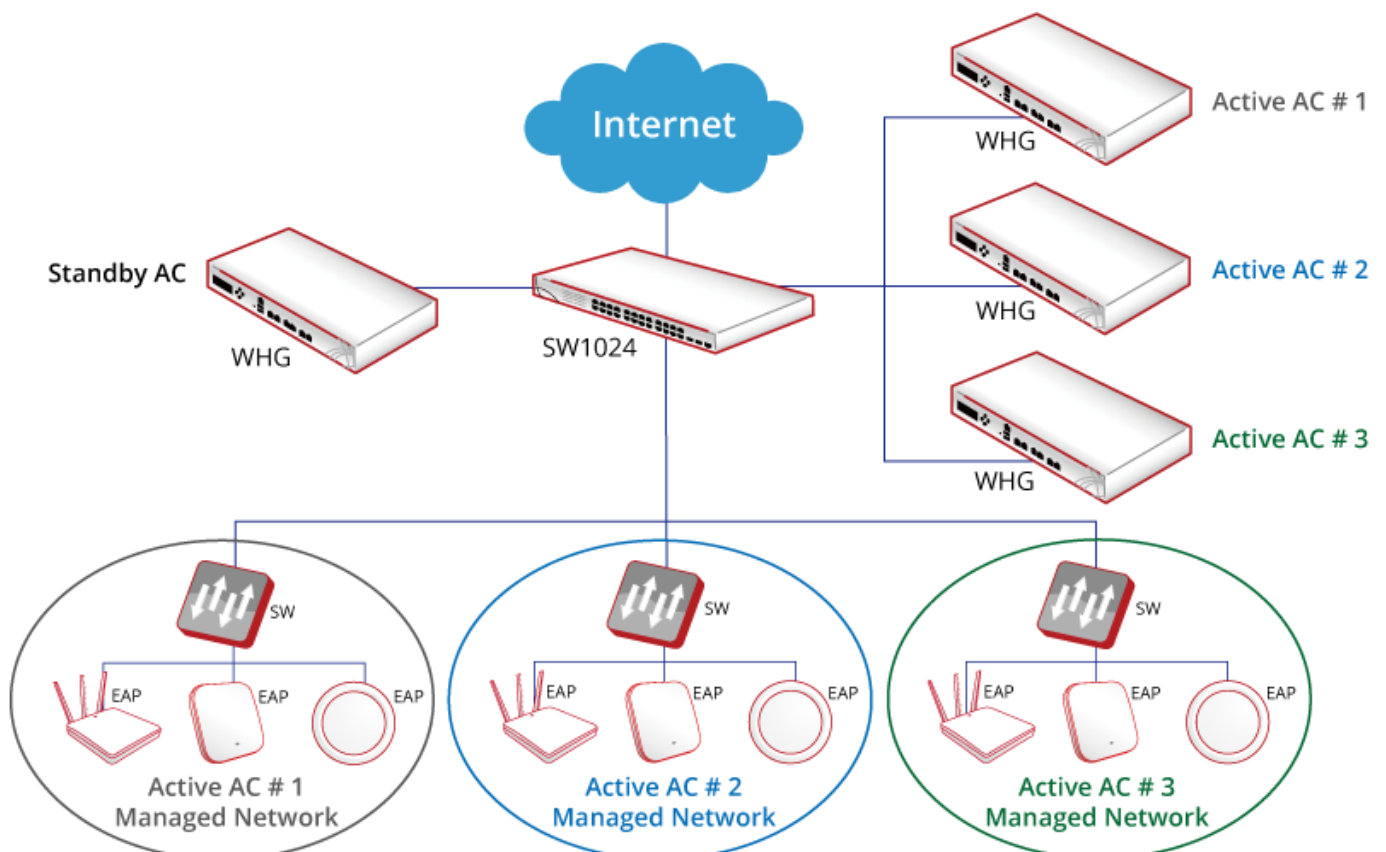


## Chapter 16. Platform Dependent Features

### 16.1 High Availability (HA) (WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG515, WHG525, WHG707, WHG711, WHG801)

The 4ipnet HA design principle is to use redundancy in achieving higher availability with minimum impact during service transition. The 4ipnet HA approach implements a dedicated message link between ACs (Access Controller) to create an N + 1 redundancy system where N is  $\leq 3$ . Once the HA link has been established, the Active ACs will be servicing all network traffic while the Standby AC will be in hot-standby ready to take over network service in case an Active AC can no longer provide service.

Configuration path: [Main Menu >> System >> High Availability](#)



## Feature Description:

1. 4ipnet HA feature is a software determined feature which can be Enabled or Disabled.  
Software determined Ethernet role:
  - When enabled, LAN1 port will become the dedicated HA port.
  - When disabled, LAN1 remain its normal function as LAN port.
2. The Web UI has a configuration item to designate this AC as either "Active" or "Standby" when HA feature is enabled.
3. All HA configuration are manually applied. This includes AC role as an Active or Standby as well as the HA pair restoration after an AC goes down.

**Configuration**

Status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Number of Active(s)	2 ▼
Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Active <input type="radio"/> Standby
HA Port IP Address	172.31.0.1 *
HA Port Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0 *
Peer IP Address	10.1.2.3 *
Shared Key	..... *

**Configuration**

Status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Number of Active(s)	2 ▼
Mode	<input type="radio"/> Active <input checked="" type="radio"/> Standby
HA Port IP Address	172.31.0.3 *
HA Port Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0 *
#1 Peer IP Address	10.1.2.1 *
#2 Peer IP Address	10.1.2.2 *
Shared Key	..... *
Switch Support	<input type="radio"/> Enabled <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disabled

4. HA link once established synchronizes all system configurations, user databases, user online status, system resource status, managed AP profile from the Active AC to the Standby AC.
5. There is a HA link monitoring mechanism by the standby AC when HA links have been established. This link monitoring module checks the status of the Active ACs. During an event when an Active AC is not responding, this module will regard this AC as no longer providing service and take over network service.
6. Local APM managed APs will experience little network interruption as they are L2 devices. Clients associated to locally managed AP will experience the same scenario (little or no network interruption) as wired clients during service

switchover.

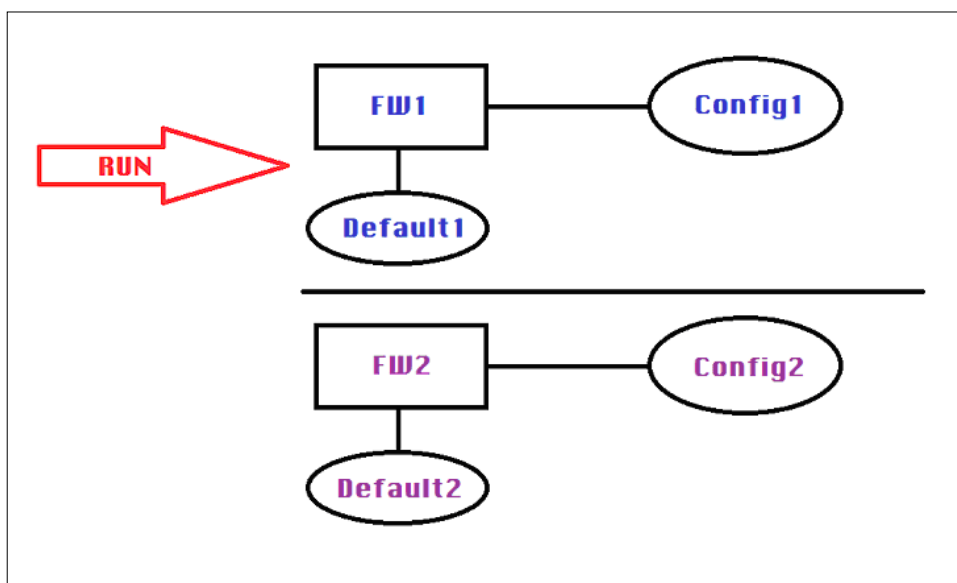
7. Wide Area managed APs (manually or via CAPWAP) over L3 device with tunnels established will be able to resume service within 5 min max (approximation) after service switchover with full AP management capacity.
8. HA feature can only be enabled for up to 3 ACs of the same brand and same FW version and build number.

## 16.2 Hardware Button (WHG311, WHG315)

Hardware button features are a collection of hardware triggered functions built on WHG Controllers. Currently supported functions include Quick-Restore, Quick-VPN, and Quick-Maintenance. Models currently supporting hardware button features are: WHG311, WHG315 only.

### 16.2.1. Quick-Restore

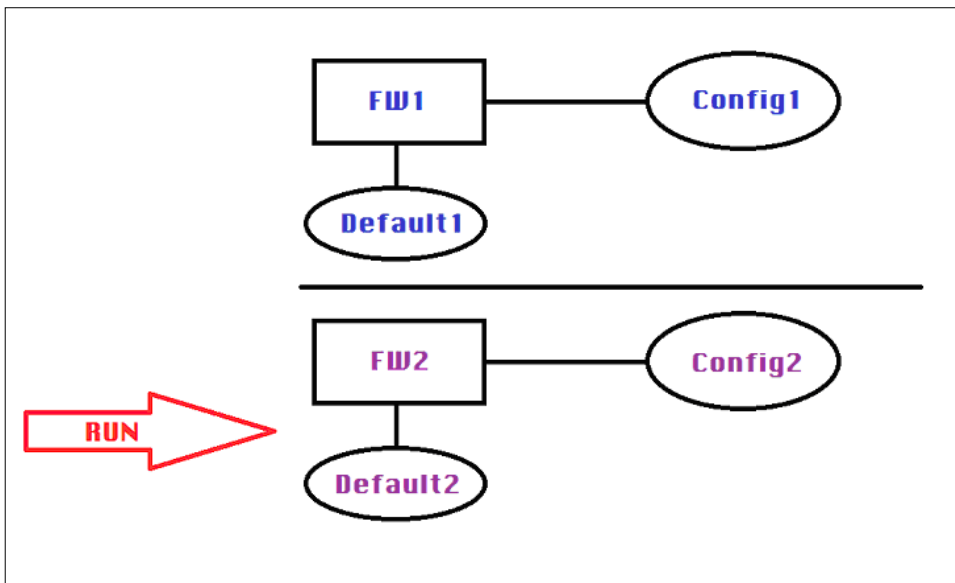
There will be two firmware images on the system, denoted as FW1 and FW2 bundled to configuration db, denoted as Config1 and Config2 respectively. During system power up, the system will boot up with the FW+Config which is run in the last operation.



### 1) Pressing the "Quick-Restore" button

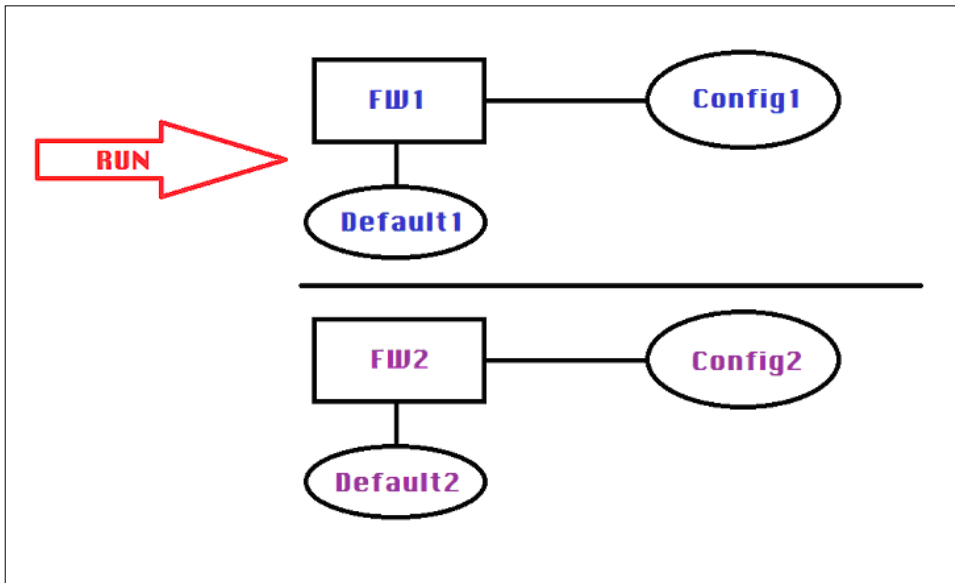
When the "Quick-Restore" button is pressed while the system power is on, the boot up option will be switched. Press this button while system is powering up and release when the "Quick-Restore" LED lights up, the system will switch to the other firmware image and boot up with that firmware.

Case1: When FW1+Config1 is the last in operation FW+Config, pressing the "Quick-Restore" button will switch the operation to FW2+Config2. Successive reboots without pressing the "Quick-Restore" will trigger the system to run with FW2+Config2.



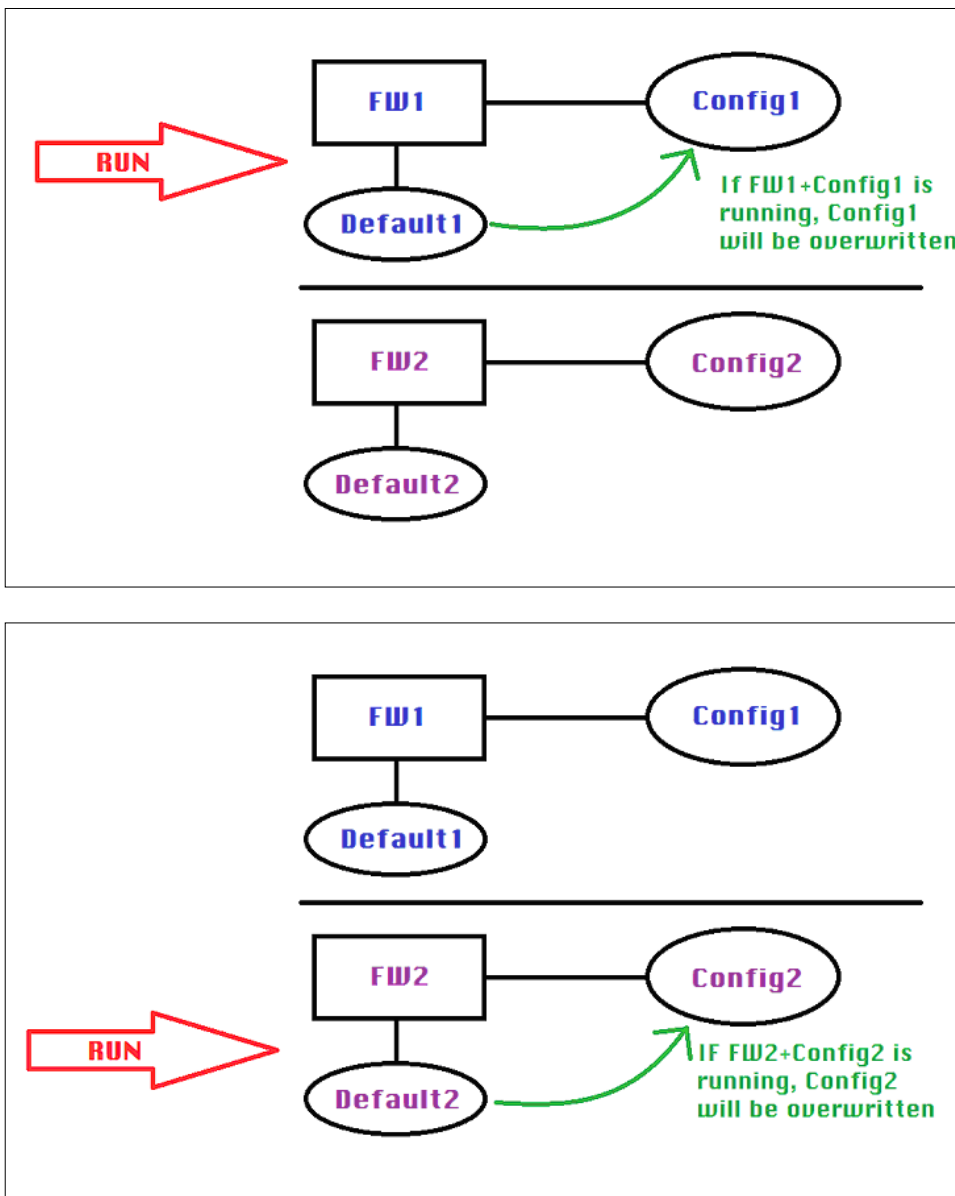
**Case2:** When FW2+Config2 is the last in operation FW+Config, pressing the "Quick-Restore" button will switch the operation to FW1+Config1. Successive reboots without pressing the "Quick-Restore" will trigger the system to run with

FW1+Config1.



## 2) Reset to Default

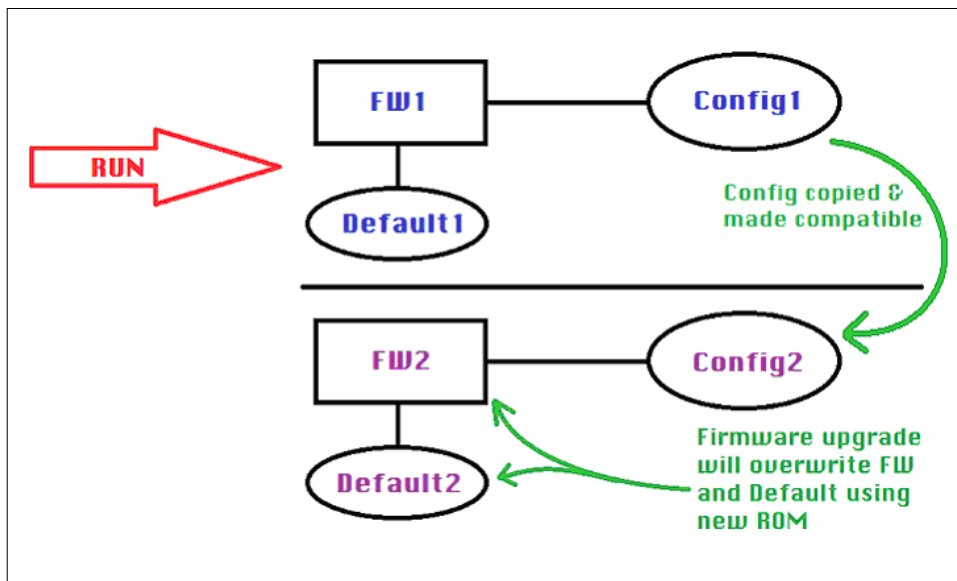
When the administrator resets the system to factory default, either via WMI or the Reset button, the system will only overwrite the Config of the firmware in operation.



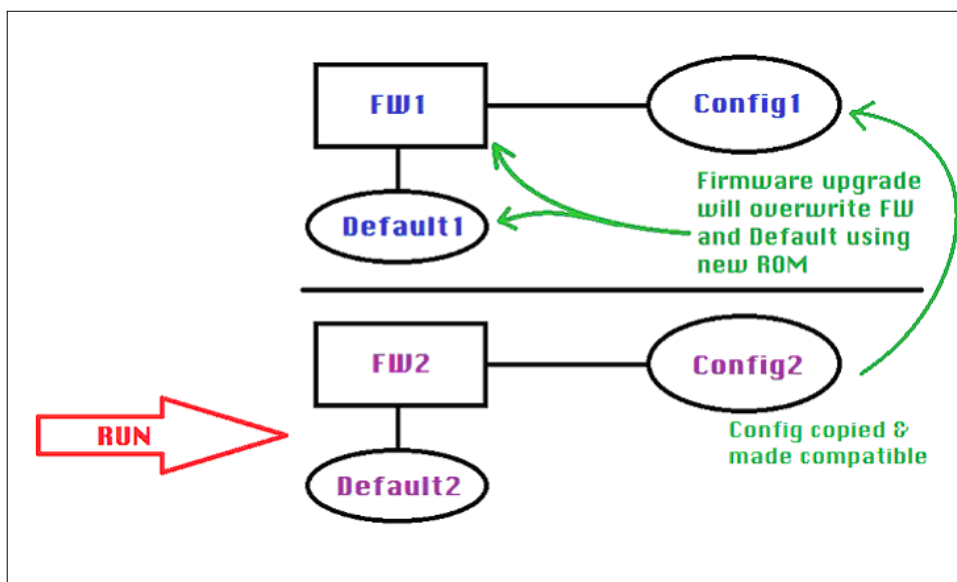
### 3) Firmware Upgrade

When the administrator performs firmware upgrade on WMI, the system will overwrite the FW and Default of the FW not in operation. The current in operation FW+Config will not be overwritten.





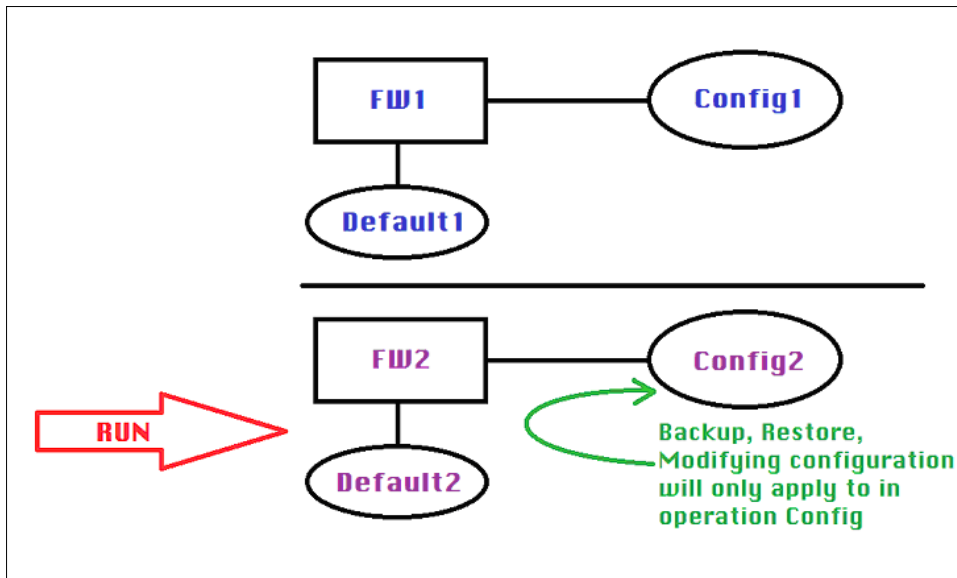
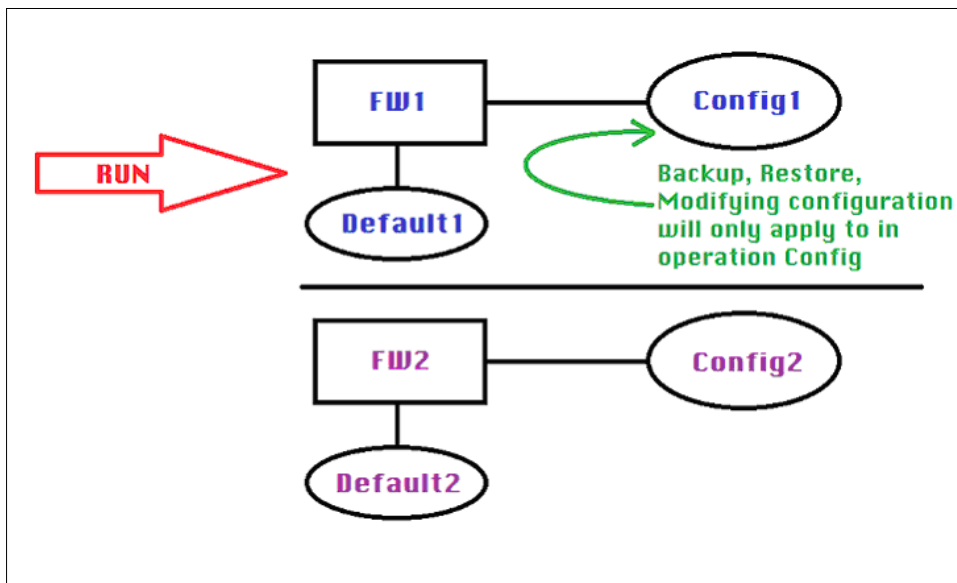
Current in operation Config will be copied to the other Config.



When firmware upgrade is complete, system will automatically switch to the newly upgraded firmware and the system will reboot with the new firmware.

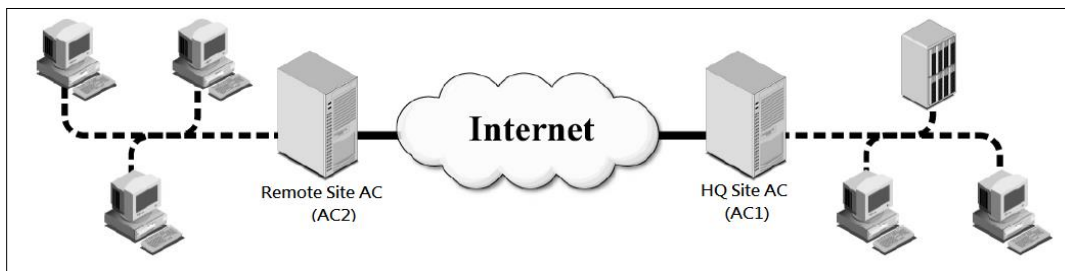
#### 4) Modifying, Backup, Restoring, Configuration

When the administrator performs backup/restore or configuration changes, the targeted Config is the in operation Config. Any changes in configuration will be applied to in operation Config. Backup will save a copy of the in operation Config. Restore will restore the in operation Config with a previously backed up db.



## 16.2.2. Quick-VPN

- 1) Allow admin to establish site to site VPN with a push button action between two Access Controller for example between HQ site AC and Remote site AC.  
Paragraphs below will designate HQ Site AC as AC1 and Remote Site AC as AC2.



2) Admin only needs to enter on AC2 Site-to-Site VPN settings:

- Add a Remote Site
- Add a Local Site

3) Once AC2 has configured its Site-to-Site VPN settings, establishment is triggered by pressing the Quick-VPN buttons as follows:

- Press and hold the Quick-VPN button on AC1 for around 5 seconds, release the button when the corresponding Quick-VPN LED lights up. AC1 will enter VPN waiting mode.
- Press and hold the Quick-VPN button on AC2 for around 5 seconds, release the button when the corresponding Quick-VPN LED lights up. AC2 will be in VPN negotiating mode.
- AC2 will automatically attempt to negotiate and establish site to site VPN with AC1. AC1 requires no pre-configuration, and will automatically configure a remote and local site based on AC2's request.
- A successful VPN connection will be indicated by the corresponding LED on AC2 and AC1 be lit up constantly in green.

### 16.2.3. Quick-Maintenance

Allow admin to copy system FW & configuration from one AC to two or more AC's without having to access WMI.

1) The major application scenario for this button is when a device's dual image is corrupted. Admin can use this button and copy a normal functioning device's FW images to the corrupted device. This process can avoid having to RMA for FW fixes.

- 2) There is a notion of sender-receiver pair, where one AC is the sender and the other AC is the receiver AC.
- 3) WAN2 is designated as Quick-Maintenance port when Quick-Maintenance process is initiated.
- 4) Before initiating Quick-Maintenance process, Admin must make sure that the sender and receiver AC are connected directly via Ethernet cables by the designated Quick-Maintenance port. It can be one sender AC to many receiver AC via hub or switches.
- 5) This function will copy both F/W image and both F/W configuration from the sender AC to the receiver AC. When Quick-Maintenance process is complete, receiver AC's flash image will be synced to the same one as sender AC.
- 6) Operation flow as follows:
  - The admin should initiate the process by enabling this feature in WMI of sender AC. The sender AC will be in ready mode for sending FW image and config.
  - The admin should power off the Receiver AC, press and hold the Quick-Maintenance button, and then power will be back on the Receiver AC. When the corresponding Quick-Maintenance LED lights up on the receiver AC, release hold and the receiver AC will be in receiving mode for receiving FW image and config.
- 7) When FW image and configuration is copied successfully and receiver AC's flash has been overwritten with new FW image and config successfully, receiver AC's corresponding LED should display constant RED until admin power off the unit.
- 8) If the process fails, receiver AC's corresponding LED light will turn off and continue to boot up the device.
- 9) After a successful Quick-Maintenance procedure, admin can remove the receiver AC and repeat the whole process for another receiver AC.
- 10) When the entire process is complete, the admin should disable this feature on sender AC's WMI to return the device back to normal operation.

## **16.3 WiFi Monitor (WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG425, WHG515, WHG525, WHG711, WHG801)**

The WiFi Monitor function includes 3 main features: Simulation Tool, Managed AP Simulation, and AP Monitoring on floorplan.

WiFi Monitor allows the administrator to simulate WiFi signal coverage of Access Points; be it a virtual area or a real managed APs signal coverage. It also monitors AP statuses and statistic information of the managed APs.

This is designed to help administrators with network survey, planning and performance enhancement during the initial installation stage, and also monitoring managed APs in an existing deployment.

AP Simulation is further classified into 2 features, namely **Simulation Tool** and **Managed AP Simulation**.

Models currently supporting the AP Simulation Utility are: WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG425, WHG515, WHG525, WHG711 and WHG801.

### **16.3.1. Simulation Tool**

The Simulation Tool is designed to help administrators decide where APs should be placed and whether the number of APs would satisfy the throughput requirement during initial installation. First, a map or a floor plan in .jpg format is required, with partitions drawn in .xml format.

There are 3 different type of floorplan: Local, Wide and Virtual.

## Add Floor Plan

Floor Plan Type	Virtual ▼
Floor Plan Name	<input type="text"/> *
Floor Plan (.jpg)	<input type="text"/> 瀏覽... * (under 256k, JPG)
Wall (.xml)	<input type="text"/> 瀏覽... *
Map Width (m)	<input type="text"/> * (1~200)
Map Length (m)	<input type="text"/> * (1~200)
Country Code	EUROPE ▼
Height of Receiving Device (m)	<input type="text"/> 1 * (1~10)
Desired Minimum Throughput (Mbps)	<input type="text"/> (0.1~25)
Estimated Number of Devices	<input type="text"/> (1~2000)
Assigned Channels for 2.4G	1 ▼ 6 ▼ 11 ▼
Assigned Channels for 5G	36 ▼ 52 ▼ 100 ▼

With the floor plan and partitions in place, simulation APs can now be added to the floor plan for simulation as shown below.

## WiFi Monitor

Add Simulation AP

Not on Floor Plan

On Floor Plan

Remove All AP Delete All AP

Go to Add Sim

Simulate 5G

**Add AP**

Name: Test AP 3F

AP Location Height (m): 10

AP Model: **Select Model**

Add Add Multiple AP 10

- EAP210
- EAP220
- EAP320
- EAP330
- EAP701
- EAP705
- EAP706
- EAP717
- EAP727
- EAP757
- EAP760
- EAP767
- OWL530
- OWL620
- OWL630

COVERED PORCH

MASTER BEDROOM (13'-0" x 15'-6")

LIVING ROOM (Vaulted Ceiling) (14'-8" x 15'-6")

DINING ROOM (10'-8" x 14'-0")

BREAKFAST NOOK

BATH

ROOM #2 8' x 10'-8"

ROOM #3 8' x 11'-0"

CLOSET

-1 dBm

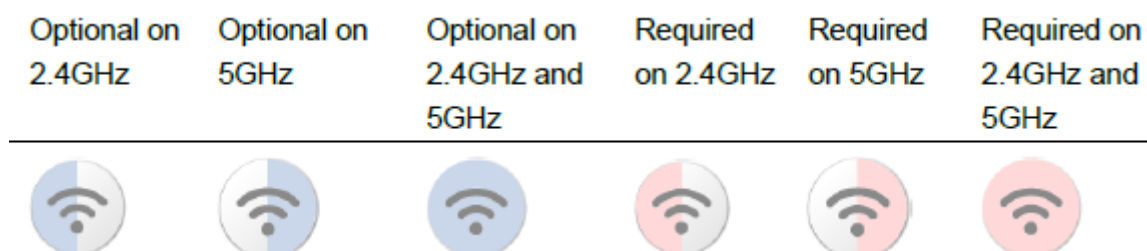


The Signal Strength and Coverage of the simulation APs would depend on factors such as the AP model, transmit power, AP Height, and etc.

Once these Simulation APs are created, simply drag and drop these APs onto the floor plan. 2.4GHz is indicated blue and 5GHz is indicated red for signal strength (hence purple when both bands are overlapping).

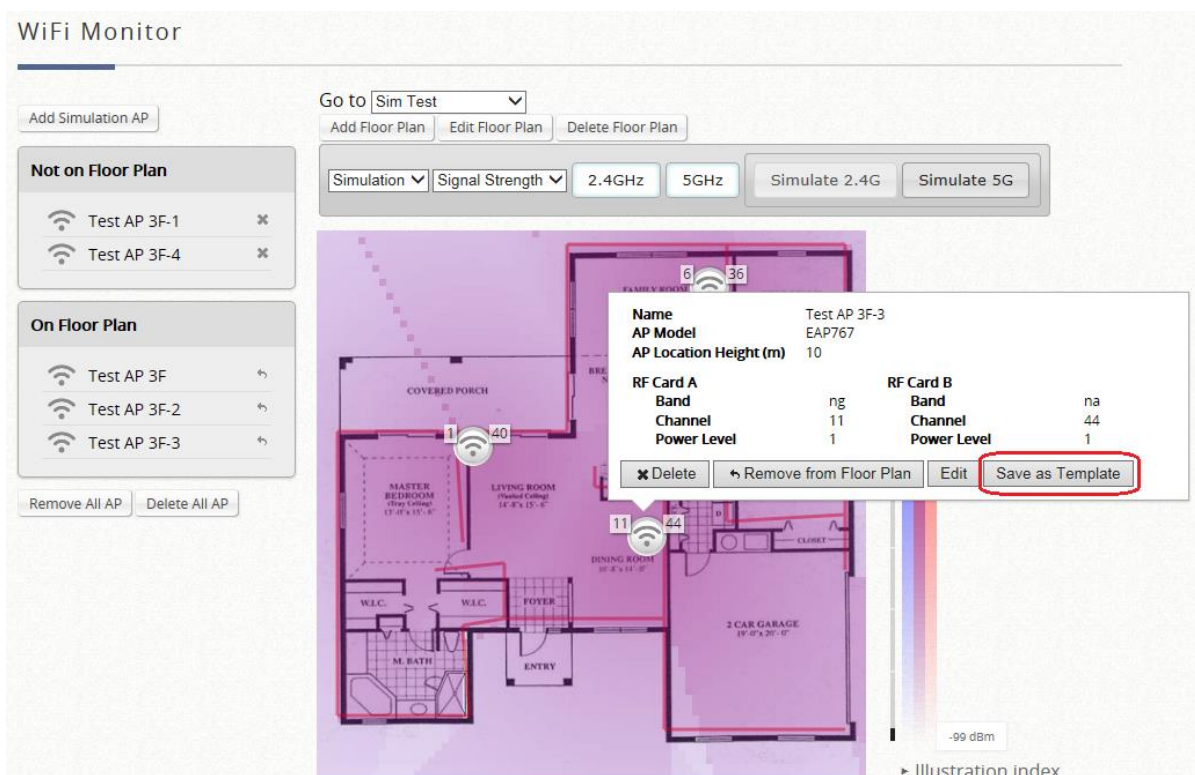


Click "Simulate 2.4G" or "Simulate 5G" to see if the deployed APs are adequate for your requirement.





When simulation is done successfully, the recommended channel allocation will be shown next to the Simulation AP.



Configurations can then be saved conveniently to a template to be used for AP Management.

### 16.3.2. Managed AP Simulation

Managed AP Simulation is a used for monitoring of Access Points based on location. Not to be confused with the Simulation Tool, the APs on the Managed AP Simulation floor plan are real managed Access Points on the Controller (either by Local AP Management or Wide AP Management).

WiFi Monitor

Go to Local Test Local

Add Managed AP

Not on Floor Plan

On Floor Plan

TestAP1

Remove All AP Delete All AP

Add Floor Plan Edit Floor Plan Delete

Status AP Status

Name	TestAP1
AP Model	OWL530
AP Location Height (m)	10
IP	10.2.11.53
MAC	00:1F:D4:02:CA:49
AP State	Limited
Client Num	0

Delete Remove from Floor Plan Refresh

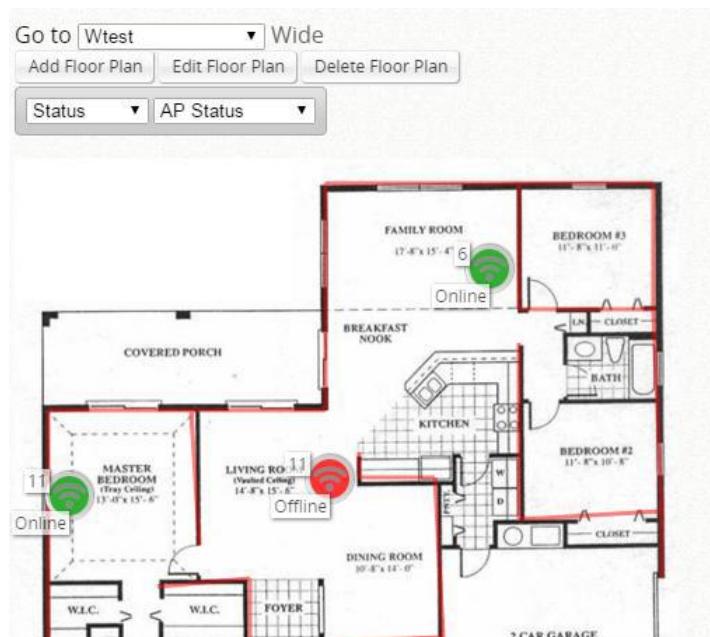
Access Points here are linked to APs managed by the WHG Controller, and we can see real AP information such as the IP address, MAC address, and Associated Client number. This allows the administrator to easily visualize the wireless network with respect to the APs' location.



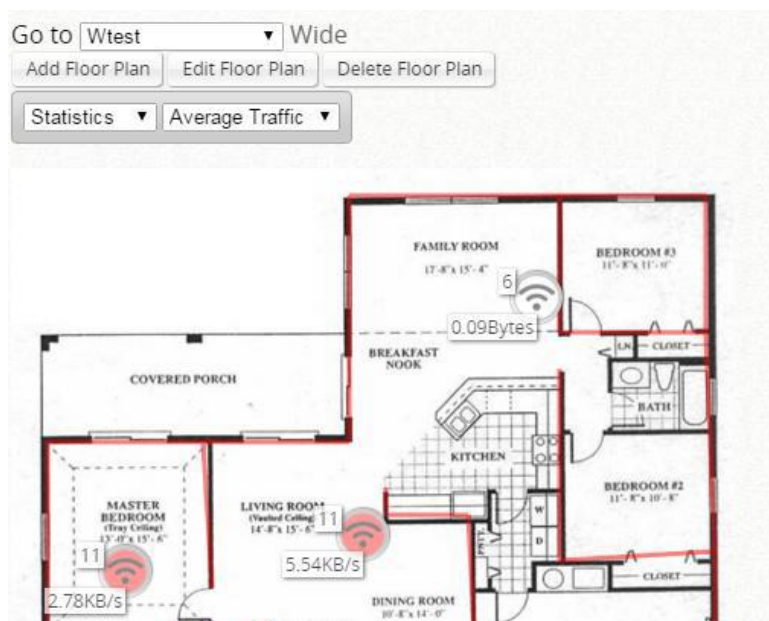
### 16.3.3. AP Monitoring on floorplan

In an area with operating APs, administrators may view AP statuses from the created floorplan.

The AP status shows Online, Offline or Disabled. Administrators may also obtain CPU Idle and Memory Usage when APs are managed by Wide area AP Management.



AP statistic information, such as AP density and AP average traffic, and AP average traffic are also supported when APs are managed using Wide area AP Management.



## Appendix A. WHG Models & Installation

### WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG201	WHG311	WHG315
<b>Form Factor</b>	Desktop	13" Mini-book	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	1 (2) x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE
<b>LAN</b>	4 (3) x GbE	8 x GbE	8 x GbE
<b>Local Accounts</b>	2000	3000	4000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	2000	3000	4000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	10	30	50
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>	EAP701 EAP705 EAP706 EAP717 EAP727 EAP757 EAP760 EAP767 OWL530 OWL630	EAP110 EAP210 EAP220 EAP320 EAP701 EAP717 EAP727 EAP757 EAP767 OWL530 OWL620	EAP110 EAP210 EAP320 EAP701 EAP717 EAP727 EAP757 EAP767 OWL530
<b>Monitored AP</b>	100	100	100
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	8	8	8
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 12	Global + 12	Global + 12 Global +12

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG321	WHG325
<b>Form Factor</b>	13" Mini-book	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	2 x GbE	2 x GbE
<b>LAN</b>	2 x GbE	2 x GbE
<b>Local Accounts</b>	10000	10000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	10000	10000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	40	80
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>	EAP110	EAP110
	EAP210	EAP210
	EAP220	EAP220
	EAP260	EAP260
	EAP320	EAP320
	EAP330	EAP330
	EAP700	EAP700
	EAP701	EAP701
	EAP705	EAP705
	EAP706	EAP706
	EAP717	EAP717
	EAP727	EAP727
	EAP747	EAP747
	EAP750	EAP750
	EAP757	EAP757
	EAP760	EAP760
	EAP767	EAP767
	OWL400	OWL400
	OWL410	OWL410
	OWL500	OWL500
	OWL530	OWL530
	OWL610	OWL610
	OWL620	OWL620
	OWL630	OWL630
<b>Monitored AP</b>	250	250
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	8	8
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 12	Global +12

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.



## WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG401	WHG405	WHG425
<b>Form Factor</b>	19"(1U)	19"(1U)	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	2 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE
<b>LAN</b>	2 x GbE	4 x GbE	4 x GbE
<b>Local Accounts</b>	5000	10000	10000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	5000	10000	10000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	150	150	150
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>		EAP110	EAP110
		EAP210	EAP210
		EAP220	EAP220
	EAP110	EAP260	EAP260
	EAP200	EAP320	EAP320
	EAP210	EAP330	EAP330
	EAP220	EAP700	EAP700
	EAP260	EAP701	EAP701
	EAP300	EAP705	EAP705
	EAP320	EAP706	EAP706
	EAP700	EAP717	EAP717
	EAP701	EAP727	EAP727
	EAP717	EAP747	EAP747
	EAP747	EAP750	EAP750
	EAP750	EAP757	EAP757
	EAP757	EAP760	EAP760
	OWL400	EAP767	EAP767
	OWL410	OWL400	OWL400
	OWL500	OWL410	OWL410
	OWL530	OWL500	OWL500
	OWL610	OWL530	OWL530
	OWL620	OWL610	OWL610
		OWL620	OWL620
		OWL630	OWL630
<b>Monitored AP</b>	200	250	250
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	16	16	16
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 24	Global + 24	Global + 24

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG505	WHG515	WHG525
<b>Form Factor</b>	19"(1U)	19"(1U)	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	2 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE
<b>LAN</b>	2 x GbE	4 x GbE	4 x GbE
<b>Local Accounts</b>	6000	10000	10000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	6000	10000	10000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	200	250	250
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>		EAP110	EAP110
		EAP210	EAP210
	EAP110	EAP220	EAP220
	EAP200	EAP260	EAP260
	EAP210	EAP320	EAP320
	EAP220	EAP330	EAP330
	EAP260	EAP700	EAP700
	EAP300	EAP701	EAP701
	EAP320	EAP705	EAP705
	EAP700	EAP706	EAP706
	EAP701	EAP727	EAP717
	EAP717	EAP747	EAP727
	EAP747	EAP750	EAP747
	EAP750	EAP757	EAP750
	EAP757	EAP760	EAP757
	OWL400	EAP767	EAP760
	OWL410	OWL400	EAP767
	OWL500	OWL410	OWL400
	OWL530	OWL500	OWL410
	OWL610	OWL530	OWL500
	OWL620	OWL610	OWL530
		OWL620	OWL610
		OWL630	OWL620
<b>Monitored AP</b>	250	250	250
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	24	24	24
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 40	Global + 40	Global + 40

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG707	WHG711
<b>Form Factor</b>	19"(1U)	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	2 x GbE, 2 x Combo SFP	2 x GbE, 2 x Combo SFP
<b>LAN</b>	4 x GbE, 2 x SFP	10 x GbE, 2 x SFP
<b>Local Accounts</b>	15000	30000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	15000	30000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	500	500
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>	EAP110	EAP110
	EAP200	EAP210
	EAP210	EAP220
	EAP220	EAP260
	EAP260	EAP320
	EAP300	EAP330
	EAP320	EAP700
	EAP700	EAP701
	EAP701	EAP705
	EAP717	EAP706
	EAP747	EAP717
	EAP750	EAP727
	EAP757	EAP747
	EAP760	EAP750
	EAP767	EAP757
	OWL400	EAP760
	OWL410	EAP767
	OWL500	OWL400
	OWL530	OWL410
	OWL610	OWL500
	OWL620	OWL530
	OWL630	OWL610
		OWL620
		OWL630
<b>Monitored AP</b>	500	500
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	24	24
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 40	Global + 40

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## WHG Controller Capacity Table

Capacity	WHG801	WHG801
<b>Form Factor</b>	19"(2U)	19"(2U)
<b>WAN</b>	2 x GbE, 2 x Combo SFP, 1 x 10Gb SFP	2 x GbE, 6 x Combo SFP, 2 x 10Gb SFP
<b>LAN</b>	6 x GbE, 6 x SFP, 1 x 10Gb SFP	6 x GbE, 6 x SFP, 2 x 10Gb SFP
<b>Local Accounts</b>	30000	30000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	30000	30000
<b>Managed AP Capacity (Local &amp; Wide Combined)</b>	1200	1200
<b>4ipnet AP Model</b>	EAP110	EAP110
	EAP210	EAP210
	EAP220	EAP220
	EAP260	EAP260
	EAP320	EAP320
	EAP330	EAP330
	EAP700	EAP700
	EAP701	EAP701
	EAP705	EAP705
	EAP706	EAP706
	EAP717	EAP717
	EAP727	EAP727
	EAP747	EAP747
	EAP750	EAP750
	EAP757	EAP757
	EAP760	EAP760
	EAP767	EAP767
	OWL400	OWL400
	OWL410	OWL410
	OWL500	OWL500
	OWL530	OWL530
	OWL610	OWL610
	OWL620	OWL620
	OWL630	OWL630
<b>Monitored AP</b>	1200	1200
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	24	24
<b>User Policies</b>	Global + 40	Global + 40

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## Hardware Overview

### WHG201 Hardware

1	<b>Buttons</b>	<p><b>Reset:</b> Press and hold the Reset button for over 3 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink, release button at this stage to restart the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will turn from blinking to off, release at this stage to reset the system to default configuration.</p> <p><b>Power:</b> This button is the main on/off power of the system.</p>
2	<b>LED Displays</b>	<p><b>Power:</b> Power LED lights up as constant green when power supply is on.</p> <p><b>Status:</b> Blinking indicates that the system OS is booting up. When the system is ready for operation, the LED is lit up constantly.</p>
3	<b>WAN1 (optional WAN2)</b>	WAN port (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider). Configurable WAN2 option.
4	<b>LAN1~ LAN4</b>	Client machines or switch connect to WHG201 via LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
5	<b>USB</b>	Function Reserved for future use.

### WHG311 Hardware

1	<b>Quick Buttons</b>	<p><b>Reset:</b> Press and hold the Reset button for over 3 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink, release button at this stage to restart the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will turn from blinking to off, release at this stage to reset the system to default configuration.</p> <p><b>Quick-Restore:</b> This button is the firmware switch button. Press this button while system is powering up and release when the "Quick-Restore" LED lights up, the system will switch to the other firmware image and boot up with that firmware.</p> <p><b>Quick-VPN:</b> This button is for establishing a site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to "Appendix: Hardware Button" for detailed operation instructions.</p> <p><b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This button allows admin to copy an exact FW &amp; Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to "Appendix: Hardware Button", for detailed operation instructions.</p>
2	<b>LED Displays</b>	<p><b>Power:</b> Power LED lights up as constant green when power supply is on.</p>

		<p><b>Status:</b> Status LED is Blue. Blinking indicates that system OS is booting up, when lit up constantly it indicates that the system is ready for operation.</p> <p><b>Quick-Restore:</b> This is used to indicate that the system will now switch to the other F/W partition for operation.</p> <p><b>Quick-VPN:</b> This LED is used for indicating the status of establishing site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed status description.</p> <p><b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This LED is for indicating the status of copying FW &amp; Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to "Appendix: Hardware Button" for detailed status description.</p>
3	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
4	<b>LAN1~ LAN8</b>	Client machines or switch connect to WHG311 via LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
5	<b>USB</b>	Function Reserved for future use.
6	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.

## WHG315 Hardware

1	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Sleep", "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
2	<b>Quick Buttons</b>	<p><b>Reset:</b> Press and hold the Reset button for over 3 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink, release button at this stage to restart the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will turn from blinking to off, release at this stage to reset the system to default configuration.</p> <p><b>Quick-Restore:</b> This button is the firmware switch button. Press this button while system is powering up and release when the "Quick-Restore" LED lights up, the system will switch to the other firmware image and boot up with that firmware.</p> <p><b>Quick-VPN:</b> This button is for establishing a site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to Appendix F</p>



		for detailed operation instructions. <b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This button allows admin to copy an exact FW & Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed operation instructions.
3	LED Displays	<b>Power:</b> Power LED lights up as constant green when power supply is on. <b>Status:</b> Status LED is Blue. Blinking indicates that system OS is booting up, when lit up constantly it indicates that the system is ready for operation. <b>Quick-Restore:</b> This is used to indicate that the system will now switch to the other F/W partition for operation. <b>Quick-VPN:</b> This LED is used for indicating the status of establishing site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed status description. <b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This LED is for indicating the status of copying FW & Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed status description.
4	WAN1/ WAN2	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
5	LAN1~ LAN8	Eight Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
6	USB	Function Reserved for future use.
7	Console	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.

## WHG321 Hardware

1	Reset	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
2	Console	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
4	USB1/USB2	Reserved for future use.

<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN2</b>	Two Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>7</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are two LED indicators, <b>Power</b> and <b>Status</b> , to indicate different status of the system.

### WHG325 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>2</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>USB1/USB2</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN2</b>	Two Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>7</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are two LED indicators, <b>Power</b> and <b>Status</b> , to indicate different status of the system.

### WHG401 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can

		use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>6</b>	<b>Mgmt</b>	For management use only, it will always open WMI (Web Management Interface) homepage where its default IP address and subnet mask are 172.30.0.1 and 255.255.0.0.
<b>7</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>8</b>	<b>LAN1/ LAN2</b>	Two Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

#### WHG405 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>2</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>7</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.

## WHG425 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system.  Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>4</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>6</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>7</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

## WHG505 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system.  Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED

		on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>6</b>	<b>Mgmt</b>	For management use only, it will always open WMI (Web Management Interface) homepage where its default IP address and subnet mask are 172.30.0.1 and 255.255.0.0.
<b>7</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>8</b>	<b>LAN1/ LAN2</b>	Two Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

### WHG515 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system.  Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>4</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>6</b>	<b>Mgmt</b>	For management use only, it will always open WMI (Web Management Interface) homepage where its default IP address and subnet mask are 172.30.0.1 and 255.255.0.0.
<b>7</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>8</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

## WHG525 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system.  Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>4</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>7</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>8</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

## WHG707 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2 (SFP)</b>	Two combo WAN ports (SFP) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>2</b>	<b>LAN5/ LAN6 (SFP)</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (SFP).
<b>3</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are four LED indicators, WAN1, WAN2, LAN5, and LAN6, to indicate the traffic status of the SFP ports.
<b>4</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>5</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>6</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>7</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or



		monitor system status, etc.
<b>8</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, Power, Status and Hard-disk, to indicate different status of the system.
<b>9</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigations buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".

### WHG711 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2 (SFP)</b>	Two combo WAN ports (SFP) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>2</b>	<b>LAN7/ LAN8 (SFP)</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (SFP).
<b>3</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are four LED indicators, WAN1, WAN2, LAN7, and LAN8, to indicate the traffic status of the SFP ports.
<b>4</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN6, LAN9 ~ LAN12</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>7</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>8</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>9</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are two LED indicators, Power and Hard-disk, to indicate different status of the system.
<b>10</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigations buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".

## WHG801/WHG802 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigations buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>2</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>Mgmt</b>	For management use only, it will always open WMI (Web Management Interface) homepage where its default IP address and subnet mask are 172.30.0.1 and 255.255.0.0.
<b>5</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, Power, Status and Hard-disk, to indicate different status of the system.
<b>3</b>	<b>WAN 10GbE (SFP+)</b>	1 x 10Gb SFP+ WAN port to connect to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>4</b>	<b>LAN 10GbE (SFP+)</b>	1 x 10Gb SFP+ for client machines to connect to WHG Controller
<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2 (SFP)</b>	Two combo WAN ports (SFP) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN6 (SFP)</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (SFP).
<b>7</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are eight LED indicators to indicate the traffic status of the SFP ports.
<b>8</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>9</b>	<b>LAN7 ~ LAN12</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>10</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are two LED indicators to indicate bypass status

## Installation Instruction

### Preparations

1. Unpack the WHG Controller and go through the package checklist.
2. Review the front panel and back panel and identify each control and network interface that is described in the Hardware & Specification section.
3. Prepare Ethernet cables with RJ-45 connectors.
4. Prepare a PC with Web browser for accessing the Web Management Interface.
5. Identify an upstream device for WHG Controller to connect to your network, such as ADSL, CABLE modem or other edge devices. Collect the DNS server address provided by your ISP.

### Installation

- 1) Connect the power adaptor or power cord to the power socket on the rear panel. The Power LED should be on to indicate a proper connection.
- 2) Connect an Ethernet cable to the WAN1 Port on the front panel. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to an xDSL/cable modem, or a switch/hub of an internal network. The LED of this port should be on to indicate a proper connection.
- 3) Connect an Ethernet cable to a LAN Port on the front panel. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to an administrator PC for configuring the system. A switch can be used to connect multiple devices to the LAN port of the Controller.

#### NOTE

1. It is highly recommended to use all the supplies in the package instead of substituting any components by other suppliers to guarantee best performance.

## Appendix B. HSG Models & Installation

### HSG Gateway Capacity Table

Capacity	HSG1100	HSG1250	HSG3200	HSG3250	HSG5200
<b>Form Factor</b>	19"(1U)	19"(1U)	19"(1U)	19"(1U)	19"(1U)
<b>WAN</b>	1 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE, 2 x Combo SFP
<b>LAN</b>	4 x GbE	8 x GbE	2 x GbE	2 x GbE	4 x GbE, 2 x SFP
<b>Local Accounts</b>	2000	3000	5000	6000	15000
<b>On-Demand Accounts</b>	2000	3000	5000	6000	15000
<b>Monitored AP</b>	n/a	100	200	200	500
<b>Service Zones</b>	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8	Default + 8
<b>User Groups</b>	8	8	16	24	24
<b>User Policies</b>	Global +12	Global +12	Global + 24	Global + 40	Global + 40

\*Table contents are subjected to change without notice.

## Hardware Overview

### HSG1100 Hardware

1	<b>Quick Buttons</b>	<p><b>Quick-Print:</b> This button is for printing a ticket to create an On-Demand account when a POS printer is connected to the Console port. An On-Demand account will be created from Billing Plan 1 without having to access the Web Management Interface.</p> <p><b>Reset:</b> Press and hold the Reset button for over 3 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink, release button at this stage to restart the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will turn from blinking to off, release at this stage to reset the system to default configuration.</p>
3	<b>LED Displays</b>	<p><b>Power:</b> Power LED lights up as constant green when power supply is on.</p> <p><b>Status:</b> Blinking indicates that system OS is booting up, when lit up constantly it indicates that the system is ready for operation.</p> <p><b>WAN:</b> This LED is to indicate that the WAN Uplink is connected.</p> <p><b>LAN1~LAN4:</b> The LED is to indicate the connection status of each LAN.</p> <p><b>USB:</b> This indicates the status of USB connection. The USB port is reserved for future use.</p>
4	<b>WAN</b>	One Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
5	<b>LAN1~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
6	<b>USB</b>	Function Reserved for future use.
7	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.

### HSG1250 Hardware

1	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Sleep", "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
2	<b>Quick Buttons</b>	<p><b>Reset:</b> Press and hold the Reset button for over 3 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink, release button at this stage to restart the</p>

		<p>system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will turn from blinking to off, release at this stage to reset the system to default configuration.</p> <p><b>Quick-Restore:</b> This button is the firmware switch button. Press this button while system is powering up and release when the "Quick-Restore" LED lights up, the system will switch to the other firmware image and boot up with that firmware.</p> <p><b>Quick-VPN:</b> This button is for establishing a site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed operation instructions.</p> <p><b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This button allows admin to copy an exact FW &amp; Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed operation instructions.</p>
<b>3</b>	<b>LED Displays</b>	<p><b>Power:</b> Power LED lights up as constant green when power supply is on.</p> <p><b>Status:</b> Status LED is Blue. Blinking indicates that system OS is booting up, when lit up constantly it indicates that the system is ready for operation.</p> <p><b>Quick-Restore:</b> This is used to indicate that the system will now switch to the other F/W partition for operation.</p> <p><b>Quick-VPN:</b> This LED is used for indicating the status of establishing site to site VPN tunnel with minimal pre-configurations at a push of a button. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed status description.</p> <p><b>Quick-Maintenance:</b> This LED is for indicating the status of copying FW &amp; Config from controller A to controller B except for MAC address. Please refer to Appendix F for detailed status description.</p>
<b>4</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>5</b>	<b>LAN1~ LAN8</b>	Eight Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>6</b>	<b>USB</b>	Function Reserved for future use.
<b>7</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.



<b>1</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.
<b>2</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>5</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>6</b>	<b>Mgmt</b>	For management use only, it will always open WMI (Web Management Interface) homepage.
<b>7</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>8</b>	<b>LAN1/ LAN2</b>	Two Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).

### HSG3250 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are, Esc, Up, Down, and Enter.
<b>2</b>	<b>Reset</b>	Press and hold the Reset button for about 5 seconds and status of LED on front panel will start to blink before restarting the system. Press and hold the Reset button for more than 10 seconds and status of LED on the front panel will start to speed up blinking before resetting the system to default configuration.
<b>3</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>4</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.

<b>5</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two Gigabit WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) for uplink connections to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>6</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Four Gigabit LAN ports for servicing LAN traffic (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>7</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, <b>Power</b> , <b>Status</b> and <b>Hard-disk</b> , to indicate different status of the system.

### HSG5200 Hardware

<b>1</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2 (SFP)</b>	Two combo WAN ports (SFP) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>2</b>	<b>LAN5/ LAN6 (SFP)</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (SFP).
<b>3</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are four LED indicators, WAN1, WAN2, LAN4, and LAN5, to indicate the traffic status of the SFP ports.
<b>4</b>	<b>WAN1/ WAN2</b>	Two WAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45) are connected to the external network, such as the ADSL Router from your ISP (Internet Service Provider).
<b>5</b>	<b>LAN1 ~ LAN4</b>	Client machines connect to WHG Controller via these LAN ports (10/100/1000 Base-T RJ-45).
<b>6</b>	<b>USB</b>	Reserved for future use.
<b>7</b>	<b>Console</b>	The system can be configured via a serial console port. The administrator can use a terminal emulation program such as Microsoft's Hyper Terminal to login to the configuration console interface to change admin password or monitor system status, etc.
<b>8</b>	<b>LED Indicators</b>	There are three LED indicators, Power, Status and Hard-disk, to indicate different status of the system.
<b>9</b>	<b>LCD Display</b>	Allows network administrator to check important system settings such as network interface, SZ configurations, etc. The navigation buttons from left to right respectively are "Esc", "Up", "Down", and "Enter".

## Installation Instruction

### Preparations

1. Unpack the WHG Controller and go through the package checklist.
2. Review the front panel and the back panel and identify each control and network interface that is described in the Hardware & Specification section.
3. Prepare Ethernet cables with RJ-45 connectors.
4. Prepare a PC with Web browser for accessing the Web Management Interface.
5. Identify an upstream device for WHG Controller to connect to your network, such as ADSL, CABLE modem or other edge devices. Collect the DNS server address provided by your ISP.

### Installation

1. Connect the power adaptor or power cord to the power socket on the rear panel. The Power LED should be on to indicate a proper connection.
2. Connect an Ethernet cable to the WAN1 Port on the front panel. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to an xDSL/cable modem, or a switch/hub of an internal network. The LED of this port should be on to indicate a proper connection.
3. Connect an Ethernet cable to a LAN Port on the front panel. Connect the other end of the Ethernet cable to an administrator PC for configuring the system. A switch can be used to connect multiple devices to the LAN port of the Controller.

#### **NOTE**

2. It is highly recommended to use all the supplies in the package instead of substituting any components by other suppliers to guarantee best performance.

## Appendix C. External Pages

### External Page Concept

Choose **External Page** if you desire to use an external web page for your custom pages. Simply enter the URL of your external webpage, click **Preview** button to check if it is reachable, take a look at how your external webpage will be displayed, then click **Apply** button.

Login Page Selection for Users - Service Zone: Default	
<input type="radio"/> Default Page	<input type="radio"/> Template Page
<input type="radio"/> Uploaded Page	<input checked="" type="radio"/> External Page

External Page Setting	
External URL	<input type="text" value="http://10.2.3.230/ExternalPage/login.html"/>
<input type="button" value="Preview"/>	

*Main Menu>System>Service Zone>Service Zone Configuration>Login Page*

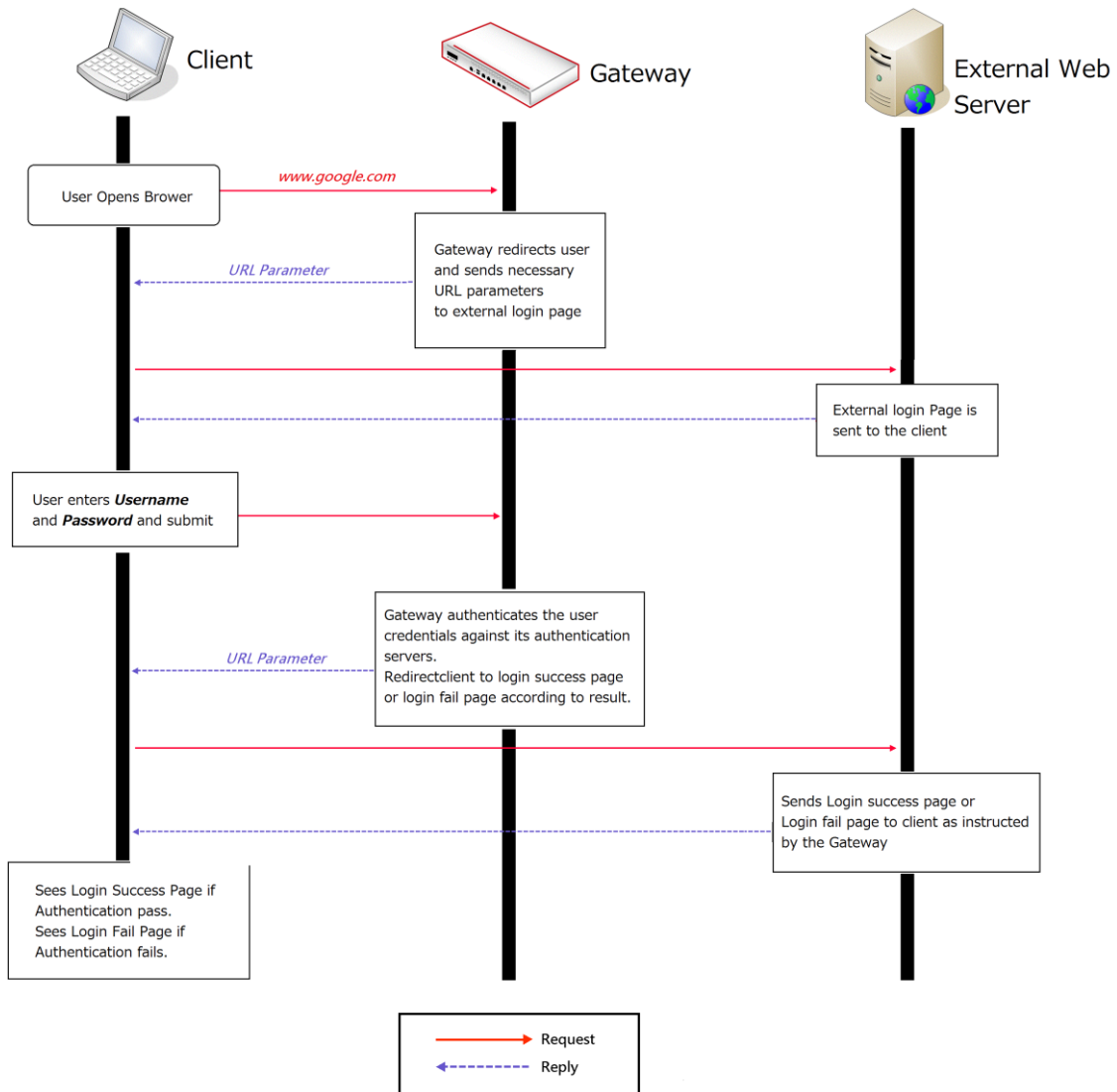
When a user connects to this Service Zone, opens a web browser and attempts to access the internet, the system will address the user to the external login page configured. Gateway while addressing users to the external web page will also send URL parameters required for the operation, for instance user authentication.

Therefore, each self-defined external page (*Login, Logout, Login Success, Logout Success, etc.*) requires codes to handle **URL parameters** to and from the Gateway. A simple example is illustrated below for Login Page. Please refer to **External Login Page Parameters** for URL parameter relating to other pages such as *Login Success Page ...* and etc.

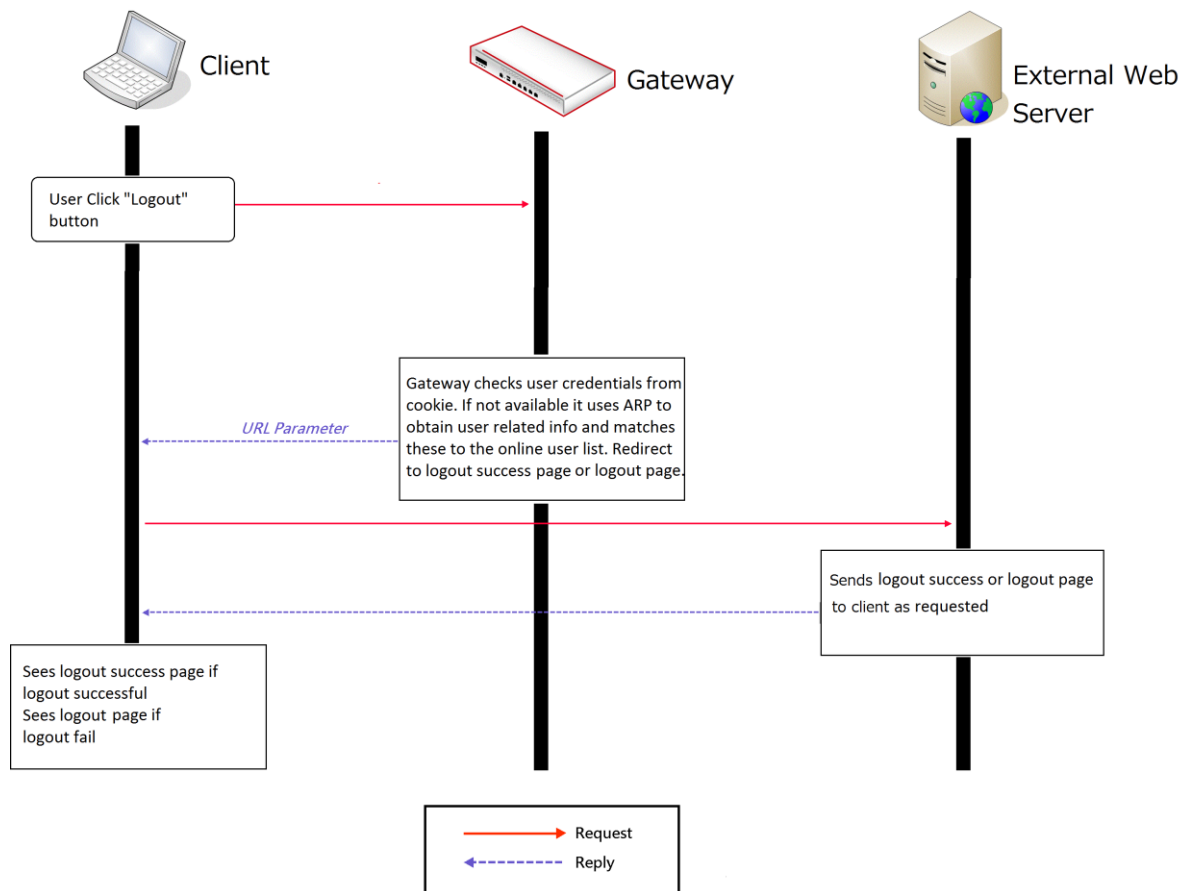
Therefore it is important that your external pages are designed by someone with good knowledge of URL parameter utilization.

The diagram below explains how External Page operates using user login/logout flow as illustration:

Login:



## Logout:



The URL parameters sent by the Gateway to the external login page are as follows:

Field	Value	Description
loginurl	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user logs in.
remainingurl	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user wants to get remaining quota.
vlanid	Integer (1 ~ 4094)	VLAN ID
iface	Integer (0~8)	Service Zone ID, 0 for default service zone
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated WAN IP address
gwmac	MAC format	Gateway activated WAN MAC address

	(separated by ':')	
client_ip	IP format	Client IP address
ipv6_addr	IPv6 format	Client IPv6 address
umac	MAC format (separated by ':')	Client MAC address
session	String	Encrypted session information, includes: client IP address, MAC address, date, and return URL.

You will need to parse the required parameters in your html code. The following HTML code segment is an example of parsing *loginurl* parameter with a self defined javascript function:

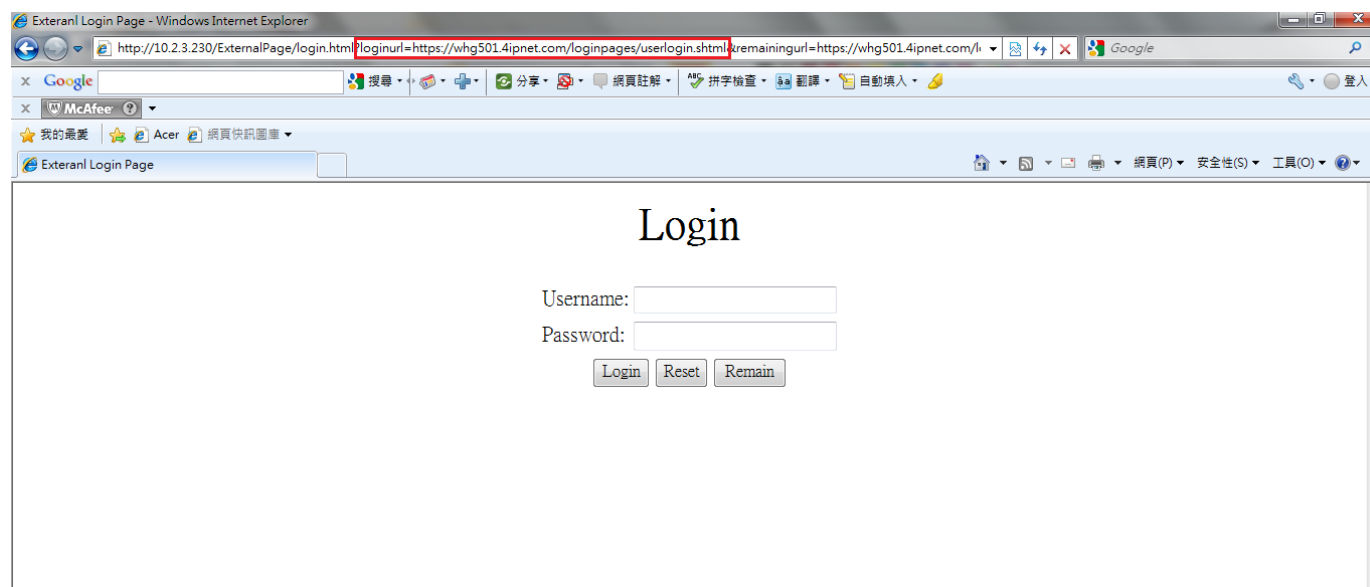
```
<FORM action="" method="post" name="form">
<script language="Javascript">
form.action = getVarFromURL(window.location.href, 'loginurl');
</script>
<INPUT type="text" name="myusername" size="25">
<INPUT type="password" name="mypassword" size="25">
<INPUT name="button_submit" type="submit" value="Enter">
<INPUT name="button_clear" type="button" value="Clear">
</FORM>
```

The following shows the corresponding self-defined javascript function used to parse the *loginurl* parameter:

```
function getVarFromURL(url, name) {
    if(name == "" || url == "") { return ""; }
    name = name.replace(/\[/|\]|"\\\\"").replace(/\]/|\]|"\\\\"");
    var regObj = new RegExp("[\\?&]" + name + "=(^&#[*]*)");
    var result = regObj.exec(url);
    if(result == null) { return ""; }
    else { return decodeURIComponent(result[1]); }
}
```



An external page example that the user will see upon launching a browser is shown, and you can see the URL parameters sent from the system highlighted in red:



## External Page Design Variables

This section displays all the URL parameters that are sent from the Gateway to the various external pages. It is essential to use the correct variable for your self designed user page to function properly.

### 1. External Login Page Variables:

Field	Value	Description
loginurl	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user logs in.
remainingurl	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user wants to get remaining quota.
vlanid	Integer (1 ~ 4094)	VLAN ID
iface	Integer (0~8)	Service Zone ID, 0 for default service zone
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated WAN IP address
client_ip	IP format	Client IP address
ipv6_addr	IPv6 format	Client IPv6 address
umac	MAC format (separated by ':')	Client MAC address
session	String	Encrypted session information, include: client IP address, MAC address, date, and return URL.

## 2. Login Successful Page

### Variables:

Field	Value	Description
uid	String	User ID (postfix is included)
original_uid	String	Original User ID
utype	String (LOCAL, RADIUS, ONDEMAND, POP3, LDAP, SIP, NT Domain)	Authentication server name
umac	MAC format (separated by ':')	Client MAC address
sessionlength	Integer (Sec.)	RADIUS user session length (Only available for RADIUS user)
byteamount	Integer (Bytes)	RADIUS user volume limit (Only available for RADIUS user)
idletimeout	Integer (Sec.)	Idle timeout
acct-interim-interval	Integer (Sec.)	RADIUS accounting interim update interval (Only available for RADIUS user)
logouturl	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user wants to log out.
change_passwd_url	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user wants to change password. (Only available for LOCAL users)
ondemand_creation_url	String (URL encoded)	The URL to be submitted when a user wants to create an On-Demand user. (Only available for LOCAL users)
vlanid	Integer (1~4094)	VLAN ID
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated WAN IP address
client_ip	IP format	Client IP address
ipv6_addr	IPv6 format	Client IPv6 address
sz	Integer	Service Zone ID
group	Integer	Group index
policy	Integer	Policy index
available_plan	billing plan:usage, billing plan: usage,	For local user to create on demand user
max_uplink	Integer (b/s)	Maximum up-link rate
max_downlink	Integer (b/s)	Maximum down-link rate
req_uplink	Integer (b/s)	Minimum up-link rate
req_downlink	Integer (b/s)	Minimum down-link rate
next_page	String	Leads client to URL
CLASS	String	RADIUS CLASS attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-REDIRECTION-URL	String	Leads client to URL
WISPR-SESSION-TERMINATE-TIME	String, format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ssTZD	WISPr Session-Terminate-Time attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-SESSION-TERMINATE-END-OF-DAY	Integer (0/1)	WISPr Session-Terminate-End-Of-Day attribute, 0 or 1 to indicate termination rule. (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-BILLING-CLASS-OF-S	String	WISPr Billing-Class-Of-Service

ERVICE		attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-LOCATION-ID	String	WISPr Location-ID attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-LOCATION-NAME	String	WISPr Location-Name attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
WISPR-BILLING-TIME	String, format: HH:MM	WISPr Billing-Time attribute (Only available for RADIUS user)
session	String	Encrypted session information

### 3. External Error Page

#### Variables:

Field	Value	Description
msg	<p>String, includes:</p> <p>The system is busy. Please try again later.</p> <p>Cannot find session related information. &lt;BR&gt;Please enable the Cookie in the browser setting or open a website to get a Cookie.</p> <p>Invalid IP address. Please check the IP address and try again.</p> <p>Invalid MAC address. Please check the MAC address and try again.</p> <p>Sorry, your account is not usable, because the authentication option is currently disabled.&lt;BR&gt; Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>Sorry, your account is not usable, because the authentication option (associated with the postfix) is not found.&lt;BR&gt;Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>Sorry, you are not allowed to log in, because your account is currently on the Black List.</p> <p>Sorry, you are not allowed to log in, because it is currently not the service hour for your account.</p> <p>You have already logged in.</p> <p>Sorry, there is a system problem checking the information of your account (XXX).&lt;BR&gt;Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>Invalid username or</p>	Error message

	<p>password.&lt;BR&gt;Please check your username and password and try again.</p> <p>Cannot identify the policy for your account.&lt;BR&gt;Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>User of this device (the MAC address) is not allowed to use this account.&lt;BR&gt;Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>Sorry, the external authentication server is currently unreachable. &lt;BR&gt;Please contact your network administrator.</p> <p>Sorry, you are not allowed to create a remote VPN connection.</p> <p>Reply-message form radius server. (radius attribute: Reply-Message)</p>	
vlanid	Integer (1~4094)	VLAN ID
client_ip	IP format	Client IP address
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated IP address
original_uid	String	Original User ID

#### 4. External Logout Successful Page

##### Variables:

Field	Value	Description
uid	String	User ID (postfix is included)
original_uid	String	Original User ID
vlanid	Integer (1~4094)	VLAN ID
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated IP address
used_time	Integer	User's Used time

#### 5. External On-Demand login successful page

##### Variables:

Field	Value	Description
uid	String	User ID (postfix is included)
original_uid	String	Original User ID
utype	String (LOCAL, RADIUS, ONDEMAND, POP3, LDAP, SIP, NT Domain)	Authentication server name
umac	MAC format (separated by ':')	Client MAC address
sessionlength	Integer (Sec.)	On-Demand user's quota of time type
byteamount	Integer (byte)	On-Demand user's quota of volume type
chargetype	String	User Accounting Type
idletimeout	Integer (Sec.)	Idle timeout
logouturl	String (URL encoded)	Logout URL
redeemurl	String (URL encoded)	Redeem URL
Vlanid	Integer (1~4094)	VLAN ID

gwip	IP format	Gateway activated WAN IP address
client_ip	IP format	Client IP address
sz	Integer	Service Zone ID
group	Integer	Group index
policy	Integer	Policy index
next_page	String	Leads client to URL
max_uplink	Integer (b/s)	Maximum up-link rate
max_downlink	Integer (b/s)	Maximum down-link rate
req_uplink	Integer (b/s)	Minimum up-link rate
req_downlink	Integer (b/s)	Minimum down-link rate
session	String	Encrypted session information

## 6. External Logout Fail Page

### Variables:

Field	Value	Description
uid	String	User ID
gwip	IP format	Gateway activated WAN IP address
vlanid	Integer (1~4094)	VLAN ID

## External Page Design Variables

This page collects and shows all the variables that are can be accepted by the Controller from the external pages. Some are mandatory. The destination path is also specified for designer reference.

### 1. User Login

#### Path:

[\(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name\) /loginpages/userlogin.shtml](#)

#### Input:

Field	Required	Value	Description
myusername  alternative variables: (username, user, account)	Required	String	User ID
mypassword  alternative variables (passwd, password, pass)	Required	String	User password
session	Optional	String	Encoded string which contains some information of this session, default is taken from cookie.

**Output:**

No output, return user to login successful page.

**2. User Logout**
**Path:**

(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name) /loginpages/logoff.shtml

**Input:**

Field	Required	Value	Description
Uid	Optional	String	User ID, default is taken from cookie
session	Optional	String	Encoded string which contains some information of this session, default is taken from cookie

**Output:**

No output, return user to logout successful page.

**3. Remaining quota (Credit balance)**
**Path:**

(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name) /loginpages/reminder.shtml

**Input:**

Field	Required	Value	Description
myusername  alternative variables: (username, user, account)	Required	String	User name
mypassword  alternative variables (passwd, password, pass)	Required	String	Password
ret_url	Optional	String (URL encoded)	Returned URL, default is pop_reminder.shtml
command	Optional	String	getValue: If command is set to "getValue", the return URL would be ignored, and the page would only print out the available quota.

**Output:**

If command is set to "getValue", the output is simply a "value".(secs. or bytes according to user type)

If command is not set and there is no ret\_url presented, client would be led to pop\_reminder.shtml page, which shows the remaining quota in our UI style. If ret\_url is presented, client would be returned to ret\_url, and gateway would add these four

variables in URL.

Field	Value	Description
msg	String, including:  Sorry, this feature is available for On-Demand user only.  Sorry, this username: XXX is not found.  Sorry, this username: XXX is out of quota.  Sorry, this username: XXX is expired.  Sorry, this username: XXX is redeemed.	Error messages
Value	Integer (Sec. Or Byte)  or error no.  -1: Account not found. -2: Out of quota. -3: Expired. -4: Redeemed.	Remaining quota, if user is time type, the value is remaining seconds, if user is volume type, the value remaining bytes.
Uname	String	User name
Type	String, includes:  TIME: Time type DATA: Volume type CUTOFF: Cut-off type	On-Demand user billing type

## 4. Change Password

### Path:

[\(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name\)/loginpages/user\\_change\\_password.shtml](#)

### Input:

Field	Required	Value	Description
Save	Required	1 (has to be 1)	
Opw	Required	String	Old password
Npw	Required	String	New password
Npwc	Required	String	Confirmed new password
ret_url	Required	String (URL encoded)	Return URL

### Output:

Client would return to ret\_url and gateway would add result in ret\_url which indicates the result of changing password.

Field	Value	Description
Result	String, including:	Result and error messages



	Change password successfully	
	User password is incorrect	
	Invalid password format	

## 5. Redeem (On-Demand user)

### Path:

(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name) /loginpages/redeemuserlogin.shtml

### Input:

Field	Required	Value	Description
Uid	Optional	String	Current user ID (If not presented, user name stored in cookie is the default value)
upassword	Optional	String	Current user password (If not presented, password stored in cookie is the default value)
myusername alternative variables: (username, user, account)	Required	String	Redeem user ID
mypassword alternative variables (passwd, password, pass)	Required	String	Redeem user password
ret_url	Optional	String (URL encoded)	Return URL, login successful page is the default value

### Output:

If no ret\_url is presented, client would be led to the login successful page, and in addition, a JavaScript window would pop-up and show the result. If ret\_url is presented, client would be returned to ret\_url and gateway would add an additional variable rmsg to indicate redeem procedure result.

Field	Value	Description
rmsg	String, including:  Redeem process completed.  Original user name can not be found from the database.  Redeem user name can not be found from the database.  Original user password is incorrect.	Result and error messages

	<p>Redeem user password is incorrect.</p> <p>Original user type and on demand user type do not match.</p> <p>Original user has not logged in.</p> <p>Redeem user logged in already.</p> <p>Had been redeemed before.</p> <p>User has run out of quota.</p> <p>Maximum allowable time has exceeded.</p> <p>Maximum allowable memory space has exceeded.</p> <p>Wrong postfix please check it.</p> <p>This account is expired.</p>	
--	--	--

## 6. On-Demand Account Creation

### Path:

[\(LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name\) /loginpages/UserAuthentication/OnDemandRecept.shtml]((LAN IP address or Internal Domain Name) /loginpages/UserAuthentication/OnDemandRecept.shtml)

### Input:

Field	Required	Value	Description
buttonNo	Required	Integer (1~10)	Billing Plan No.
random	Optional	Integer	A random number, this number is to prevent quick-click issue in IE 6.0.
ret_url	Optional	String (URL encoded)	Return URL.

### Output:

If no ret\_url is presented, the client would be led to a ticket page in our UI style. If ret\_url is presented, client would return to ret\_url and receive the result containing created On-Demand account information.

Field	Value	Description
Result	<p>String, the format is: (separated by ',')</p> <p>username, password, expiretime, usage, price, duration, serial number</p>	If ret_url is presented, the client would return to ret_url page and carry the result valuable. expiretime is account expiration time which is a Linux time stamp, and duration is account duration time and the unit is 'day', serial number is account s/n.



## ***Appendix D. Useful Management & Evaluation Tools***

### **Useful Management Tools**

Here are the top six open source IT management products that do a solid job of replacing the big suites from HP, IBM, CA and BMC. Each offer low-cost professional services and free software downloads. They differ primarily in the features they offer and in the operating systems they support.

#### **QUEST BIG BROTHER**

This Web-based systems and network monitor supports most Windows, Unix and Linux OSes, plus a repository of user-contributed scripts allow you to easily customize Big Brother to your network. Its GUI features a universally understood color code, where red means bad and green means good.

#### **GROUNDWORK MONITOR PROFESSIONAL**

Launched in 2004, it's one of the first enterprise-scale open source network management offerings. It integrates more than 100 best-of-breed open source projects, including Nagios, Apache and NMap, onto one framework with additional features, such as a Web-based interface. Monitor Professional provides centralized management and monitoring of your enterprise network, including Linux, Unix and Windows servers, apps, databases and network boxes.

#### **HYPERIC HQ ENTERPRISE**

Aimed at the datacenter, Hyperic's software is built to manage and monitor all layers of Web infrastructures, including hardware, middleware, virtualization and Web and open applications. It also offers trending and analysis. It supports Apache, JBoss, Linux and more.

#### **OPENNMS**

This Java-based network management tool focuses on service polling, data collection and event and notification management. It currently supports a variety of open operating systems, including Linux, Mandrake and Solaris, as well as Mac OS X; Windows support is planned for OpenNMS 2.0.

#### **OPENQRM**

Also targeting datacenter management, OpenQRM can manage thousands of Linux and Windows servers as well as track your datacenter's usage and utilization. It also does automatic, policy-based provisioning. It, too, integrates Nagios for monitoring.

#### **ZENOSS CORE**

Written mostly in Python, this management platform offers events management and availability and performance monitoring of servers, network devices, OSes and applications. Zenoss runs on Linux, FreeBSD and Mac OS X; it will run on Windows with a VMplayer and the Zenoss Virtual Appliance.

## Evaluation Tools

### **Wireshark (for packet capturing and debug analysis)**

Wireshark is the world's foremost network protocol analyzer. It lets you capture and interactively browse the traffic running on a computer network. It is the de facto (and often de jure) standard across many industries and educational institutions.

Wireshark development thrives thanks to the contributions of networking experts across the globe. It is the continuation of a project that started in 1998.

<http://www.wireshark.org/>

### **inSSIDer (for wireless scanning & frequency analyzer)**

inSSIDer is a useful tool for scanning the air for nearby AP signals and in depth frequency, channel analysis of deployment site.

You can:

- Inspect your Wi-Fi and surrounding networks
- Scan and filter hundreds of nearby access points
- Troubleshoot competing access points and clogged Wi-Fi channels
- Highlight access points for areas with high Wi-Fi concentration
- Track the strength of received signals in dBm over time
- Sort results by MAC Address, SSID, Channel, RSSI, Time Last Seen
- Export Wi-Fi and GPS data to a KML file in Google Earth

<http://www.metageek.net/products/inssider/>

## Appendix E. On-Demand Account Types

There are four main types of On-Demand account type:

- **Usage-time** (Buy quota: usable time)
- **Volume** (Buy quota: usable traffic volume)

*Pre-paid concept, only deducts quota while using. Account expires when quota is depleted or account expiration time reached.*

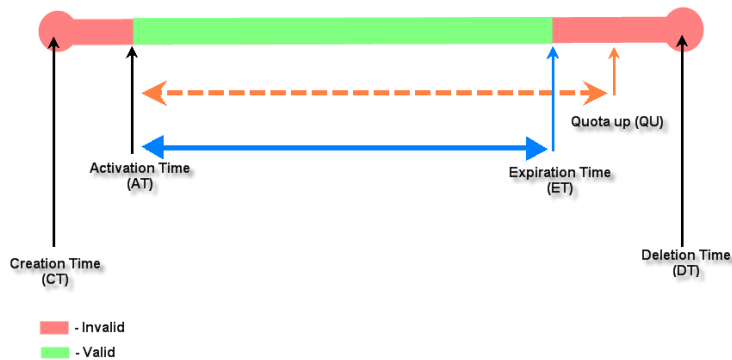
- **Hotel Cut-off** (Buy the time interval for a valid account)
- **Duration-time** (Buy the time interval for a valid account)

*Define the time interval for usage. Count down begins when account activated and expires when the expiration time/date reached.*

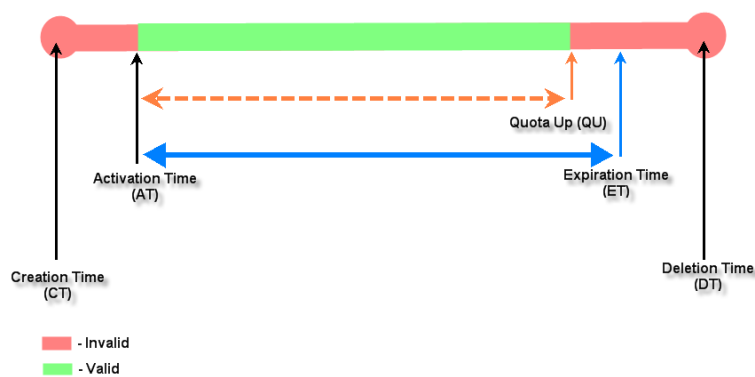
### Usage-time

- Users can access internet as long as account valid with remaining quota and need to activate the purchased account within a given time period by logging in.
- Usage-time accounts have the option of selecting:
  - **With Expiration Time**
    - Counting down begins immediately after first login. Account expires when *Valid Period* is used up or quota is depleted.
  - **No Expiration Time**
    - Account expires only when quota is used up.

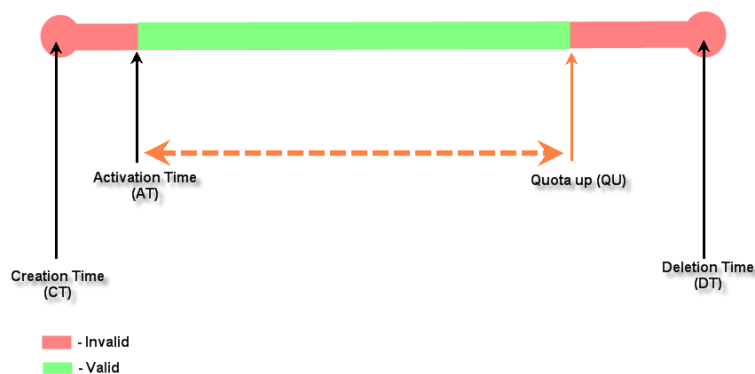
Usage-time account lifespan



Usage-time account lifespan



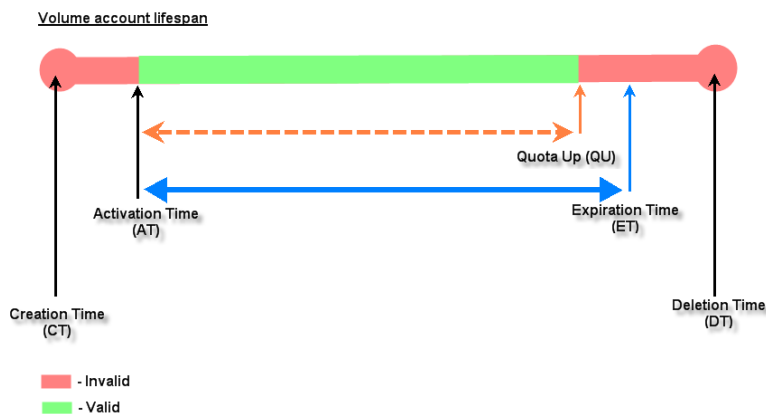
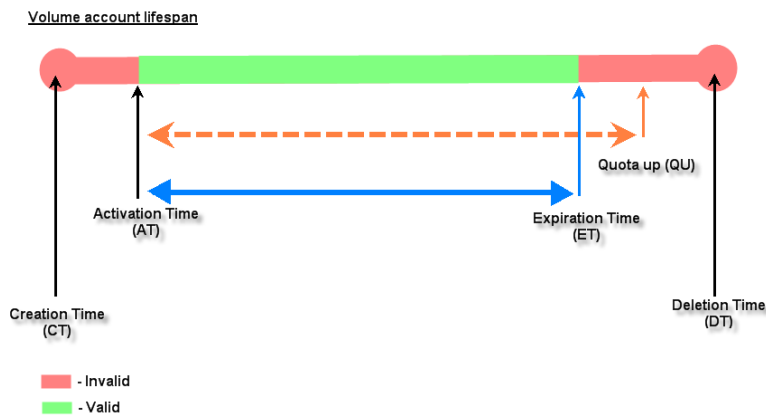
Usage-time account lifespan



## Volume

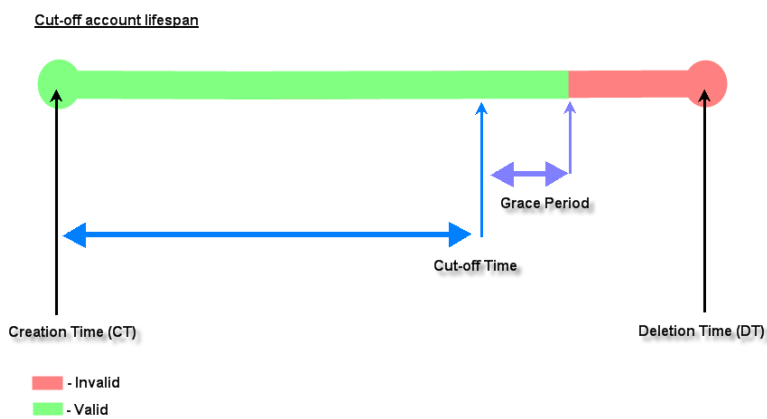
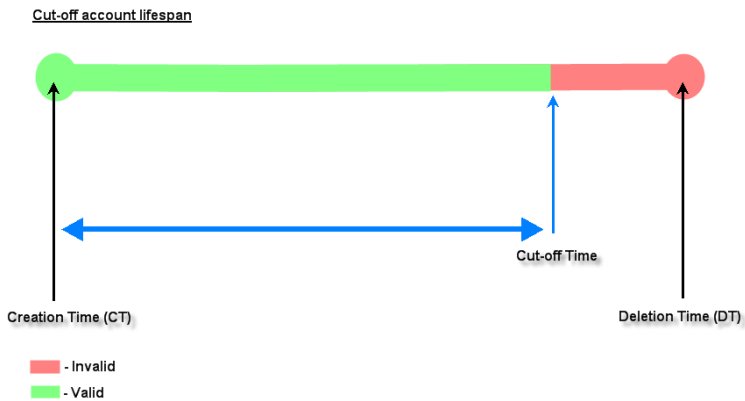
- Users can access internet as long as account is valid with remaining quota and need to activate the purchased account within a given time period by logging in.
- Account expires when *Valid Period* is used up or quota is depleted.





## Hotel Cut-off Time

- Operator can set the clock time for when the account will expire.
- Account automatically activates when it is created.
- Unit is the number of days to execute "Cut-off". For example: Unit = 2 days, Cut-off Time = 10:00 then account will expire at 10:00AM two days after creation.
- Account usability disabled once *Cut-off-time* has been reached unless it has been granted a *Grace Period*.
- Primarily used in hotel venues to provide internet service according to guests' stay time.



## Duration Time

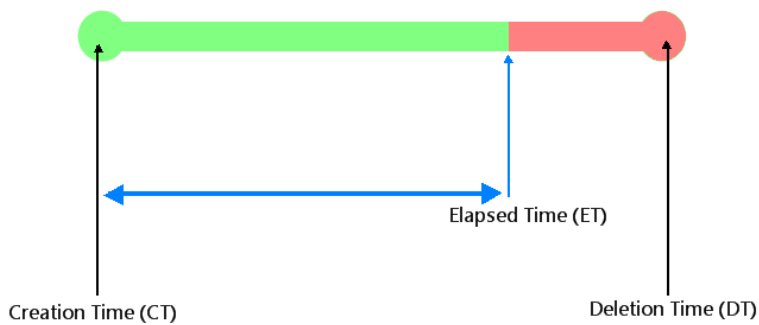
- Users can access internet while account is within valid time interval. Count down begins once account activates and expires when *Expiration Time* is reached.
- Duration-time accounts can be further classified into:
  - **Elapsed Time**
    - Relative to *Activation Time* which is the account creation time. Account expires when the *Expiration Time* has been reached.
  - **Begin-End Time**
    - Define explicitly the *Begin Time* and *End Time* of the account.

Account expires when the *End Time* has been reached.

### □ Cut-off Time

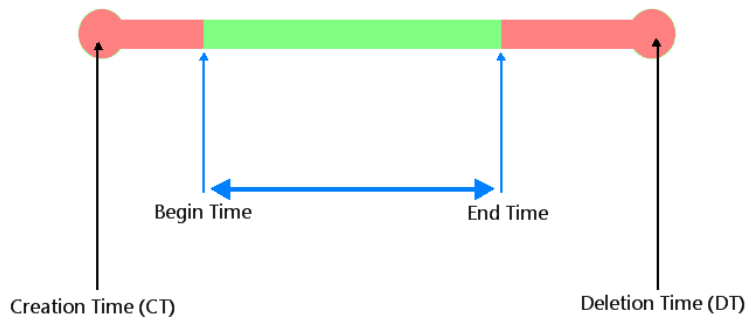
- Define explicitly the clock time to "Cut-off" within the day of creation.

Duration-time Elapsed account lifespan



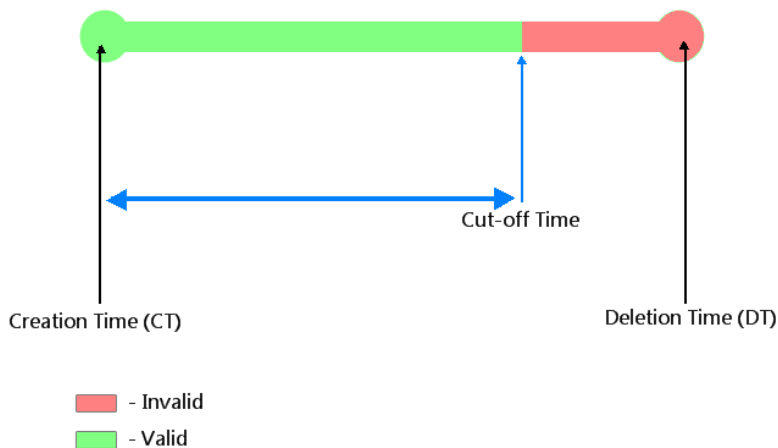
■ - Invalid  
■ - Valid

Duration-time Begin-End Account lifespan



■ - Invalid  
■ - Valid

## Duration-time Cut-off account lifespan



## NOTE

- Since there are only 10 billing plans, if you wish to create accounts of the same type but with various quotas, this may be achieved via the Unit field.

### On-Demand Account Creation

Plan	Account Type	Quota	Price	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99	1	Create Single Create Batch
2	Hotel Cut-off-time	Valid until 5:01 the following day	1	1	Create Single Create Batch



### Creating an On-Demand Account

Plan : Account Type      1 : Usage-time

Quota      2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration

Account Creation      ☒ System created ☐ Manual created

Valid Period      After activation, the account will be expired in 7 day(s)

Total Price      1.99

Unit      1      Units per ticket

Group      Group 1

Reference       Add a reference related to this account (for example, the customer's name)

External ID       Enter an external ID such as a Library ID No.

Please confirm the information and press Create button to create an account.

Network operator is able to multiply the quota by an integer ranging from 1 to 9 in the **Unit** field. Please note that only Usage-time, Volume, and Duration-Elapsed time account types support multiple unit quota generation for a single account.



SN:000002

**Welcome!**

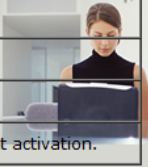
<b>Username</b>	<b>wbz7@ondemand</b>
<b>Password</b>	etk2m8r7
<b>Plan : Account Type</b>	1 : Volume
<b>Quota</b>	1111 Mbyte(s) of traffic volume quota
<b>Unit</b>	1 Units
<b>Total Price</b>	1111
<b>Reference</b>	
<b>External ID</b>	

ESSID : SSID0

Shared Wireless Key: None (Open System)

You have to login before 2012/02/03 12:24

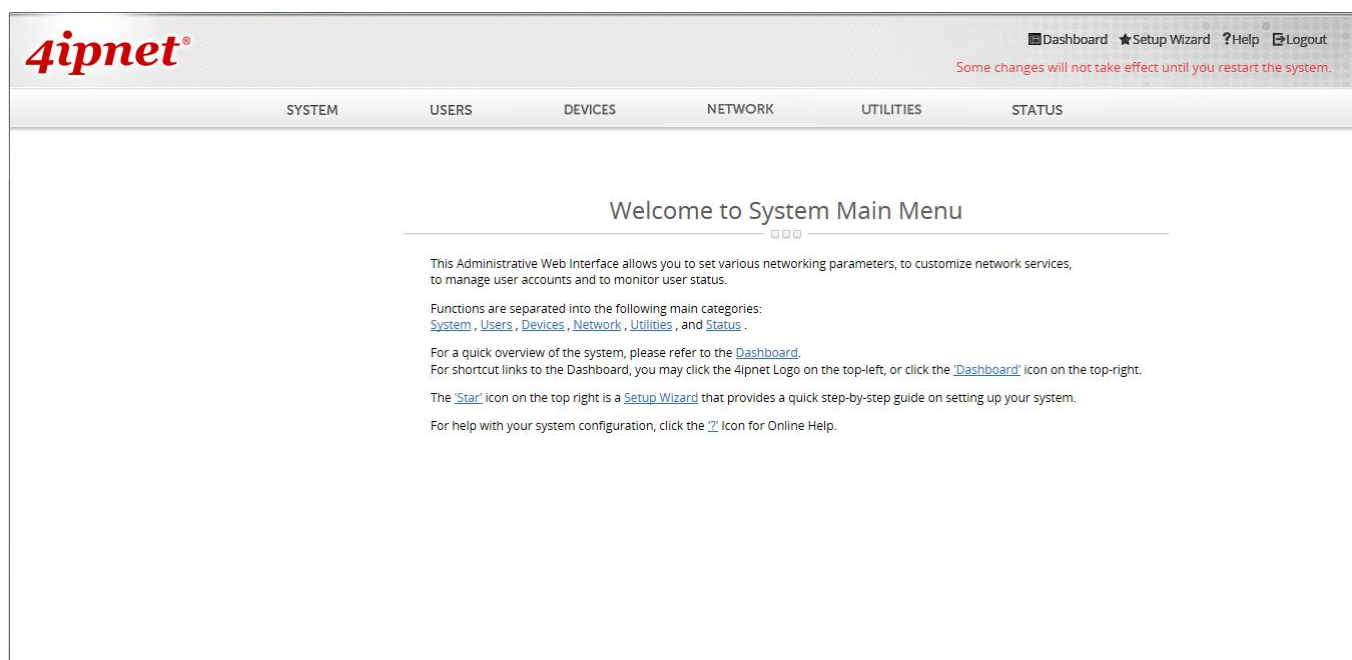
The account will be expired in 1 day(s) after account activation.



## Appendix F. UI Reference Index

### I. Main

Main Menu is the link that leads to all the configuration pages in the Web Management Interface. A screenshot of the main menu is captured below, the iconic button on the top row will redirect to configuration pages relating to its category.



### II. Setup Wizard

This wizard is to provide express setup procedures. Follow the instructions given at each step to change the system admin password; select time zone; configure WAN1 interface, and create local user accounts. Upon completing the setup procedures, the system has to be restarted to have the setting take effect. The system is ready for operation after restart with minimal configuration.

1 FIRST STEP  
Change Password

2 SECOND STEP  
Configure WAN1

3 THIRD STEP  
Create A Local User

4 YOU'RE DONE  
Restart the System

It is recommended to change administrator's password and select an appropriate time zone for the system.

### General

New Password:

Verify Password:

Time Zone: (GMT+08:00)Taipei

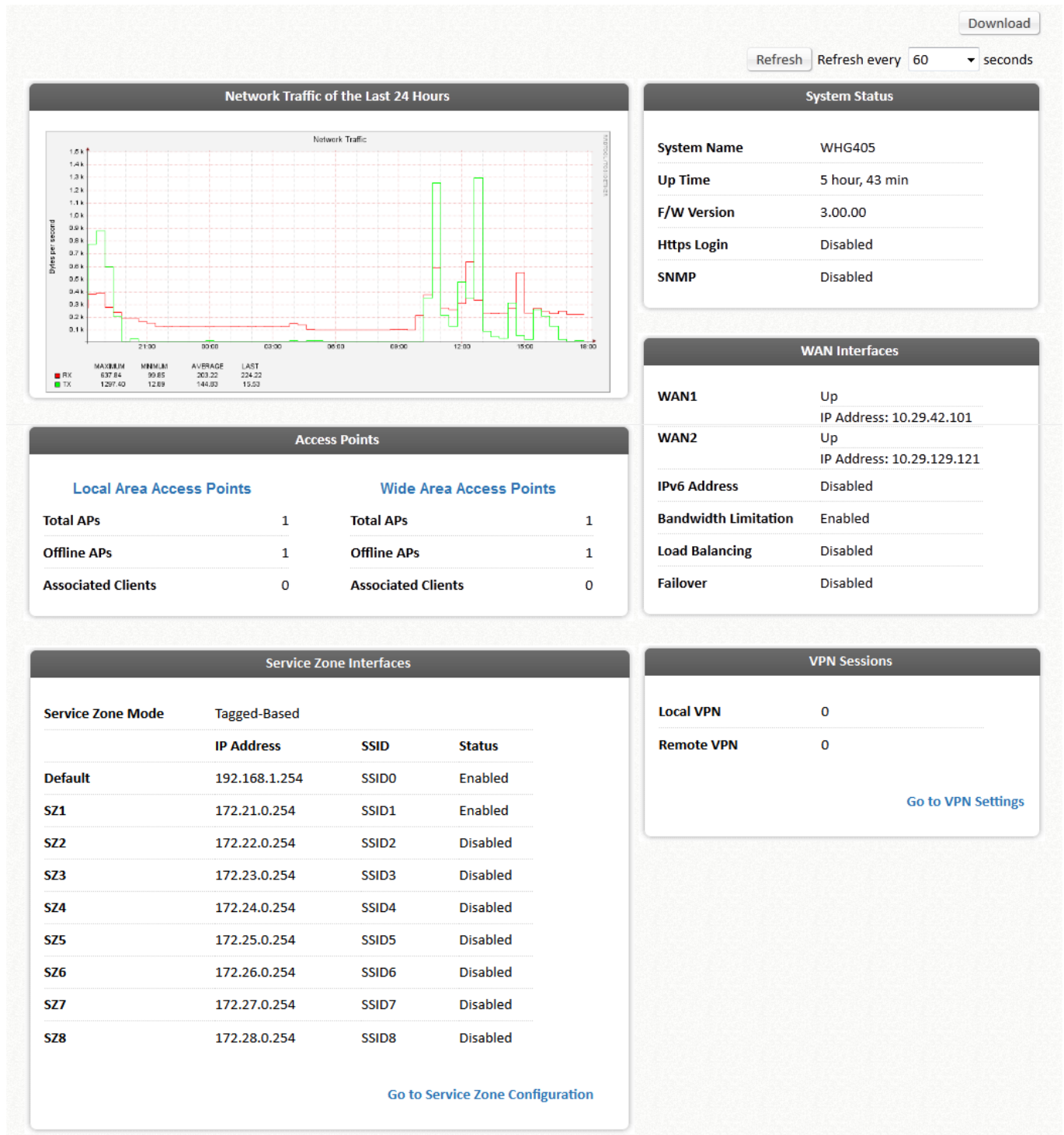
Exit

Next

### III. Dashboard

This page displays important system related information that the administrator might need to be aware of at a glance, which includes General System settings, Network Interface and Online Users etc. A drop-down menu is available for selecting the information refresh rate for this page.





## A. System

**System:** This section relates to system configuration. It includes, General Information, WAN Configurations, LAN Ports, Service Zones, and etc.

## 1) General

### General Settings

System Name	<input type="text" value="WHG425"/>
Contact Information	<input type="text"/>
	When there is a warning of "Please contact your network administrator"
HTTPS Certificate	<input type="text" value="Default CERT"/>
User HTTPS Login	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
	<input type="checkbox"/> Secure
Internal Domain Name	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Use the name on SSL certificate <input type="text" value="gateway.example.com"/>
Portal URL Exceptions (User Agent)	<input type="text" value="IEMobile/7.0,XBLWP7"/> (e.g. IEMobile/7.0,XBLWP7, separate by comma)
User Log Access	<input type="text" value="Enter IP Address Here"/>
Pre-Login Page	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
UAM Filter	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
Management IP Address	<input type="button" value="Configure"/>
SNMP	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
Suspend Warning Message	<input type="text" value="Sorry! The service is suspended."/> *

### System Time

Current Time	2015/06/24 17:36:05
Time Zone	<input type="text" value="(GMT+08:00)Taipei"/>
Time Update	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NTP <input type="radio"/> Manually set up
	NTP Server 1: <input type="text" value="time.nist.gov"/>
	NTP Server 2: <input type="text" value="ntp1.fau.de"/>
	NTP Server 3: <input type="text" value="clock.cuhk.edu.hk"/>
	NTP Server 4: <input type="text" value="ntp1.pads.ufrj.br"/>
	NTP Server 5: <input type="text" value="ntp1.cs.mu.OZ.AU"/>
	<input type="checkbox"/> Use this controller as an NTP server

- **System Name:** This is a mnemonic name you can give to the controller. Once configured, it will show on the web browser's frame.
- **Contact Information:** This is the email, cell phone, or other means of contact which will be displayed on the web browser of the client in the event of internet disconnection.
- **HTTPS Certificate:** Your own network certificate may be uploaded and selected here as site safety verification.
- **User HTTPS Login:** Presents the option to allow end users authenticated with HTTPS for

- encrypted content transfer. The 'Secure' option supports only "High" encryption cipher suites.
- **Internal Domain Name:** A self designated domain name. Ideal for accessing the Controller instead of remembering the IP address of the LAN interfaces. Certificate's name may also be used.
- **Portal URL Exceptions (User Agent):** The desired landing page may be directed after users' initial login except specific opened browsers listed here.
- **User Log Access IP Address:** The reserved IP address of the administrator may be entered here. Once configured, user logs can only be accessed via the entered IP.
- **Pre-Login Page:** A HTML customizable pre-portal page before landing the Login Page.
- **UAM Filter:** The Universal Access Method Filter drops non-browser http requests from user agents before authentication to prevent system overloading from excessive traffic.
- **Management IP Address List:** This configuration button allows the network administrator to enter a selection of reserved IP addresses/ range that are authorized to see the Web Management Interface. The remote console interface is disabled by default. You may enable remote access from this page.
- **SNMP:** Presents an option to enable or disabled system info retrieval via SNMP protocol. Administrators can choose to assign specific port to transmit SNMP trap messages. Detailed thresholds such as CPU Usage, Memory Usage, DHCP Scope, and Heart Beat Period may be configured.
- **Suspend Warning Message:** A field for administrator to enter the message to users when a Service Zone's service is temporarily suspended
- **Time:** This section presents manual system time configuration option or automatic time synchronization by specifying external NTP servers.

## 2) WAN

### WAN1 Configuration

Physical Mode	Auto
Interface Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Static (Use the following IP settings)
IP Address:	10.29.42.101
Subnet Mask:	255.255.0.0
Default Gateway:	10.29.0.1
Preferred DNS Server:	168.95.1.1
Alternate DNS Server:	
	<input type="radio"/> Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically)
	<input type="radio"/> PPPoE
	<input type="radio"/> PPTP

- **Physical Mode:** Select the mode (Auto/1000Mbps Full/100Mbps Full/100Mbps Half) based on your WAN connection
- **Static:** This option enables the administrator to configure a static IP address on the WAN interface. Applicable if your subscribed internet package comes with a static IP address.
- **Dynamic:** This option enables the WAN interface to be assigned with an IP address automatically by upstream DHCP server.
- **PPPoE:** This is the option of connecting WAN interface to your ISP network via PPP protocol, please select this option if your subscribed network service uses PPP.
- **PPTP:** This is the option of connecting WAN interface to your ISP network via PPP tunneling protocol, please select this option if your subscribed network service uses PPP tunneling.
- **WAN1 Interface Type:** This section enables the selection of actual Port to be deployed as WAN1 servicing port, either copper, SFP, both, or bonded. (Available on WHG707/WHG801)

## WAN2 Configuration

**Physical Mode** 100Mb/s Half ▾

**Interface Type**

☐ None

☐ Static (Use the following IP settings)

☒ Dynamic (IP settings assigned automatically) Renew

☒ Obtain DNS server address automatically.

Preferred DNS Server: 168.95.1.1

Alternate DNS Server:

☐ PPPoE

- **Physical Mode:** Select the mode (Auto/1000Mbps Full/100Mbps Full/100Mbps Half) based on your WAN connection
- **None:** Disable the WAN2 interface from providing service.
- **Static:** This option enables the administrator to configure a static IP address on the WAN interface. Applicable if your subscribed internet package comes with a static IP address.
- **Dynamic:** This option enables the WAN interface to be assigned with an IP address automatically by upstream DHCP server.
- **PPPoE:** This is the option of connecting WAN interface to your ISP network via PPP protocol, please select this option if your subscribed network service uses PPP.
- **WAN2 Interface Type:** This section enables the selection of actual Port to be deployed as WAN2 servicing port, either copper, SFP, both, or bonded. (Available on WHG707/WHG801)

## WAN Traffic Settings

**Bandwidth Limitation** ☒ Enable Bandwidth limitation on WAN

Max Uplink Bandwidth 2000000 Kbps

Max Downlink Bandwidth 2000000 Kbps

**Function of WAN2**

☒ Disable(None)

☐ Load Balancing  
The "Load Balancing" function when Enabled also acts as the "Failover" function when one of the WAN interfaces is down.

☐ Wan Failover

**Address for Detecting Internet Connection**

☐ Warning of Internet Disconnection

When the addresses for detecting internet connection are unreachable, this message will be shown on the browser.

Sorry! The service is temporarily unavailable.

- **Available Bandwidth on WAN Interface:** This section of the configuration page allows the



- administrator to specify uplink and downlink limitations to be enforced on the servicing WAN interface.
- **Function of WAN2:** The WAN2 connection can be activated for Load Balancing or WAN Failover.
- **Address for Detecting Internet Connection:** This section of the configuration page enables the administrator to specify external targets to check for uplink status. WAN Failover or WAN Load Balancing may be selected to be enabled along with a customizable disconnection message to the end user.

### 3) IPv6

#### IPv6 Setting

IPv6	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Interface	<input checked="" type="radio"/> WAN1 <input type="radio"/> WAN2
Type	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Static (Use the following IPv6 settings) <div> <div>IPv6 Address:</div> <div>Prefix Length:</div> <div>Default Gateway:</div> <div>Preferred DNS Server:</div> <div>Alternate DNS Server:</div> </div> <div> <input type="radio"/> Use 6to4 transition           <input type="radio"/> Use go6 transition         </div>

- **Status:** Enable or Disable IPv6 support on the selected WAN interface.
- **Interface:** Select the external interface of the device that will be configured with an IPv6 address.
- **Static:** Manually enter all the related IPv6 information. Red asterisk are mandatory fields. Ideal if your internet package comes with static IPv6 addresses issues by your ISP.
- **6to4:** 6to4 is an Internet transition mechanism for migrating from IPv4 to IPv6, a system that allows IPv6 packets to be transmitted over an IPv4 network (generally the IPv4 internet) without the need to configure explicit tunnels. 6to4 option can only be chosen when the selected WAN interface was set with a static IPv4 address.
- **go6:** go6 is a platform that connects the world to the new Internet with IPv6 products, community and services. You may choose this connection option if you have a registered account.

### 4) LAN Ports

A "Service Zone" in the system, by default, contains wired and wireless coverage areas in the organization. When "Port-Based" mode is enabled, each physical LAN port can be set individually to map to a specific Service Zone for later use. By contrast, under "Tag-Based" mode, Service Zones will be distinguished by VLAN tagging, instead of physical LAN ports.

### LAN Ports

**LAN Port Mode**

☒ Port-Based ☐ Tag-Based

When LAN Ports are set to Port-Based Mode, Service Zones will be differentiated by the respective LAN ports. When LAN Ports are set to Tag-Based Mode, VLANs are used to separate traffic to different Service Zones. This is needed for Port Location Mapping and Access Point Management.

**Port - Service Zone Mapping**

Default	Default	SZ1	SZ1
LAN1	LAN2	LAN3	LAN4

Trusted Port

## 5) High Availability

(available on WHG321, WHG325, WHG405, WHG425, WHG515, WHG525, WHG707, WHG711, WHG801)

### Current Status

Dedicated Port	LAN1
Status	No Peer
Link to Peer's UI	HA Configuration <input type="button" value="Goto"/>
Version	10000

### Configuration

Status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enabled <input type="radio"/> Disabled
Number of Active(s)	<input type="text" value="1"/>
Mode	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Active <input type="radio"/> Standby
HA Port IP Address	<input type="text" value="172.31.0.1"/> *
HA Port Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/> *
Peer IP Address	<input type="text"/> *
Shared Key	<input type="text"/> *
Action	<input type="button" value="Sync &amp; Swap"/>

- **Status:** This feature can be turn on or off here.
- **Number of Active(s):** Selecting up to 3 Actives for N+1 HA
- **Mode:** The role of this particular controller must be determined here manually.
- **HA Port IP Address:** The IP address configured for the dedicated HA port. Should make sure that all controller's HA port IP are under the same subnet.
- **HA Port Subnet Mask:** The subnet mask for HA communication.
- **Peer IP Address:** Fill in the IP address of the peer Controller's HA port.
- **Shared Key:** Enter a secret string on both of the controller. The Shared Key must be the same for a successful HA connection.

- **Action:** This function may be triggered on the primary controller, switching service to the secondary controller manually. (available on 1+1 HA only)
- **Dedicated Port:** Currently LAN1 for all Controller models.
- **Status:** Reflects the current status of the HA link.
- **Version:** Shows the HA feature revision.

## 6) Service Zones

The table will list the Service Zones and related settings.






**DHCP Server:** The system supports three types of DHCP modes; **Disable Built-in DHCP Server**, **Enable Built-in DHCP server**, and **Enable DHCP relay**. Select **Disable Built-in DHCP Server** to disable the built-in DHCP server when clients are assigned static IP addresses. Select **Enable Built-in DHCP Server** to enable the built-in DHCP server. When the built-in DHCP server is chosen, the system will act as a DHCP server and assign IP addresses to its clients. Select **Enable DHCP Relay** when a service zone is connected to an external DHCP server. When Enable DHCP Relay is chosen, the IP addresses of clients will be assigned by an external DHCP server. The system will only relay DHCP information from the external DHCP server to downstream clients of this service zone.

**Assigned IP Address for AP Management:** Under port-based service zone, each service zone can designate an IP segment for IP address assignment to the managed AP when the newly discovered AP is added into the service zone. Under tag-based service zone, only default service zone will designate an IP segment for IP address assignment to the managed AP when the newly discovered AP is added into the selected service zones.

**SIP Interface Configuration:** The system provides **SIP** proxy that helps SIP clients (devices or soft clients) pass through NAT. After enabling SIP proxy server, all SIP traffic can pass through NAT with a selective but fixed WAN interface.

**Authentication Settings:** The system supports several authentication databases that are **Local**, **POP3**, **RADIUS**, **LDAP**, and **NT Domain** and provides up to four authentication options and one **On-Demand User** authentication option and one **SIP** authentication option.

### Service Zone Settings

Status	Service Zone Name	IP Address	IPv6 Address	SSID	VLAN Tag	Auth Option	Network Alias	DHCP Pool
	Default	192.168.1.254	N/A	SSID0	N/A		N/A	192.168.1.1 ~ 192.168.1.100
	SZ1	172.21.0.254	N/A	SSID1	1		N/A	172.21.0.1 ~ 172.21.0.100
	SZ2	172.22.0.254	N/A	SSID2	2		N/A	172.22.0.1 ~ 172.22.0.100
	SZ3	172.23.0.254	N/A	SSID3	3		N/A	172.23.0.1 ~ 172.23.0.100
	SZ4	172.24.0.254	N/A	SSID4	4		N/A	172.24.0.1 ~ 172.24.0.100



### Basic Settings

**Service Zone Status** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**Service Zone Name**

**Network Interface** VLAN Tag  \* (Range: 1 ~ 4094)

Tag-based Isolation ☒ Inter-VLAN Isolation ☐ Clients Isolation ☐ None

Note: When set to "None", the port on a switch connecting to the gateway's LAN port may be shut down if "Loop Protection" is enabled on the switch and there are 2 VLANs belonging to this Service Zone.

Operation Mode ☐ NAT ☒ Router

IP Address  \* Subnet Mask  \*

Network Alias List

This list defines other IP Addresses (range) that are routable in this Service Zone.

**DHCP** Enabled

#### Router Mode

### Basic Settings

**Service Zone Status** ☐ Enabled ☒ Disabled

**Service Zone Name**

**Network Interface** VLAN Tag  \* (Range: 1 ~ 4094)

Tag-based Isolation ☒ Inter-VLAN Isolation ☐ Clients Isolation ☐ None

Note: When set to "None", the port on a switch connecting to the gateway's LAN port may be shut down if "Loop Protection" is enabled on the switch and there are 2 VLANs belonging to this Service Zone.

Operation Mode ☒ NAT ☐ Router

IP Address  \* Subnet Mask  \*

Network Alias List

This list defines other IP Addresses (range) that are routable in this Service Zone.

**DHCP** Enabled

#### NAT Mode

- **Service Zone Status:** Each service zone can be enabled or disabled except for the default service zone.
- **Service Zone Name:** The name of service zone could be input here.
- **Network Interface:**
  - **VLAN Tag (Tag Base Only):** The VLAN tag number that is mapped to the Service Zone.
  - **Tag-Based LAN Port Isolation:** Administrators can choose different isolation options in each Service Zone when in Tag-based mode. In Port-based mode, administrators have 3 options: Disabled, Authentication Required, and Enable.

**Inter LAN Port Isolation (Available on WHG707/801, Port Based):** Select **Enable** or **Disable**. When the option is "Enabled", clients under different LAN ports cannot ping each other. When the option is "Disabled", clients under different LAN ports can ping each other.

**Trusted Ports (Port Based):** Clients under this port will not require authentication regardless of the corresponding Service Zone settings.

**Inter-VLAN Isolation (Tag Based):** 2 clients within the same VLAN will not see each other when coming in from different ports. Note that Isolation is done when traffic passes through the gateway. When a switch or AP is being deployed, Station Isolation has to be enabled on the AP/switch.

**Clients Isolation (Tag Based):** When this option is selected, unicast transmission is prevented between any clients in the same Layer 2 subnet.

- **Operation Mode:** Contain **NAT** mode and **Router** mode. When NAT mode is chosen, service zone runs in NAT mode. When Router mode is chosen this service zone runs in Router mode.
- **IP Address:** The IP Address of this service zone.
- **Subnet Mask:** The subnet Mask of this service zone.
- **IPv6 Settings:** The IPv6 Address and configuration of this service zone (When IPv6 enabled).
- **Network Alias List:** Administrator may optionally set many alias network segments for a service zone. This feature can allow a single service zone to be seen as many service zones, also hide the IP address of a Service Zone's network interface and to some degree, provide protection from possible attacks from LAN clients.
  - ◆ Click the **Configure** button to enter the Network Alias List page.

#### Network Alias List - SZ1

Enable	No.	IP Address	Subnet Mask	Operation Mode
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	<input type="text"/>	255.255.255.255 (/32) ▼	<input checked="" type="radio"/> NAT <input type="radio"/> Router

- ◆ Fill in the desired alias IP address and select the preferred Subnet Mask, Operation mode, check the Enable box and click **Apply** button to activate the settings.

- **DHCP:** From the drop down menu, DHCP server for this particular service zone may be Disabled, Enabled or Relayed.  
Please note that when "Enable DHCP Relay" is enabled, fill in the IP address of the external DHCP Server, and the IP address of clients will be assigned by an external DHCP server. The system will only relay DHCP information from the external DHCP server to downstream clients of this service zone. A redundant DHCP server can be configured when set to DHCP Server Relay mode. Please note that Controller should be in the same subnet as the DHCP server.

DHCP
Enable DHCP Server

DHCP Server Configuration for Service Zone SZ1

No	Active	DHCP Pool	Start IP Address	End IP Address	Preferred DNS Server	Alternate DNS Server	Domain Name	Lease Time (mins)	WINS Server	Disregard Client's Name
1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Scope 1	172.21.0.1	172.21.0.100	172.21.0.254		domain.com	1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 2						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 3						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 4						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 5						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	Scope 6						1440		<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable

Reserved IP Address List
Configure

DHCP Lease Protection
☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Item	Description
<b>DHCP Server Scope 1</b>	
<b>Start IP Address / End IP Address</b>	A range of IP addresses that are built in DHCP server will be assigned to clients. Note: please change the Management IP Address List accordingly (at <i>System Configuration &gt;&gt; System Information &gt;&gt; Management IP Address List</i> ) to permit the administrator to access the WHG CONTROLLER admin page after the default IP address of the network interface is changed.
<b>Preferred DNS Server</b>	The primary DNS server that is used by this Service Zone.
<b>Alternate DNS Server</b>	The substitute DNS server that is used by this Service Zone.
<b>Domain Name</b>	Enter the domain name for this service zone.
<b>WINS Server</b>	The IP address of the WINS (Windows Internet Naming Service) server that if WINS server is applicable to this service zone.
<b>Lease Time</b>	This is the time period that the IP addresses issued from the DHCP server are valid and available.
<b>Disregard Client Name</b>	When enabled the system will not record the name of the device requesting for an IP address. On the other hand, when disabled is selected, the system will record the device's name when issuing IP addresses. The devices name (Host Name) can be seen under <b>DHCP Lease</b> tab.
<b>DHCP Server Scope 2</b>	
<b>Enable/Disable</b>	When Enabled, an additional DHCP server can be configured to assign IP address to clients associated to the alias IP of this Service Zone. The configurable fields are the same as DHCP Server Scope 1.

**Reserved IP Address List:** Each service zone can reserve specific IP addresses from predefined DHCP range to prevent the system from issuing these IP addresses to downstream clients. Click the **Configure** button to edit the Reserved IP List.

The administrator can reserve a list of specific IP addresses for special device with certain MAC address. Fill a set of IP address and MAC address as reserve, additional information can be entered in the Description field. Click **Apply** to activate your settings.

**DHCP Lease Protection:** When "Enabled", whenever the Service Zone's built-in DHCP server receives a DHCP request, it will automatically bind the MAC address with an IP address permanently. This means that once all the IP addresses have been assigned, it will be bound with the MAC address that first acquired this IP. Subsequent devices with new MAC address will be unable to acquire an IP address. When "Disabled" DHCP server will operate as usual, assigning available IP addresses upon DHCP request.

- **Assigned IP Address for AP Management (Default Zone):** When LAN ports are in Port-Based Mode, each Service Zone can designate an IP segment for IP address assignment to the managed AP when the newly discovered AP is added into the service zone. When LAN ports are in Tagged-Based mode, only the Default Service Zone will designate an IP segment for IP address assignment to the managed AP when the newly discovered AP is added into the selected Service Zones.

### Assigned IP Address for AP Management

IP Range	Start IP Address	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="192.168.10.1"/>
	End IP Address	<input style="width: 95%;" type="text" value="192.168.10.254"/>

This defines the range of IP addresses Access Points would use for Local Access Point Management.

- **Authentication Settings:** The system supports several authentication options, namely: Local, On-Demand, FREE, SIP, LDAP, NT Domain, and POP3. All authentication option can be enabled and applied concurrently. This is to be emphasized in the next section "Users".
- **Page Customization:** Each Service Zone can be configured to have unique Login Pages or Message Pages. There are 3 types of Login Pages: The General Login Page, Port Location Mapping Login Page (Free Access), and Port Location Mapping Login Page (Paid Access). These pages are fully customizable to give administrators complete flexibility. Message Pages can also be customized and message pages include: Login Success Pages, Login Success Page for On-Demand Users, Login Fail Page, Logout Page, Logout Succeeded Page, and Logout Fail Page.
- **Managed AP(s):** APs operating under the Service Zone will be listed here. The list is organized by AP Types, and APs can be configured by clicking the shortcut links on the AP Names (link to Main > Access Points > Local Area AP Management > List > AP Configuration). This works like a summary and provides administrators with a quick status check in a glance.

## 7) Port Location Mapping

The Port Location Mapping feature is also commonly used in hospitality venues to manage the internet service for their guest rooms and public areas. In addition it can operate in conjunction with third party hospitality applications and has been tested with the Net Retriever middleware which provides seamless integration between the gateway and the popular High Speed Internet Access (HSIA) hardware and Front Office System (FOS) software.

Each Port Location Mapping entry can be configured to provide charged (single or multiple user), free or blocked internet service at the location corresponding to the entry's VLAN Tag. Please note that for charged service to work, it is required that least one or more On-Demand Billing Plans are created, allowing the user to choose a desired plan to pay for their internet access.



### Create

Status

☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Apply

Mapping

Create

Subinterface

Use LAN Port

LAN1

Subinterface ID

Enter a Number Here

Remark

Optional

Add

Cancel

### Lists

PLM List

Show

Subinterface List

Show

Tunnel PLM List

Show

Administrator could use Port Location Mapping feature to map a location (such as a hotel room) to a VLAN port of VLAN switch or a DSLAM device. Each Room is mapped to a VLAN Tag. And each Room can be assign to different Service Zones to get different policy. Furthermore, according to your application, you can configure the different rooms to different Port Type: **Authentication Required**, **Open** or **Block**.

- **Open**, this port type means the user can access internet in this room without any charge.
- If you do not want to provide any internet access right in the rooms, you may change the Port type of the rooms to **Block**. If the user opens a browser and tries to access internet, it will pop up a Blocking message to notify the user.
- **Auth. Required** port type is used mainly for hospitality application to charge users. If the user opens a browser and tries to access internet, a page with disclaimer and billing plan options will be displayed. User can select the desired plan and click confirm button to purchase an account. The account cost will be sent to the PMS and added to the hotel bill via the configured middleware.

➤ **Port Location Mapping Setup – Create Batch**

Method Create Multiple Mappings ▾

### Create Batch

Port Type	<span>Open ▾</span>
Choose LAN Port	<span>LAN1 ▾</span>
Service Zone	<span>Default ▾</span>
DHCP Scope	<span>None ▾</span>
Assign VLAN ID From	<span>Range from 1 - 4094 *</span>
Number of VLANs	<span>A number *</span>
Location ID From	<span>A number</span>
Location Prefix	<span>Optional</span>
Location Postfix	<span>Optional</span>
User Limit Per Port	<span>Unlimited if left blank</span>
NAS Identifier From	<span>Optional</span>
NAS Identifier Prefix	<span>Optional</span>
NAS Identifier Postfix	<span>Optional</span>

- **Port Type:** The default state of the rooms, it may be: Free, Block, Single User, Multiple User.
- **Choose LAN Port:** Select the LAN Port for which traffic is received
- **Service Zone:** The service zone profile used to provide internet service to the corresponding location.
- **DHCP Scope:** Select which DHCP Scope to use from corresponding Service Zone.
- **Assign VLAN ID From:** The starting VLAN ID.
- **Number of VLAN:** The total number of VLAN.
- **Location ID:** A numeric identification number (or typically the room number).
- **Location ID Prefix:** The prefix (of room number).
- **Location ID Postfix:** The postfix (of room number).
- **User Limit Per Port:** Maximum number of users in batch on corresponding port.
- **NAS Identifier From/Prefix/Postfix:** An optional RADIUS Attribute

➤ **Port Location Mapping Setup – Create One**

Method Create Single Mapping ▾

### Create One

Port Type	<span>Open ▾</span>
Choose LAN Port	<span>LAN1 ▾</span>
Service Zone	<span>Default ▾</span>
DHCP Scope	<span>None ▾</span>
Assign VLAN ID	<span>Range from 1 - 4094 *</span>
Location ID	<span>A number</span>
Location Description	<span>Optional</span>
User Limit	<span>Unlimited if left blank</span>
NAS Identifier	<span>NAS Identifier</span>
Class	<span></span>
HTTP Parameter	<span></span>

- **Port Type:** The default state of the rooms, it may be: Open, Block, Auth. Required.
- **Choose LAN Port:** Select the LAN Port for which traffic is received
- **Service Zone:** The service zone profile used to provide internet service to the corresponding location.
- **DHCP Scope:** Select which DHCP Scope to use from corresponding Service Zone.
- 
- **Assign VLAN ID:** The starting VLAN ID.
- **Location ID:** A numeric identification number (or typically the room number).
- **Location Description:** Optional description for reference.
- **User Limit:** Maximum number of users in batch on corresponding port
- **NAS Identifier:** An optional parameter for RADIUS attribute.
- **Class:** An optional parameter for RADIUS attribute.
- **HTTP Parameter:** Used only when an External Login Page is configured and additional HTTP parameters are required.

➤ **Port Location Mapping List**



## Port Location Mapping List

Delete

Export List

Import List

Change All Port Types

All

Search

	VLAN ID	Room Number (Location ID)	Room Description (Location Name)	Port Type	From	Service Zone	Availability
	100	1000		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	101	1001		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	102	1002		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	103	1003		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	104	1004		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	105	1005		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	106	1006		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	107	1007		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	108	1008		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	109	1009		Single User	LAN1	Default	
	110	1010		Single User	LAN1	Default	

- **Import/Export List:** For backing up and restoring the Port Location Mapping List
- **Change All Port Type:** To configure Port Type for all rooms: Free, Block, Single User, Multiple User.

## 8) Middleware

By setting up the connection to Middleware, the system can listen to specific messages from PMS behind Middleware. When hotel guest is buying an in-room billing plan for Internet access, the system will post a record to PMS through Middleware.

### PMS Interface Configuration

PMS Interface Type ☐ Disable ☒ Net Retriever ☐ Micros Opera

Note: The location ID would be mandatory when creating port location mapping for guests to login successfully.

Secret

Interface Port  \*

Middleware ID (MI ID)  \*(1 ~ 9999)

Access Controller ID (AC ID)  \*(1 ~ 9999)

Link Test Interval  \*(60~600 seconds)

User Account Log [View](#)

Delete Account on Check-Out ☒ Disable ☐ Expired ☐ Enable

- ◆ **Net Retriever Setup:** Enter the Secret, Interface Port, MI ID, AC ID, and Link Test Interval for Middleware connection.
- ◆ **Secret:** The secret key between **Guest Service Device** and **PMS Middleware** for challenge and

response (MD5 Hash) to test the authenticity of the link. It should contain one or more lowercase letters, uppercase letters, numbers and symbols. It should also be between 8 ~ 16 characters.

- ◆ **Interface Port:** The port used by Net Retriever, the default is "8324".
- ◆ **MI ID:** The ID of the **Middleware**.
- ◆ **AC ID:** The ID of the Access WHG Controller (the gateway).
- ◆ **Link Test Interval:** The time interval for the gateway to perform Link Test, the default is "300" seconds.
- ◆ **User Account Log:** The events occurred in the background relating to this feature are recorded and may be displayed here.
- ◆ **Delete Account on Check Out:** The user account status bundled with a room may be forcefully expired from use should the administrator desires upon room check out.

## PMS Interface Configuration

<b>PMS Interface Type</b>	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Net Retriever <input checked="" type="radio"/> Micros Opera	
<b>PMS IP Address</b>	<input type="text" value="10.29.42.101"/>	
<b>PMS Port</b>	<input type="text" value="5010"/>	
<b>Account Credentials</b>	Username	<input type="text" value="RN"/>
	Password	<input type="text" value="GN"/>
<b>Room Bill Description</b>	<input type="text" value="Wireless Access"/>	
<b>Login Error Message</b>	<input type="text" value="An error has occurred during login. Please contact the front desk for assistance."/>	
<b>User Account Log</b>	<input type="button" value="View"/>	
<b>Synchronize Data with PMS</b>	<input type="button" value="Sync"/>	

- ◆ **Micros Opera Setup:** Enter the PMS IP and PMS Port for Middleware connection.
- ◆ **PMS IP:** Enter the IP used by the Micros Fidelio PMS.
- ◆ **PMS Port:** Enter the Port used by the Micros Fidelio PMS.
- ◆ **Account Credentials:** Administrators may define User Account credentials using a combination of RN (Room number), GN (Guest Name), G# (Guest Number) or G+ (Profile Name) to designate the Micros protocol parameter for carrying the username and password information.
- ◆ **Room Bill Description:** The entered description will appear on Room Bills via PMS integration.
- ◆ **User Account Log:** The events occurred in the background relating to this feature are recorded and may be displayed here.
- ◆ **Synchronize Data with PMS:** Click "Sync" to synchronize data with the PMS server to ensure database is up to date.

## B. Users

**Users:** This section relates to user authentication, authorization and accounting. It includes Groups Configuration, Internal/External Authentication Configuration, On-Demand Accounts, Policies Configuration, Privilege Lists Configuration and Additional Controls.

### 1) Groups

The Group Overview page gives a summary of which Authentication Servers are used for the corresponding Group.

Main » Users » Groups » Overview

This page gives a summary of which Authentication Servers are used for the corresponding Group.

#### Group Overview

Group Name	Authentication Type
Group 1	Local Billing Plan 1 Guest POP3-Server 5 RADIUS-Server 2-Default LDAP-Server 4-Default NT Domain-Server 3 SIP
Group 2	
Group 3	
Group 4	
Group 5	
Group 6	
Group 7	
Group 8	

16 sets of Group options (models dependency) and Zone Permission Configuration & Policy Assignment can be defined respectively to enforce the access management for different groups of users in different Service Zones. The correspondence can be configured on the "Group Configuration" page.

Main › Users › Groups › Configuration

This page gives a summary of access permissions for each Group in different Service Zones.

### Group Configuration

Select Group: Group 1 ▼

Group Name:

Remark:

Number of devices which are allowed to login:   
(0 to 9999 devices, 0: Unlimited)  
For On-Demand accounts, number of devices is configured individually per different billing plans. The number is for the following types: LOCAL, POP3, RADIUS, LDAP, and NT Domain.

Allow to logout other devices when exceeding the maximum amount of devices: ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled  
For On-Demand accounts, allowing to logout others devices is always enabled. This setting id for the following types: LOCAL, POP3, RADIUS, LADP, and NT Domain.

### Zone Permission Configuration & Policy Assignment

Enabled	Zone Name	Time Span 1	Time Span 2
		<span>Schedule 1 ▼</span>	<span>Schedule 1 ▼</span>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : Default	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ1	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ2	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>
<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Service Zone : SZ3	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>	<span>Policy 1 ▼</span>

To allow multiple devices to log in with the same account credentials, define the number here at “Number of devices which are allowed to login”. Multiple device login for the On-Demand authentication option can be configured at selected Billing Plans.

## 2) Internal Authentication

The system supports multiple authentication options, which include both internal and external databases. Internal Authentication databases include “Local”, “On-Demand”, and “Guest”.

### Authentication Option - Server 1

Server No. 1

Name:  \*

User Postfix:  \*

Remark:

Blacklist: None ▼

Authentication: LOCAL ▼



The default Authentication for “Local” is set at Authentication Server 1. The User Postfix is used for the system to identify which authentication option will be used for the specific user account when multiple options are concurrently in use. To manipulate Local accounts, go to “Configure” for Local User List.

Main > Users > Internal Authentication > Local Authentication

Server No. 1 : Server 1 ▼

## Local Authentication

---

Local User List

Configure

Account Roaming Out

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

802.1X Authentication

☒ Enable ☐ Disable

RADIUS Client Device Settings

✓ Apply

✕ Cancel

The On-Demand Authentication option is typically used for short term usage, such as public hotspots. Settings related to the On-Demand Authentication option can be configured here, such as Billing Plan profiles, POS ticket customization, Terminal Server list, External Payment Gateway setup and etc.

## On-Demand Authentication

---

User Postfix

ondemand

Billing Plans

Configure

Currency

☐ None ☐ \$ USD ☐ € EUR ☐ £ GBP 

This is used when the currency is not defined in the Paypal account.  
Or input another desired monetary unit (max. 3 letters) in the blank field.

Expired Account Cache

30 day(s)

Out-of-quota Account Cache

30 day(s)

Set Ticket's Serial Number

000001

Set

Web Printout

Configure

This will be applied to the regular printer printout when creating a single On-Demand account.

POS Tickets

Configure

Number of Tickets ☒ 1 ☐ 2

This will be applied to printouts from the POS ticket printer.  
Templates can be edited for customization.

Terminal Server

Configure

Terminal Servers are add-on devices such as the SDS100 or SDS200W.

Payment Gateway

Configure

SMS Gateway

Configure

Account Roaming Out

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

The Guest Authentication Option is not technically a user database, but rather a specially designed option to allow a user to access and surf the network without any user account or password. This feature allows the user to associate with a particular Service Zone, enter guest email or a specified string of text by guest questionnaire which may be social security number etc. defined by the administrator, and use the network without actual authentication. The accounts can have limited or limited access time, and guest users can be bound to a User Group to apply Policies.

Main > Users > Internal Authentication > Guest Authentication

When Social Media Login or Guest Questionnaire is enabled, the controller collects information from the clients. Please enable Disclaimer or customized login page to include claims and reminders.

### Guest Authentication

Guest Login Input	<input type="radio"/> Hidden <input checked="" type="radio"/> Visible
Social Media Login	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <a href="#">To configure the Social Media Login settings, go to Social Media Login</a>
E-mail Denial List	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable <a href="#">Configure</a>
Guest Questionnaire	<a href="#">Configure</a>
Guest Access Time	<input type="radio"/> Unlimited <input checked="" type="radio"/> Limited
Quota	<input type="text" value="0"/> hour(s) <input type="text" value="30"/> minute(s)
Reactivation	After <input type="text" value="1"/> hour(s) <input type="text" value="0"/> minute(s)
Access Limit	<input type="text" value="5"/> per day *(0:Unlimited)
Group	<input type="text" value="Group 1"/> ▼
Email Verification	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable
Guest Quota List	<a href="#">View</a>
Guest information	<a href="#">View</a>

[✓ Apply](#)
[✕ Cancel](#)

By enabling the “Email Denial List”, some guest email addresses which are disclaimed by certain email domain names would be blocked from internet access. By enabling “Email Verification”, limited free access is provided when an activation link sent by email is clicked by the user.

By enabling “Social Media Login” and entering the Social Media ID and secret registered from Social Media Sites, guest users could directly login with their already own social media accounts. Selected guest information would be collected from Social Media sites and displayed in Guest Information page.

### 3) External Authentication

Up to 5 External Authentication servers can be set up and enabled concurrently to facilitate existing user account databases on your network. External Authentication options include RADIUS, POP3, LDAP, NT Domain, and SIP.

Authentication Options				
Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Default	Enable
Server 1	LOCAL	local	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 2	RADIUS	radius	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 3	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 4	LDAP	ldap	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 5	POP3	pop3	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
On-Demand	ONDEMAND	ondemand	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
SIP	SIP	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Guest	FREE	N/A	<input type="radio"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## 4) On-Demand Accounts

### On-Demand Account Creation

Plan	Account Type	Quota	Price	Group	Function
1	Usage-time	2 hr(s) of connection time quota with expiration	1.99	1	Create Single Create Batch
2	Hotel Cut-off-time	Valid until 5:01 the following day	1	1	Create Single Create Batch
3	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
4	N/A				Create Single Create Batch
5	N/A				Create Single Create Batch

- **Account Creation:** Administrators can choose to create a single account or multiple accounts using the "Batch Create" function. Before accounts can be created, at least one Billing Plan needs to be set up and activated. Accounts can be created with random Usernames and Passwords or created manually (up to 8 characters). Usernames and Passwords can also be created manually for batch creation. (eg. Prefix = ABC, Postfix = DEF, Serial Number 0001.)

### On-Demand Account List

Delete






Restore List

Backup List

Delete Expired

Delete Out of Quota

Search

	Username	Remaining Quota	Status	Group	Reference	External ID	Redeem
	28v2	Until 2013/02/07-02:00	Expired	Group 1	roomN-3154-00:09:6B:CD:82:47		
	e69w	Until 2013/02/19-01:00	Expired	Group 1			
	9u2u	Until 2013/02/19-03:03	Expired	Group 1			
	ep4r	Until 2013/02/19-05:01	Expired	Group 1			

(Total:4/9000) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page 

1

 (Page:1/1)

Row per Page: 

10

- **Account List:** All created On-Demand accounts and related information are listed on this page. The list also allows administrators to manipulate On-Demand accounts, such as restoring/deleting accounts and Admin Redeem.



## 5) Schedule

The Administrator gets to set different Login Hour permissions to be applied to User Groups in enabled Service Zones. To apply the configured Schedule Profile, go to Groups Configuration.

### Schedule Permitted Login Hours - Profile 1

Select Schedule Schedule 1 ▾

Schedule Name

Schedule 1

	Time	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
<input type="checkbox"/>	SUN	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	MON	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	TUE	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	WED	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	THU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	FRI	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	SAT	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

☐ Log off authenticated users during unauthorized periods

## 6) Policies

Global policy is the system's universal policy including **Firewall Profile**, **Specific Route Profile**, **Schedule Profile**, and **Maximum Concurrent Sessions** management which will be applied to all users unless the user has been regulated and applied to another policy.

### Policy Configuration

Select Policy	<span>Global Policy ▾</span>
Firewall Profile	<span>Configure</span>
Privilege Profile	<span>Configure</span>
Specific Route Profile	<span>Configure</span>
Specific IPv6 Route Profile	<span>Configure</span>
IPv4 DSCP and 802.1p Mapping	<span>Configure</span>
IPv6 Traffic Class and 802.1p Mapping	<span>Configure</span>

Each policy consists of **Firewall Profile**, **Specific Route Profile**, **Schedule Profile** and **Maximum Concurrent Sessions** management as well. Policies can be defined in the Policy tab. The administrator can select one of the defined policies to apply it to groups within a certain Service Zone. A group of users within different Service Zones can be applied with different policies. For example, sales can be applied with different network access right while accessing from sales department region or finance department region.

- **Select Policy:** The number of different policy profiles available depends on the model type.
- **Firewall Profile:** Firewall profile specifies the protocols & rules that will be enforced to users governed by this policy. Each Policy profile has its own customizable firewall profile.
- **Specific Route Profile:** The routing rules to be applied to users under this policy may be set here.
- **Specific IPv6 Route Profile:** The routing rules to be applied to users under this policy may be set here.
- **Privilege Profile:** User generated session number limit may be configured here. Please adjust this attribute carefully based on your network usage
- **IPv4 DSCP and 802.1p Mapping:** This criteria enables the static mapping configuration from IPv4 DSCP tag into the desired 802.1p traffic class for sending in the managed VLAN network.
- **IPv6 Traffic Class and 802.1p Mapping:** This criteria enables the static mapping configuration from IPv6 traffic tag into the desired 802.1p traffic class for sending in the managed VLAN network.

Policy 1~x (model dependent) can be applied to specific group of users in different Service Zones. Policy 1 has the highest priority, and Policies with the higher priority shall be the first applied Policy.

Select Policy Policy 1 ▼

---

### Policy Configuration

Policy Name	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Policy 1</span>
Firewall Profile	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Firewall 1</span> ▼
Privilege Profile	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Privilege 1</span> ▼
QoS Profile	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">QoS 1</span> ▼
Specific Route Profile	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">Specific Route 1</span> ▼
Prefer DHCP Pool	<span style="border: 1px solid #ccc; padding: 2px 10px;">None</span> ▼

A Preferred DHCP Pool (defined in Service Zone DHCP configurations) may be selected here as well.

## 7) Blacklists

Blacklist profiles can be defined and each active authentication option may be configured with one of these blacklist profiles. A user account listed on the blacklist is not allowed to log into the system, the client's access will be denied. The administrator may select one blacklist from the drop-down menu and this blacklist will be applied to this specific authentication option. Note that names on the Blacklists can be configured to be case insensitive.

Select Blacklist
1: Blacklist1

### Blacklist Settings

Blacklist Name

Case Insensitive with blacklist
☒ Disable
☐ Enable

	User Name	Remark
(Total:0/40) First Prev Next Last Go To Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 10		

## 8) Privilege Lists

The Privilege function supports three types of privilege list based on IP address, MAC address and IPv6 address. Devices specified in the list require NO authentication to access the network. Note that a User Group can be assigned to Devices on the IP Privilege List but not on the MAC Privilege List.

SYSTEM
USERS
ACCESS POINTS
NETWORK
UTILITIES
STATUS

Groups
Internal Authentication
External Authentication
On-Demand Accounts
Schedule
Policies
Blacklists
Privilege Lists
IP Privilege List
IPv6 Privilege List
MAC Privilege List
Additional Controls

Main > Users > Privilege List > IP Address

### IP Privilege List

No.	IP Address	MAC Address	Group	Remark
(Total:0/200) First Prev Next Last Go To Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 10				

- **Privilege List:** There are three types of authentication free lists where the administrator can designate privileged individual access without the need of authentication. This may be achieved either via IP address, IPv6 Address or MAC address.

## 5) Additional Control

Additional configurations are in this section. They are User Session Control, Built-in RADIUS Server Settings, Customization, Remaining Time Reminder, and MAC ACL. The administrator can control user session such as idle timeout in User Session Control. Three functions are provided in Built-in RADIUS Server Settings such as session timeout. In Customization, the administrator can upload certificate to the system. Remaining Time Reminder provides remaining time information to clients on the screen. The administrator can manage the access control to the system via clients' MAC address in the MAC ACL (Access Control List).

### User Session Control

Idle Timeout
 minute(s) \*(1-43200)

Detection Interval
 second(s) \*(1-600)

Traffic Direction for Idle Timeout
Uplink & Downlink ▼

Timeout Threshold
 byte(s) \*(0-1048576, 0 is Disabled)

User Options

☐ Charge Traffic to/from Hosts in Walled Garden List

☐ Kick user when user's IP change

☐ Log NAT Mapped in User Session Log

### Built-in RADIUS Server Settings

Session Timeout
 minute(s) \*(5-43200)

Idle Timeout
 minute(s) \*(1-43200)

Interim Update
 minute(s) \*(1-120)

Certificate
Default CERT ▼

### Remaining Quota Reminder

Time and Cut-off Reminder
☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Volume Reminder
☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Reminder Refresh Time
☒ 10mins ☐ 15mins ☐ 20mins

### MAC Access Control List

MAC Access Control List

MAC Access Control is used to grant or deny permission to access the User Login Page.

## User Session Control

- **Idle Timeout:** Configure the time base without activity to deem as idle timeout.
- **Idle Detect Interval:** The time interval for checking for whether the idle criteria are reached. Successive accumulation of idle intervals exceeding the Idle time configure above, will induce an idle timeout action where the user will be logged out.
- **Traffic Direction for Idle Timeout:** The user's activity inspection may be checked as uplink or both.
- **Threshold for Idle Traffic Detection:** Designate the threshold where traffic flow smaller than the value configured will be considered as being idle.
- **Charge Traffic to/from Host in Walled Garden List:** For usage or volume type accounts in the On-Demand user database, administrator has the option to charge or not charge visits to websites that are listed in the walled garden or walled garden ad list.
- **Kick out user when user's IP change:** An option for the administrator whether or not disconnection is forced by the system whenever a user changes IP address.
- **Log NAT Mapped in User Session Log:** To show mapping for each connection from Private IP/Port to Public IP/Port, this option must be enabled.

## Built in RADIUS Server Settings

- **Session Timeout:** For created sessions generated by users authenticated via build-in RADIUS server (could be account roaming user), the timeout range may be configured here manually. Please configure this attribute carefully.



- **Idle Timeout:** For users authenticated via build-in RADIUS server (could be account roaming user), the idle timeout range may be configured here manually. Please configure this attribute carefully.
- **Interim Update:** For users authenticated via build-in RADIUS server (could be account roaming user), the accounting interval may be configured here manually. Please configure this attribute carefully.
- **Certificate:** Certificate for built-in RADIUS server will be selectable

#### Remaining Quota Reminder

- **Time and Cut-off reminder:** This is the option for the system to display a warning message to On-Demand users that their time based account quota is about to run out.
- **Volume Reminder:** This is the option for the system to display a warning message to On-Demand users that their volume based account quota is about to run out.
- **Reminder Refresh Time:** The Login Success page with the remaining quota can set to refresh every 10/15/20 minutes to show the updated remaining quota.

#### MAC Access Control List

- **MAC ACL:** The administrator may configure restraining measures to MAC address, either MAC allow or deny list.

## C. Access Points

**Access Points:** This section is used to manage the APs. Besides showing the various attributes of APs, there are different functions provided for various configurations.

### Welcome to Device Management

---

Local Area AP Management	Enable	Enter
Wide Area AP Management	Enable	Enter
Switch Management	Enable	Enter

## 1) Local Area AP Management

### a) Overview

A summary is used to list the basic information of each AP type. It includes: number of AP, number Online, number Offline, and total number of associated clients in each AP type.

All of the supported APs under management of the system will be shown in this table and listed by AP type.

## AP Type List

AP Type	No. of AP	Online	Offline	No. of Client
EAP110	0	0	0	0
EAP210	0	0	0	0
EAP220	0	0	0	0
EAP260	0	0	0	0
EAP320	0	0	0	0
EAP700	0	0	0	0
EAP701	0	0	0	0
EAP717	0	0	0	0
EAP747	0	0	0	0
EAP750	0	0	0	0
EAP757	0	0	0	0
EAP760	0	0	0	0
EAP767	0	0	0	0
OWL400	0	0	0	0
OWL410	0	0	0	0
OWL500	0	0	0	0
OWL530	0	0	0	0
OWL620	0	0	0	0
OWL630	0	0	0	0

Select any AP by checking the checkbox and then click the button below to **Reboot**, **Enable**, **Disable**, **Delete**, **Apply Template** and **Apply Service Zone** (Tag-Based) the selected AP if desired.

## b) List

A list is used to show the information of each managed AP, including Type, Name, IP Address, MAC Address, and online Status. Functions in this section also include the operations such as reboot, enable, disable, delete, apply a new template, apply by service zone and other configuration.

All of the supported APs under management of the system will be shown in the list. The administrator can add supported APs from the **Discovery** or the **Adding** tabs. After APs are added, this list will show the current managed APs including AP type, AP name, IP Address, MAC Address, Service Zone and Status. The administrator can then perform reboot, enable, disable, delete the managed APs, or apply template or apply service zone to them by checking the check box in front of each individual AP or selecting all the APs together by checking the top check box.

Main > Device Management > Local Area AP Management > AP List

### AP List

AP Type
☒ All
☒ EAP110
☒ EAP210
☒ EAP220
☒ EAP260
☒ EAP320
☒ EAP330
☒ EAP430
☒ EAP700
☒ EAP701
☒ EAP705
☒ EAP706
☒ EAP717
☒ EAP727
☒ EAP747
☒ EAP750
☒ EAP757
☒ EAP760
☒ EAP767
☒ OWL400
☒ OWL410
☒ OWL500
☒ OWL530
☒ OWL620
☒ OWL630
☒ Others

Apply

Add
Reboot
Enable
Disable
Delete

Refresh Interval: Disable Auto Refresh Refresh

Apply Template
Reset To Default
Apply By Service Zone

AP Name: Search (Total: 2)

AP Name	Client	IP Address	Service Zone / VLAN ID / SSID	Status	MAC Address	Channel
---------	--------	------------	-------------------------------	--------	-------------	---------

Select any AP by checking the checkbox on the list and then click the buttons to **Reboot**, **Enable**, **Disable**, **Delete**, **Apply Template** and **Reset to Default** to the selected AP if desired.

### c) Adding

The Adding function is used to manually set up an AP via filling in the required information for that AP. The system provides templates that can be used to simplify the AP configuration.

The administrator can add supported APs into the **List** table manually by clicking "Add" and selecting "Add AP". The system will attempt to configure the AP with the value specified. After processing, the AP's status will display "online" or "offline" on the AP List.

- **AP Type:** The model type of the AP for adding to the List.
- **AP Name:** Mnemonic name of the specific AP.
- **Admin Password:** Password required for this AP.
- **IP Address:** IP address of the specified AP.
- **MAC Address:** MAC address of the specific AP.
- **Apply AP Template:** Select the AP Template to be applied to this added AP.
- **Channel:** The selected channel will be applied to the added AP.

### d) Discovery

This Discovery function is to manually or automatically detect the supported types of APs when connected to the LAN ports and automatically assign a unique IP address to each AP discovered. Click "Add" from the AP List and select "Find Multiple APs".

When **Background AP Discovery** function is enabled, the system will scan once every 10 minutes or according to the time set by the administrator. If any AP is discovered and **Auto Adding AP to the List** is enabled, it will be assigned an available IP from the starting IP address set in checked Service Zone profile and applied with the selected template. You can also set the channel the AP would use.



Add Method
Find Multiple APs

### Find Multiple APs

AP Type
EAP110

Service Zone
Default

VLAN for management
0

Admin Settings Used to Discover

☒ Factory Default

IP Address: 192.168.1.1  
Login ID: admin  
Password: admin

☐ Manual

Scan Now

Status
Disabled

Configure

Add

	AP Type	IP Address	MAC Address	AP Name	Password	Template	Channel
(Total: 0/150) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: <input type="text"/>							

- **AP Type:** Select the AP model name which you like for the system to find.
- **Service Zone:** Select the Service Zone for which the device connected AP is to be managed in.
- **VLAN for management:** Set VLAN for management for the discovered AP.
- **Admin Settings Used to Discover:** Select factory default if the connected AP's interface and management credentials have not been changed. Otherwise, choose manual and specify the IP range and management settings accordingly. The administrator may stop the controller from scanning at any time during the discovery process.
- **Background AP Discovery:** When configured, the system will periodically scan the configured IP range for newly connected AP devices and automatically display the discovery results.
- **Discovery Results:** Shows the AP devices detected that match the discovery criteria configured above.

## e) Templates

The AP setting templates can be defined. Up to 8 templates can be edited, saved, and used in "Adding" and "Discovery" sections.

### Templates by AP Model

The system supports up to eight templates which include configurations of APs. The administrator can configure the setting together in the template instead of logging the AP management interface to set the configurations one by one. Select the **AP type**, and then click **Edit** icon to enter the **Template Editing** page.

## AP Template

AP Model  

Template Name	Copy Settings from	Remark	Action
<input type="text" value="TEMPLATE1"/>	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	<input type="text" value="Template 1"/>	
<input type="text" value="TEMPLATE2"/>	<input type="text" value="NONE"/>	<input type="text" value="Template 2"/>	

- **Template Editing:** The administrator can set the template configuration manually or copy the configurations from a specific existing managed AP by **Copy Settings From** option. Click **Configure** button to have detailed configurations.
- ◆ **Name:** The name shown for this particular template.
  - ◆ **Copy Settings From:** Select a pre-configured existing AP and click **Apply** to save its settings as the template settings.
  - ◆ **Remark:** The remark or additional information for this template profile.
  - ◆ **Action:** Click Edit depicted by a pencil icon to enter configurations or click the red cross to delete template

## General

Subnet Mask	<input type="text" value="255.255.0.0"/>	•
Default Gateway	<input type="text" value="192.168.1.254"/>	•
NTP	Time Zone <input type="text" value="(GMT+08:00)Taipei,Taiwan"/>	
	NTP Server 1:	<input type="text" value="tick.stdtime.gov.tw"/> •
	NTP Server 2:	<input type="text" value="tock.stdtime.gov.tw"/>
SNMP	<input type="text" value="Disabled"/>	
SYSLOG	<input type="text" value="Disabled"/>	

- **General:** In this section, revise the **Subnet Mask** and **Default Gateway** here if desired. Configure the **NTP Servers** and **Time Zone**. In addition, administrator can enable **SYSLOG** server to receive the log from AP and enable **SNMP** read/write ability.

## Wireless

RF Card A ▼

Band	802.11g+802.11n ▼	
Channel Width	20 MHz ▼	
Data Rate	Auto ▼	
Short Preamble	Enabled ▼	
Transmit Power	Level 18 ▼	
Beacon Interval (ms)	100	*(Default: 100; Range: 100 ~ 500)
ACK Timeout	0	*(Default: 0; Range: 0 ~ 255, 0:Auto, Unit:4 micro seconds)
Airtime Fairness	Fair Access ▼	
Packet Delay Threshold	1000	*(100 - 5000ms, 0:Disable)
Idle Timeout	300	*(Larger than 15)
Band Steering	Disabled ▼	

☐ Aggressive

### Interference Detection

Adjacent Channel

Utilization Threshold 0 \*(0 - 99, 0:Disable)

Latency 10 second(s) \*

Co-Channel

Utilization Threshold 0 \*(0 - 99, 0:Disable)

Invalid Packet Rate 90 \*(0 - 99)

Latency 10 second(s) \*

Transmission Rate Threshold 0 kbps \*(0:Disable)

### WME Configuration

Access Category	Voice	Video	Background	Best Effort
CW Min	2	3	4	4
CW Max	3	4	10	6
AIFS	1	1	7	3
TXOP Limit	1504	3008	0	0

### VAP Configuration

Status	Profile Name	VLAN ID	Service Zone	SSID	WLAN Encryption	Action
ON	VAP-1	0	Default	Default	NONE	

Add VAP

### ➤ Wireless:

- **SSID Broadcast:** Select this option to enable the AP's SSID to broadcast in your network. It is suggested to disable SSID broadcast feature when you have an authentication disabled network intended for private use.
- **Band:** Depending on the AP model template you are editing, there are different modes to select,

**802.11a, 802.11b, 802.11g, 802.11a+802.11n, 802.11b+802.11g, 802.11g+802.11n and 802.11ac.**

- **Channel Width (802.11g+n, 802.11a+n and 802.11ac only):** Choose between 20MHz, 40MHz or Auto. Doubling channel bandwidth to 40 MHz is supported to enhance throughput. 80MHz is available for selection in 802.11ac mode.
- **Data Rate:** The default is set to **Auto**. Available range is from 1 to 54Mbps. The rate of data transmission should be set depending on the speed of the wireless network. Select from a range of transmission speed or keep the default setting, **Auto**, to allow the Access Point to automatically use the fastest rate possible. For 802.11n the selectable data rates range from MCS0 to MCS15.
- **Transmit Power:** On select AP models, the signal strength transmitted from the system can be selected by Levels. Each level signifies a decrement of 1 dBm from the highest power. **Level 1** is the actual highest power, **Level 2** is the highest power minus 1 dBm, so on and so forth.
- **Beacon Interval (ms):** Enter a value between 20 and 1000 msec. The default value is 100 milliseconds. The entered time means how often the beacon signal is transmitted between the access point and the wireless network.
- **ACK Timeout:** The time interval for waiting for the "acknowledgement (ACK) frame". If the ACK is not received within the interval then the packet will be re-transmitted. Higher ACK Timeout interval will decrease the packet lost, but the throughput will be decreased/worsened.
- **Airtime Fairness:** When set to "Fair Access", this feature ensures all devices with different band compatibilities have the same air time. When set to "Preferred Access", N clients are prioritized. This feature is ideal for networks with devices supporting different bands.
- **Packet Delay Threshold (ms):** This is the Tx Queue flushing mechanism, which purpose is to drop packets and immediately process others if the queue has been processed for more than x milliseconds. This is disabled by default (=0).
- **Idle Timeout (s):** Clients disconnects when inactivity reaches the configured amount of time in seconds, where default = 300s.
- **Band Steering:** When enabled, clients with 5GHz connectivity will be steered towards the 5GHz band to reduce congestion in the 2.4GHz band. This is applicable only when the AP is set to 2.4GHz and 5GHz on the 2 RF Cards. When "Aggressive" is checked, clients with 5GHz connectivity are forced to connect to the 5GHz band.
- **Interference Detection:** When utilization of the current channel reaches the configured threshold (in %), the AP switches to a different Channel.
- **Transmission Rate Threshold:** The associated client will be kicked when transmission rate is lower than the configured threshold. This ensures high connection speed for all associated clients.
- **WME Configuration:** Access priority can be configured using with different parameters. CW Min: Contention Window Minimum, CW Max: Contention Window Maximum, AIFS: Arbitration Inter Frame Spacing, TXOP Limit: Transmission Opportunity Limit.
- **VAP Configuration:** Enable/Disable VAP under the 'Status' column. Configuration of VAPs can be done by clicking the edit icon under 'Action'.



## VAP Edit - EAP320: TEMPLATE1

Status ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Profile Name  \*

Service Zone

VLAN ID

SSID  \*

RTS Threshold  \*(Default: 2346 ; Range: 1 ~ 2346)

DTIM Period  \*(Default: 1; Range: 1 ~ 15)

Consecutive Retries Threshold  \*(2 - 50, 0:Disable)

SSID Broadcast

Wireless Client Isolation

Wireless QoS WMM

IAPP

IGMP Snooping

Multicast/Broadcast Rate

Management Frame Rate

Receiving RSSI Threshold  \*(0 - 100, 0:disable)

Security Authentication

☐ Enable 802.1X Authentication

## Access Control

This is a list to control wireless access by MAC address.

Encryption

Status

User Limit

No.	MAC Address	State
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
8	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
9	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>
10	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text" value="Disable"/>

(Total: 100) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page  (Page:1/10)

- **Status:** VAP can be Enabled or Disabled here
- **Profile Name:** The profile name of a specific RF card and its VAP for identity / management purposes.
- **Service Zone:** Select the mapping Service Zone for the VAP from the drop-down list
- **VLAN ID:** Select the VLAN ID for this VAP
- **SSID:** The SSID serves as an identifier for clients to associate with the specific VAP. It can be coupled with different service levels like a variety of wireless security types.
- **RTS Threshold:** Enter a value between 1 and 2346. RTS (Request to Send) Threshold determines the packet size at which the system issues a request to send (RTS) before sending the fragment to prevent the hidden node problem. The RTS mechanism will be activated if the data size exceeds the value provided. A lower RTS Threshold setting can be useful in areas where many client devices are associating with the AP or in areas where the clients are far apart and can detect only the AP but not each other.
- **DTIM Period:** Input the DTIM Interval that is generated within the periodic beacon at a specified frequency. Higher DTIM will allow the wireless client to save more energy, but the throughput will be lowered.
- **Consecutive Retries Threshold:** This is the maximum number of transmission retries the AP will attempt when packet transmission fails before deciding the client is out of transmission reach. When transmission retries fails for the set number of times, the Access Point kicks the client to optimize performance for other connected clients.
- **SSID Broadcast:** Disabling this function will stop the system from broadcasting its SSID. If broadcast of the SSID is disabled, only devices that have the correct SSID can connect to the system.
- **Wireless Client Isolation:** By enabling this function, all stations associated with the system are isolated and can only communicate with the system.
- **Wireless QoS WMM:** Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) is a Quality of Service (QoS) feature that prioritizes wireless data packets based on four access categories: voice, video, best effort, and background. Applications without WMM and applications that do not require QoS are assigned to the best-effort category, which receives a lower priority than that of voice and video. Therefore, WMM decides which data streams are more important and assigns them a higher traffic priority. This option works with WMM-capable clients only.
- **IAPP:** IAPP (Inter Access Point Protocol) is a protocol by which access points share information about the stations connected to them. When this function is enabled, the system will automatically broadcast information of associated wireless stations to its peer access points. This will help wireless stations roam smoothly among IAPP-enabled access points in the same wireless LAN.
- **IGMP Snooping:** When IGMP snooping is enabled, IGMP packets are transferred via the Access Point's network interface and the IP multicast host. Registration information is recorded and sorted into multicast groups. The internal switch can then intelligently forward traffic only to those ports that request multicast traffic. Adversely, without IGMP snooping, multicast traffic is treated like broadcast traffic, with packets forwarded to all ports causing network inefficiencies.
- **Multicast/Broadcast Rate:** Bandwidth configuration for multicast/broadcast packets. If your wireless clients require a larger or smaller bandwidth for sending multicast/ broadcast packets, the

administrator can customize the Access Point's multicast/ broadcast bandwidth here.

- **Management Frame Rate:** This feature controls the bandwidth for Management Frames. The higher the rate it, the shorter range the transmission covers.
- **Receiving RSSI Threshold:** To keep connected stations with high connection speeds, the station is kicked out when its receiving sensitivity is lower than the threshold.
- **Security:** The Access Point supports various wireless authentication and data encryption methods in each VAP profile. With this, the administrator can provide different service levels to clients. The security type includes Open, WEP, 802.1X, WPA-Personal, and WPA-Enterprise.
- **Access Control:** The administrator can restrict the wireless access of client devices based on their MAC addresses.
  - **Disable Access Control:** When Disable is selected, there is no restriction for client devices to access the system.
  - **MAC ACL Allow List:** When selecting MAC ACL Allow List, only the client devices (identified by their MAC addresses) listed in the Allow List ("allowed MAC addresses") are granted access to the system. The administrator can temporarily block any allowed MAC address by checking Disable, until the administrator re-Enables the listed MAC.
  - **MAC ACL Deny List:** When selecting MAC ACL Deny List, all client devices are granted access to the system except those listed in the Deny List ( "denied MAC addresses" ). The administrator can allow any denied MAC address to connect to the system temporarily by checking Disable.

The Wireless Setting for RF Card B is available for dual Radio Access Points. Configuration parameters may differ on select AP Models.

## ➤ Layer 2 Firewall:

### Layer 2 Firewall

Enable Layer 2 Firewall
 ☒ Enable
 ☐ Disable

Layer 2 Firewall List
 

No.	State	Action	Name	EtherType	Remark	Edit
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	CDP	IEEE802.3		<a href="#">Edit</a>
2	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	STP	IEEE802.3		<a href="#">Edit</a>
3	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	GARP	IEEE802.3		<a href="#">Edit</a>
4	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	RIP	IPv4		<a href="#">Edit</a>
5	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	HSRP	IPv4		<a href="#">Edit</a>
6	<input type="checkbox"/>	DROP	OSPF	IPv4		<a href="#">Edit</a>
7	<input type="checkbox"/>					<a href="#">Edit</a>
8	<input type="checkbox"/>					<a href="#">Edit</a>



## Layer 2 Firewall Edit - EAP320: TEMPLATE1

State	<input type="radio"/> Enable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable		
Rule ID	1		
Rule name	<input type="text" value="CDP"/> *		
EtherType	<input type="text" value="IEEE802.3"/> ▼		
Interface	<input checked="" type="radio"/> From <input type="radio"/> To <input type="text" value="RF Card A : All VAP"/> ▼		
DSAP/SSAP	<input type="text" value="aa"/>		
Type	<input type="text" value="2000"/> (ex IPv4: 0800)		
Source	MAC Address:	<input type="text"/>	Mask: <input type="text"/>
Destination	MAC Address:	<input type="text" value="01:00:0C:CC:CC:CC"/>	Mask: <input type="text"/>
Action	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Block <input type="radio"/> Pass		
Remark	<input type="text"/>		

- **State:** Enable or Disable the respective rules
- **Rule:** The numbering of this specific rule will decide its priority among available firewall rules in the table.
- **Rule name:** The rule name can be specified here.
- **EtherType:** The drop-down list will provide the available types of traffics subject to this rule.
- **Interface:** This indicates inbound/outbound direction with desired interfaces.
- **DSAP/SSAP** (when EtherType is IEEE 802.3): The value can be further specified for the fields in 802.2 LLC frame header.
- **Type** (when EtherType is IEEE 802.3): The field can be used to indicate the type of encapsulated traffic.
- **Source:** MAC Address/Mask indicates the source MAC; IP Address/Mask indicates the source IP address (when EtherType is **IPv4**); ARP IP/MAC & MASK indicate the ARP payload fields.
- **Destination:** MAC Address/Mask indicates the destination MAC; IP Address/Mask indicates the destination IP address (when EtherType is **IPv4**); ARP IP/MAC & MASK indicate the ARP payload fields.
- **Action:** The rule can be chosen to be **Block** or **Pass**
- **Remark:** Notes of this rule can be specified here.

## f) Firmware

The Firmware function provides the tools to see the AP firmware version and upload new AP firmware into the system.

The system supports the firmware management of APs to upload new firmware, delete the existing firmware, and download the firmware to managed APs. Note that the AP's firmware version must be one

that has been integrated.

**Firmware Upload** displays the current version of the AP's firmware. New firmware can be uploaded here to update the current firmware. To upload, first click **Add**, and then **Browse** to select the file and then click **Upload**.

## AP Firmware List

Add... Delete

	Filename	AP Type	Version	Size	Checksum	Actions
<input type="checkbox"/>	4ipnet_EAP320_2.10.00-EN-E_1.46-1.6885.rom	EAP320	2.10.00	6304078	d12806c08a4417cbae8265aedeb10571	<a href="#">Download</a>

- **AP Firmware List:** The uploaded firmware will be listed here.
- **File Name:** The name of the AP firmware that has been uploaded.
- **AP Type:** The AP Type for the firmware
- **Version:** The version of the firmware
- **Size:** The file size of the firmware
- **Checksum:** The automatically detected security identification of the firmware.
- **Download:** Click **Download** to save the selected firmware to a local disk.
- **Delete:** Click **Delete** to delete the selected firmware from the system.

## g) Upgrade

The Upgrade function allows administrators to upgrade the AP firmware using the firmware files stored in the system.

The administrator can upgrade the firmware of selected APs individually or at the same time by checking the check box of the APs in Selection column. Note that both the version before upgrade and the next version must be ones that have been integrated with the system.

AP Model EAP110

List

	Name	Type	Version	Next Version	Last Upgraded
--	------	------	---------	--------------	---------------

(Total:0/150) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page  (Page:1/1) Row per Page: 10

[Apply](#) [Cancel](#)

## h) WDS Management

WDS (Wireless Distribution System) is a function used to connect APs (access points) wirelessly. The WDS management function of the system can help administrators to setup a "Tree" structure of WDS network.

### WDS Connection Settings - Settings for a new WDS tree

Channel

1

Security Type

None

✓ Apply

✕ Cancel

### WDS Status

Refresh Interval

Disable Auto Refresh

WDS Tree	Security	Channel	Edit
No current WDS connection.			

### WDS Update

Delete WDS Link

Delete

Add WDS Connection

New Parent AP

New Child AP

Add

Move WDS Connection

Update Parent AP

Update Child AP

Move

- **WDS Status:** Status shows the added APs in the WDS Tree with the Security and Channel settings. The WDS could be set up for more than one tree. Click **Edit** to change the **WDS connection settings** for the associated WDS Tree.
- **WDS Update:** Update the WDS connection with the following operations.
  - **Add:** Add a new WDS connection with a Child AP not in the WDS and a Parent AP from the AP List. A new WDS Tree will be added if the selected Parent AP is not in any of the current WDS Trees. Click **Edit** to change the **WDS connection settings** for the new added WDS Tree.
  - **Move:** Update a WDS connection with a Child AP from WDS and a Parent AP which could be connected by WDS, and the previous WDS connection of the Child AP to the previous Parent AP will be deleted.
  - **Delete:** All the WDS connections of the selected AP will be deleted including the WDS connections to its Child APs, and the Child APs without wired connection will become unreachable.

## i) Rogue AP Detection

It is designed to detect the non-managed or possibly malicious AP in the deployed environment. It takes the managed APs as sensors to find the non-managed AP even if the AP uses the same SSID with managed AP's. It shows the AP's BSSID, ESSID, Type, Channel, Encryption, and report time.

- **General Config:** This configuration item contains the switch for turning on features within this tab page. i.e. **Rogue AP Detection** as well as an optional “Channel Switching” feature.
- **Sensor List Config:** This configuration item contains a listing of all currently managed APs under Wide Area AP Management. Administrator may select one or more APs as sensors to scan for rogue AP.
- **Trusted AP Config:** This configuration item allows the administrator to maintain a list of detected rogue APs and remark them as trusted AP.
- **Rogue AP List:** This window lists all the detected Rogue AP. Each rogue AP will be presented with relevant information such as its BSSID, Channel, Encryption, Report Time etc. From the radio buttons at the bottom of the window, the selected Rogue AP on this list can be added into the trusted list or deleted if it can be ignored.

### ▪ General Configuration

- **Scanning Interval:** The unit for this field is minute. Enter 0 to disable “Rogue AP Detection”. To enable “Rogue AP Detection”, please enter an integer ranging from 1 ~ 999 as the detection interval.

### ▪ Sensor List Config

- **AP Type:** The drop down menu will contain the manageable model type for selection. The managed APs of the selected model type will be listed in the scroll window below.

Administrator can check on one or more of the listed AP and click apply button at the bottom to designate these APs as scanners.

#### ▪ Trusted AP Config

- **BSSID:** Administrator can statically assign the BSSID of a known trusted AP in this list. If an AP is entered into this list but not managed yet is present in the environment, it will not show up in the Rogue AP device list.
- **Remark:** Administrator can type in a string of additional information that relates to the trusted AP on the list.

## j) AP Load Balancing

This is a function to prevent managed APs from overloading. When the system detects the occurrence of APs' associated-client numbers exceeding a predefined threshold and other APs in the same group are still below the threshold, the balancing function will be activated to decrease the overloading APs' transmit power and increase other available APs' transmit power; this will allow other available APs to have more chance of being associated. The system can divide the managed APs into groups; define the group threshold, and the time interval which will trigger the AP load balancing.

**LAPM Load Balancing**

Load Balancing: ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

Balance Interval:  minute(s)

Cluster:

**Device List**

Add to:   AP Type:

	Cluster	Device Name	MAC Address	IP Address	Power Level	Clients	Log
<input type="checkbox"/>	None	NEWDEV-00001	00:1F:D4:01:1C:80	192.168.10.1	Auto	Offline	<a href="#">View</a>

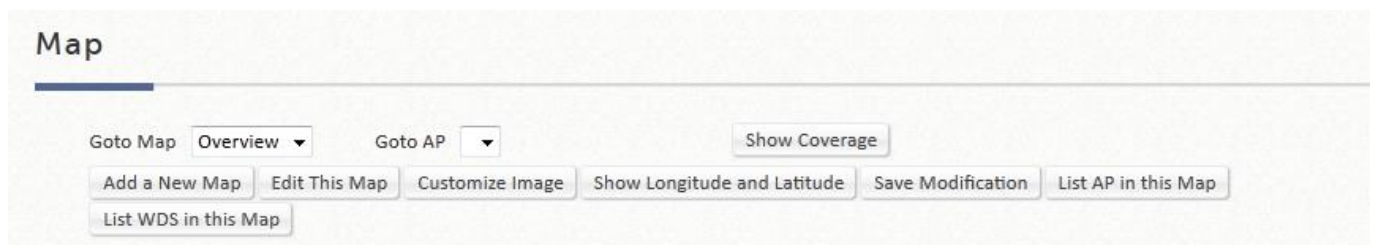
- **Load Balancing:** This configuration item enables the administrator to specify the criteria under which AP load balancing feature will be enforced.
- **Balance Interval:** The administrator specifies the time interval for which the system synchronizes the number of clients within the cluster.
- **Cluster:** This item when entered to its configuration page will display all the current AP groups and their status info.
- **Device List:** The scrollable window displays all the managed APs sorted by model name with relative

information such as Group, Name, MAC, IP, Power Lv, Loading, etc. The managed APs will have a Group column for indicating which AP group it belongs to for AP Load Balancing feature to be enforced.

## 2) Wide Area AP Management

### a) Map

Map shows the managed APs and their WDS links on Google Maps. It is a utility for wireless network planning and management.

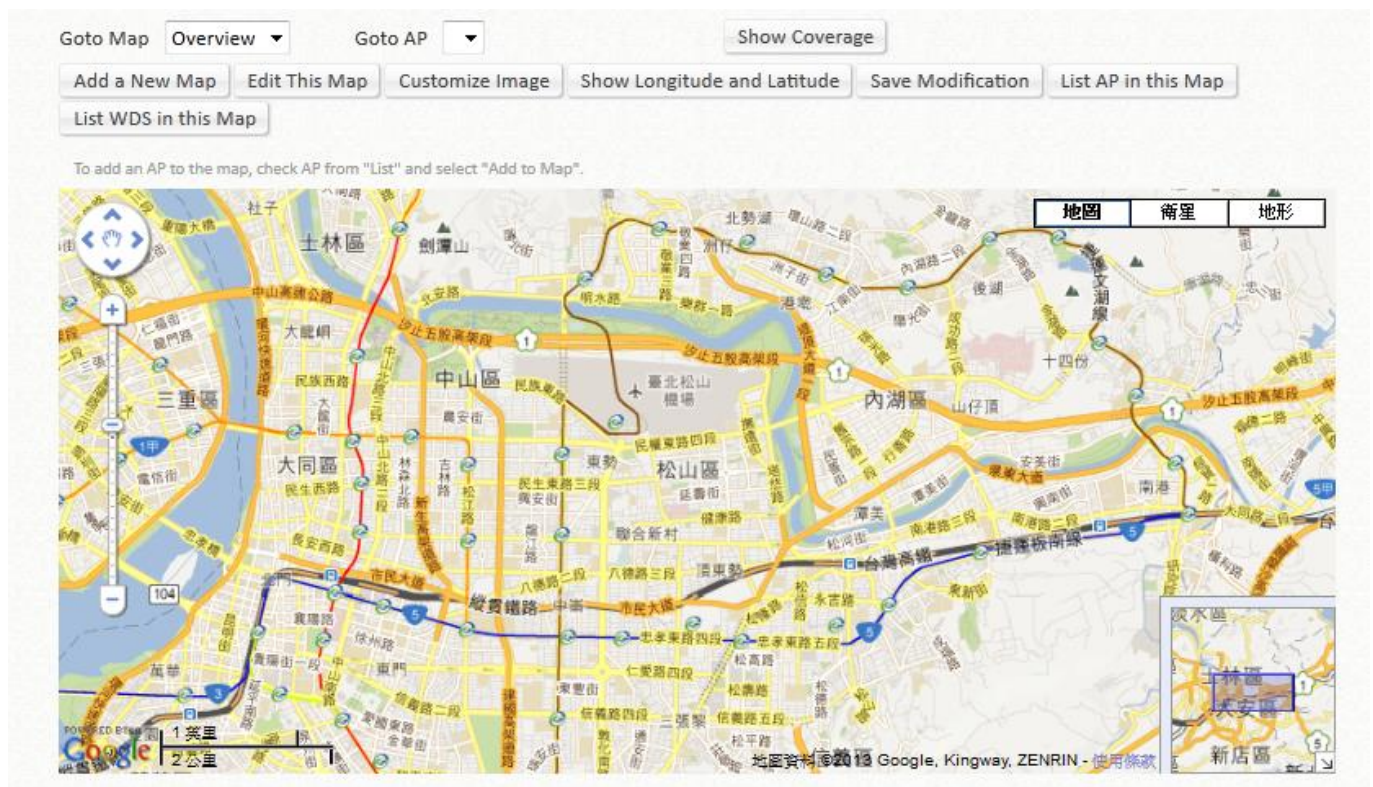


- **Goto Map:** When you have configured multiple map profiles, this function allows switching between different maps.
- **Goto AP:** This function is for administrator to select an AP on the list, and the map will shift to show the selected AP in the center of the map.
- **Show Coverage:** This button once pressed will display the signal coverage of all the APs on the map according to the coverage radius set in each AP's profile under **List** tab page.
- **Show Longitude and Latitude:** This function when pressed will display in a pop up window the longitude and latitude of the map's current center point.
- **Save Modification:** This function is for saving the changes made to the map and overwriting the maps' profile attributes. For instance if you have altered or panned the original map, clicking this button will save the changes made.
- **List AP in this Map:** Clicking this button will open a new page on your browser redirecting to the **List** tab page for displaying a list of APs in the Map.
- **List WDS in this Map:** Clicking this button will open a new page on your browser redirecting to the **WDS List** tab page for displaying a list of WDS links on the Map.
- **Delete this Map:** Delete the current map profile.
- **Add a New Map:** Click to add a new map profile.
- **Edit this Map:** Click to modify the current map's attribute settings.
- **Customize Image:** Administrator can upload desired images for each AP model that will be used as AP markers on the MAP.



The Map tab page is implemented with Google Map API version2 which allows administrators to view at a glance the whereabouts of all of the AP's under Wide Area AP Management. This feature is helpful when it comes to network planning and management.

Once the administrator has added APs to the managed list, these APs can be tagged or marked on the Google Map API to show its' geographical location, as shown below:



#### Procedure to create a Map:

- Step 1:** Get a Public IP Address from your ISP and configure this address to WAN interface.
- Step 2:** Apply for a Google Maps Registration key.
- Step 3:** Click **Add a New Map** button on the Map page. Configure Map Name and registration key.
- Step 4:** Discover APs and Add these APs to managed List.
- Step 5:** From the List page, add some APs to the created Map.

The necessary steps required to configure your map with AP information are described in the subsequent sections. Before starting to add a new map in wide-area AP management, it's necessary to sign up for a Google account or if the Google account is already available, this step can be skipped; this account will be used to apply for a Google Maps API v2 key. For details, please follow the instructions from Google at <https://developers.google.com/maps/documentation/javascript/v2/introduction> to obtain such Maps API v2 key and provide the key info into the field of **"Google Maps Registration Key"** under **Map Configuration page**.

tony.chen@cipherium.com.tw | [My favorites](#)

Google code


e.g. "ajax apis" or "open source"

★ **Google Maps JavaScript API V2 (Deprecated)** [Home](#) [Docs](#) [FAQ](#) [Articles](#) [Blog](#) [Forum](#) [Terms](#)

**What is the Google Maps Javascript API?**

Note: The Google Maps Javascript API Version 2 has been officially deprecated as of May 19, 2010. The V2 API will continue to work as per our [deprecation policy](#), but we encourage you to migrate your code to [version 3 of the Maps Javascript API](#).

The Google Maps API lets you embed Google Maps in your own web pages with JavaScript. The API provides a number of utilities for manipulating maps (just like on the <http://maps.google.com> web page) and adding content to the map through a variety of services, allowing you to create robust maps applications on your website.



**How Do I Start?**

1. [Sign up for a Google Maps API key.](#)
2. Read the [Maps API Developer's Guide](#).
3. Read the [Maps API Reference](#).
4. Join the [announcements](#) group to receive important updates.

Click on “**Sign up for a Google Maps API key**”.

**1. Your relationship with Google.**

1.1 Use of the Service is Subject to these Terms. Your use of any of the Google Maps/Google Earth APIs (referred to in this document as the “**Maps API(s)**” or the “**Service**”) is subject to the terms of a legal agreement between you and Google Inc., whose principal place of business is at 1600 Amphitheatre Parkway, Mountain View, California 94043, United States (“**Google**”). This legal agreement is referred to as the “**Terms**”.

1.2 The Terms include Google's [Legal Notices and Privacy Policy](#).

☒ I have read and agree with the terms and conditions ([printable version](#))

My web site URL:  Controller's WAN IP address

Tip: Signing up a key for <http://yourdomain.com> is usually the best practice, as it will work for all subdomains and directories. See this [FAQ](#) for more information.

Click the terms and conditions check box and fill in your WHG Controller's WAN IP address.

Google will generate an API key for your WHG Controller.

**Thank You for Signing Up for a Google Maps API Key!**

Your key is:

Note: for more information on the API key system, consult <http://code.google.com/apis/maps/faq.html#keysystem>.

How you use your key depends on what Maps API product or service you use. Your key is valid for use within the entire family of Google Maps API solutions. The following examples show how to use your key within the Maps API product family.

**JavaScript Maps API Example**

Within the JavaScript Maps API, place the key within the script tag when you load the API:

```

...
// Note: you will need to replace the sensor parameter below with either an explicit true or false value.
<script src="http://maps.google.com/maps?file=api&v=2&sensor=true_or_false&key=ABQIAAAAKf_mMpRETfZUaDr5paUTBTQNSXw9wit7VEiW-QmsIzRiVcN7BTEWPFVn
...

```

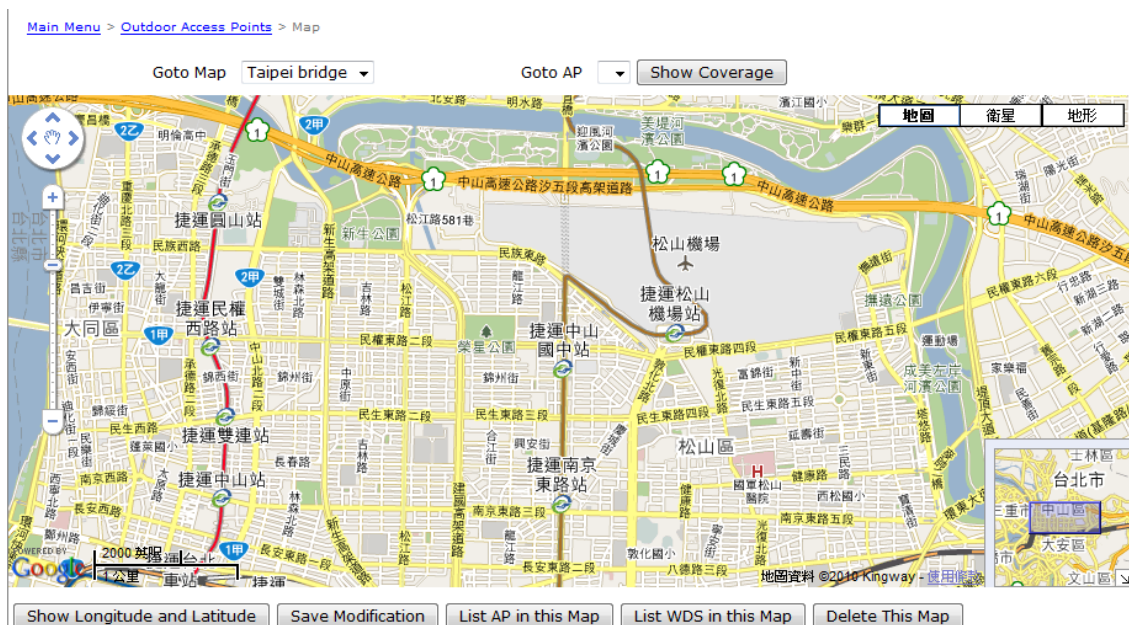
See [Loading the Maps API](#) in the JavaScript Maps API documentation for more information.

Now, return to the **Map** tab page in WHG Controller's WMI and Scroll down to the bottom of the page, click on the **Add a New Map** button.

## MAP Configuration

Map Name	Taipei Bridge
Latitude	25
Longitude	121
Google Maps Registration Key	AlzaSyDzjF1tWlf6158aJw7zGAX8YscY-L8Dtd8
Zoom Level	1
Map Type	Normal

An editing page will open for configuration, please fill in a **Map Name** for this map and its geographical location as defined by **Longitude** and **Latitude**, remember to also fill in the **Key** issued by Google. Finally choose the **Zoom Level** and **Map Type** and click the **Save** button.



The above screenshot is an example showing Taipei City with Map Name as Taipei Bridge, Zoom Level of 14 and Normal Map Type.

If you have several APs deployed and listed in **List** under Wide Area AP Management, their geographical location can be marked on a particular map.

Firstly, go to the **List** tab page and click on the **Edit** button of the AP's that you wish to mark on the map. In the AP configuration page, set the coordinates (**Latitude** and **Longitude**) of this AP and the radius of signal coverage.



Device : Enterprise\_Access\_Point\_-\_EAP260

Device Name
Enterprise\_Access\_Point\_-\_EAP260

SNMP Community
public

Latitude
0

Longitude
0

Remark

Radius of Coverage
0

Link 1

Name:

Description:

URL:

Link 2

Name:

Description:

URL:

Link 3

Name:

Description:

URL:

Fill in the coordinates where you wish to mark this particular AP. **Link 1 ~ Link 3** is for configuring a http link that will show up in the dialogue box on the map for referencing additional information related to this AP; for instance the IP address of a IP surveillance camera connected to this AP or the URL of the Venue Website where this AP is deployed.

Administrator can upload customized thumbnail images shown on the map. After configuring all the necessary settings and uploading your images, click **Apply** button and return to AP **List** page.

Check the AP's that you wish to mark on the map and click the "**Add to Map**" button, choose the name of the map on which you wish to mark these APs and click **OK** button.

AP List

Type
All

Status
All

Map
None

Tunnel
None

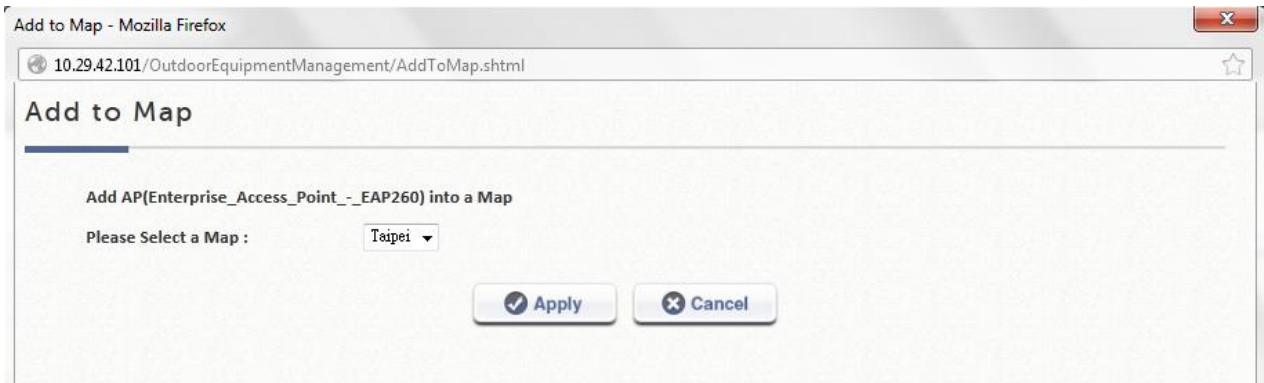
Add Delete **Add to Map** Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade

	Type	Name	IP	MAC	Status	# of Users	Tunnel Status	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP260	Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP260	10.29.43.131	00:1F:D4:01:DD:BC	Offline	0	<span style="color: green;">●</span> Edit	System Overview Go	N/A

(Total 1) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page 1

Row per Page 20

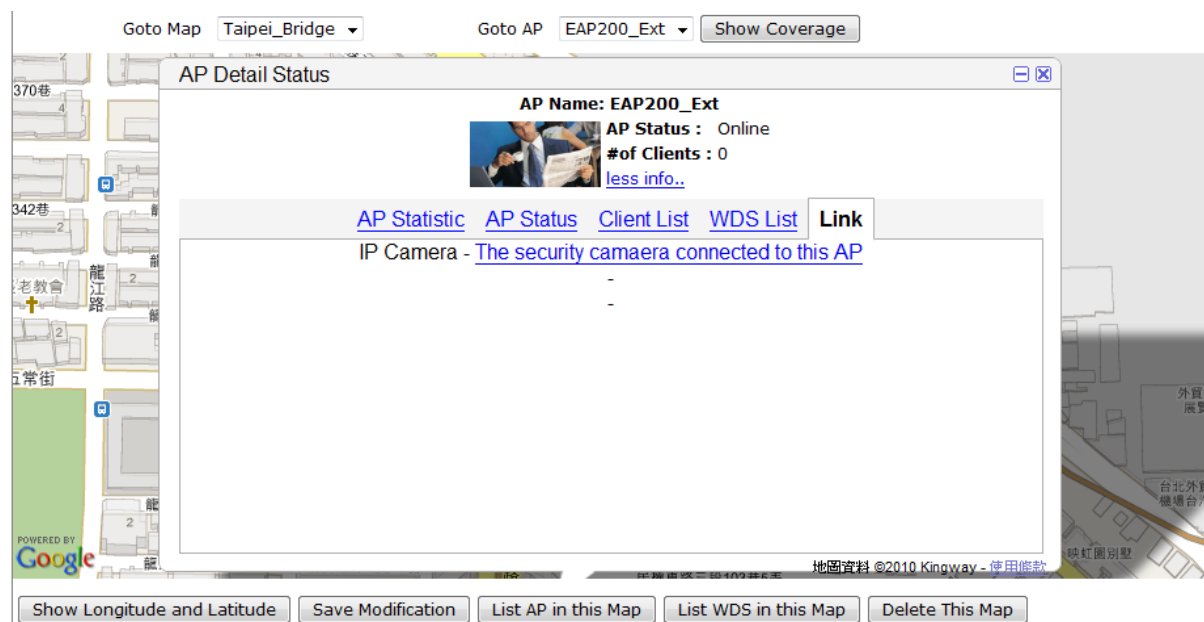




The selected APs will show up as marker images on the map at the physical coordinates configured, as shown below.



You can click on the AP icon to see the dialogue box for additional information or links that you have configured. Click the **more info** link for information on **AP status**, **Client List**, **WDS List** and **Links** related to this AP.



AP status, Client List and WDS List information listed are collected from the remote AP via SNMP.

## b) List

A list is to show the information of each managed AP, including Type, Name, IP Address, MAC Address, AP Online/ Offline Status, # of Users, tunnel Status, AP Firmware version, and Geographic location. Functions in this section also include the operations such as Delete, Add to Map, Backup Config, Restore Config, Upgrade, Applying Settings, and Reboot.



All of the supported APs under management of the system will be shown on the list. In the beginning, the list is empty. The administrator can add supported APs from the Discovery or Adding tabs. After APs are added, this list will show the current managed APs including AP type, AP name, IP Address, MAC Address, Status, number of Clients, Tunnel Status, AP Firmware Version, and geographic location. The administrator can Delete, Add to Map, Backup Config, Restore Config, Upgrade, Applying Settings, Reboot the managed AP by checking the check box in front of each individual AP or select all the APs together by checking the top check box.

AP List

Type: All  
Status: All  
Tunnel: None  
Name:  Search

Refresh Interval: 120 seconds Refresh

Add Delete Add to Map Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade Apply Settings Reboot

Type	Name	IP	MAC	Map	Template	Status	# of Users	Tunnel	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP	AP Ver.
EAP767	EAP767_TW	172.201.100.3	00:1F:D4:04:74:0F	Overview	30	Online	0	<div>System Overview</div> <div>Go</div>	RUN	1.20.00	

(Total 1) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 Row per Page 20

After adding APs to the managed List, some operations can be executed for managing the listed AP's.

- **Go:** The WHG Controller cannot directly configure Wide Area AP's settings remotely. However, the Goto button is a convenient link for accessing the remote AP's WMI.

Please note that the **Goto** button will only become active when the listed AP's status is Online.

AP List

Type: All  
Status: All  
Tunnel: None  
Name:  Search

Refresh Interval: 120 seconds Refresh

Add Delete Add to Map Backup Config Restore Config Upgrade Apply Settings Reboot

Type	Name	IP	MAC	Map	Template	Status	# of Users	Tunnel	AP Admin Web	CAPWAP	AP Ver.
EAP767	EAP767_TW	172.201.100.3	00:1F:D4:04:74:0F	Overview	30	Online	0	<div>System Overview</div> <div>Go</div>	RUN	1.20.00	
EAP767	Enterprise_Access_Point_-_EAP767	10.131.3.100	00:1F:D4:AB:82:0C	Overview	2	Online	0	<div>System Overview</div> <div>System Overview</div> <div>VAP Overview</div> <div>WDS Overview</div> <div>System Upgrade</div> <div>Reboot</div> <div>WDS Status</div> <div>Associated Clients</div> <div>Event Log</div>	RUN	1.20.00	

(Total 2) First Prev Next Last Go to Page 1 Row per Page 20

The drop down list on the column header is for specifying which WMI page to go to.


- **Edit (AP Name):** Click this button to enter the AP's attribute editing page where administrator can specify the Device Name and SNMP community. If the AP is to be marked on a map, this page also allows administrator to configure the geographical location, coverage, related links and customize marker or icon images that will be displayed on the map.
- **Edit (Tunnel Status):** Only applicable to EAP200 APs. Click this button to setup a secure tunnel between the WHG Controller and the listed EAP200. Once the tunnel has been established, the AP can be seen as logically connected under the WHG Controllers managed network and can be applied as a Service Zone.
- **Delete:** Remove the checked AP from the List.
- **Add to Map:** Clicking this button will open a popup window. Administrator can Mark the selected APs on the Map chosen from the drop down list. If no map profile has been configured, there will be no available map to choose in the drop down list.
- **Backup Config:** Clicking this button will open a popup window where administrator can backup the chosen AP's configuration settings into a .db file stored in the WHG Controller's memory. The Backup up files are listed under Backup Config tab page for download or deletion.
- **Restore Config:** Clicking this button will open a popup window where administrator can restore the chosen AP's configuration settings using a .db file stored locally in administrator PC or in the WHG Controller's memory.
- **Upgrade:** Clicking this button will open a popup window where administrator can upgrade the chosen AP's firmware using a firmware file stored locally in administrator PC or in the WHG Controller's memory (under **Firmware** tab page).
- **Apply Settings:** apply the already prepared WAPM templates to selected AP so as to implement some AP's configuration or change AP Admin's password for certain administration application.
- **Reboot:** clicking this button will restart the selected AP.

For VAPs which are tunneled back to the controller from remote APs, administrator may wish to allocate a NAS Identifier as well as designate an IP pool for service.

In the managed AP list in Wide Area AP Management, administrator can allocate NAS Identifier and designate an IP pool for service for each VAP of a Managed AP. This can be configured while establishing tunnels between AP and Controller.

Go to: **Main >> Access Points >> Wide Area AP Management >> List.**

(Total 1) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page  Row per Page

AP List									
Type		<input type="text" value="All"/>							
Status		<input type="text" value="All"/>							
Tunnel		<input type="text" value="None"/>							
<input type="checkbox"/>	Type	Name	IP MAC	Status # of Users	Tunnel Status	AP Admin Web	AP Attribute	CAPWAP	
1	<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP200	EAP200-1	192.168.1.1 00:1F:D4:00:55:94	<a href="#">Online</a> 0	 <a href="#">Edit</a>	System Overview <input type="text" value="Goto"/>	<a href="#">Edit</a>	N/A

(Total 1) [First](#) [Prev](#) [Next](#) [Last](#) Go to Page  Row per Page

[Delete](#)
[Add to Map](#)
[Backup Config](#)
[Restore Config](#)
[Upgrade](#)



### Enterprise\_Access\_Point\_-\_EAP260: VAP Status

Profile Name	ESSID	VLAN ID	Tunnel Port Location Mapping Setup	Mapped Service Zone
VAP-1	EAP260-1	1000	<a href="#">Configure</a>	Default <input type="text"/>



### Tunnel Port Location Mapping Setup

Service Zone / Prefer DHCP Pool

User Limitation  (Blank is for unlimited.)

ESSID

Room Number / Location ID

Room Description / Location Name

NAS Identifier

- **Service Zone / Prefer DHCP Pool:** This field entry shows the SZ to which this VAP will be tunneled to. Preferred DHCP pool allows the admin to specify the IP pool allocated to issuing IP to clients in this VAP.
- **User Limitation:** Administrator can specify the number of clients which can be allocated an IP address for service from this VAP.
- **ESSID:** The ESSID of this VAP is displayed here.
- **Room Number / Location ID:** Administrator can input a string of text describing the location ID of this VAP.
- **Room Description/ Location Name:** Administrator can input a string of text describing the location name of this VAP.
- **NAS Identifier:** Administrator can assign an additional NAS ID to be coupled with this VAP if necessary.

## c) Discovery

This Discovery function is to detect the supported types of APs through Internet or Intranet. The discovered AP can be added into managed devices, and automatically assigned the SNMP read community string, which will be used for periodical status collection. To Discover APs, click **Add** from the AP List and select **Discovery** from the Add Method dropdown list.

When the administrator tries to discover a new AP, select the Device Type. Second, enter the current IP range of the APs; Login ID and Password. Then click Discovery button. If the new AP is discovered, it will appear in the following Discovery Results list.

- **Start / End IP address:** Administrator needs to specify the IP address range for AP discovery, and the specified IP address can be external or internal network IP addresses. This is useful when scanning for multiple devices connected to the managed network. APs with an IP address that is not within the specified range will not be listed after discovery.
- **Login ID / Password:** Filling in the Login ID and Password of the target AP's management interface will allow the administrator to remotely configure the AP's SNMP community.
- **Discover:** When the administrator tries to discover a new AP, select the **Device Type**. Second, enter the current IP range of the APs, **Login ID** and **Password**. Then click **Discover** button. If the new AP is discovered, it will appear in the following Discovery Results list. The administrator may stop the controller from scanning at any time during the discovery process.
- **Device Results:** The discovery new APs will be listed here. The administrator can click **Add** to register the APs to the List for management.

When the discovery process is complete, the APs found will be listed under the **Device Results** table. Here the administrator can specify the individual AP's **Device Name** and SNMP **Community** string. Click the Add

button and the discovered APs will be added into **List**.

## d) Adding

The Adding function is used to manually set up an AP via filling in the required information for that AP.

Besides the **Discovery** feature that can search and list multiple APs for adding to the management list, administrators can also select **Add an AP** to directly add a single Access Point to the management list. Simply configure the devices IP address, name and login credentials, set a SNMP community string and click the **Apply** button.

The administrator can add supported APs onto the List table manually here. A manually added AP will show up with a status of "offline" in the AP List initially. The system will attempt to connect to the AP by SNMP protocol. After successful SNMP Reads, the manually added AP will become online.

- **Device Type:** The device type of Wide Area APs.
- **Device IP:** The IP address of the AP to add to the management list.
- **Device Name:** The mnemonic name given to this AP device.
- **Login ID:** The Device's management interface login name.
- **Password:** The Device's management interface login password.
- **SNMP Community:** The SNMP Read Community string used for status access.

## e) Template

Configuration with templates is supported on selectable AP Models. Currently, WAPM Template is only available on:

EAP210, EAP220, EAP320, EAP430, EAP701, EAP717, EAP727, EAP757, EAP760, EAP767, OWL530, OWL620, and OWL630.

### Template AP Setting

Select Template	Template1 ▼
Country Code	USA ▼
General Settings	Configure
VAP Configuration	Configure
Security Settings	Configure
Advanced Wireless Settings	Configure
Hotspot 2.0 Settings	Configure

Select a country code depending on the firmware version on your Access Point. This dynamically changes the available channels on your access point.

➤ **General Settings**



## General Settings - Template1

RF Card Name	RF CARD A ▼
Band	802.11g+802.11n ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> Pure 11n
Short Preamble	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable
Channel Width	20 MHz ▼
Channel	6 ▼
Max Transmit Rate	Auto ▼
Transmit Power	Level 1 ▼
ACK Timeout	0 <small>*(0 - 255, 0:Auto, Unit:4 micro seconds)</small>
Beacon Interval	100 millisecond(s) <small>*(100 - 500ms)</small>
Airtime Fairness	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Fair Access <input type="radio"/> Preferred Access
Packet Delay Threshold	1000 millisecond(s) <small>*(100 - 5000ms, 0:Disable)</small>
Idle Timeout	300 second(s) <small>*(Larger than 15)</small>
Band Steering	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable <input type="checkbox"/> Aggressive
Interference Detection	For 802.11 a/b/g/n RF card ▼
Adjacent Channel	
Utilization Threshold	0 % <small>*(60 - 99, 0:Disable)</small>
Latency	10 second(s) <small>*(10 - 999)</small>
Co-Channel	
Utilization Threshold	0 % <small>*(60 - 99, 0:Disable)</small>
Invalid Packet Rate	90 % <small>*(60 - 99)</small>
Latency	10 second(s) <small>*(10 - 999)</small>
WME Configuration	Configure
Transmission Rate Threshold	0 kbps <small>*(0:Disable)</small>

- **RF Card Name:** Select an RF Card for your AP.
- **Band:** Depending on the AP model template you are editing, there are different modes to select, **802.11a**, **802.11b**, **802.11g**, **802.11a+802.11n**, **802.11b+802.11g**, **802.11g+802.11n** and **802.11ac**.
- **Short Preamble:** The short preamble with a 56-bit synchronization field can improve WLAN transmission efficiency. Select *Enable* to use Short Preamble or *Disable* to use Long Preamble with a 128-bit synchronization field.
- **Channel Width (802.11g+n, 802.11a+n and 802.11ac only):** Choose between 20MHz, 40MHz or Auto. Doubling channel bandwidth to 40 MHz is supported to enhance throughput. 80MHz is available

for selection in 802.11ac mode.

- **Channel:** Select the appropriate *channel* from the drop-down menu to correspond with your network settings.
- **Max Transmit Rate:** The default is set to **Auto**. Available range is from 1 to 54Mbps. The rate of data transmission should be set depending on the speed of the wireless network. Select from a range of transmission speed or keep the default setting, **Auto**, to allow the Access Point to automatically use the fastest rate possible. For 802.11n the selectable data rates range from MCS0 to MCS15, and for 802.11ac, select data rates up to MCS9.
- **Transmit Power:** On select AP models, the signal strength transmitted from the system can be selected by Levels. Each level signifies a decrement of 1 dBm from the highest power. **Level 1** is the actual highest power, **Level 2** is the highest power minus 1 dBm, so on and so forth.
- **Beacon Interval (ms):** Enter a value between 20 and 1000 msec. The default value is 100 milliseconds. The entered time means how often the beacon signal is transmitted between the access point and the wireless network.
- **ACK Timeout:** The time interval for waiting for the "acknowledgement (ACK) frame". If the ACK is not received within the interval then the packet will be re-transmitted. Higher ACK Timeout interval will decrease the packet lost, but the throughput will be decreased/worsened.
- **Airtime Fairness:** When set to "Fair Access", this feature ensures all devices with different band compatibilities have the same air time. When set to "Preferred Access", N clients are prioritized. This feature is ideal for networks with devices supporting different bands.
- **Packet Delay Threshold (ms):** This is the Tx Queue flushing mechanism, which purpose is to drop packets and immediately process others if the queue has been processed for more than x milliseconds. This is disabled by default (=0).
- **Idle Timeout (s):** Clients disconnects when inactivity reaches the configured amount of time in seconds, where default = 300s.
- **Band Steering:** When enabled, clients with 5GHz connectivity will be steered towards the 5GHz band to reduce congestion in the 2.4GHz band. This is applicable only when the AP is set to 2.4GHz and 5GHz on the 2 RF Cards. When "Aggressive" is checked, clients with 5GHz connectivity are forced to connect to the 5GHz band.
- **Interference Detection:** When utilization of the current channel reaches the configured threshold (in %), the AP switches to a different Channel.
- **Transmission Rate Threshold:** The associated client will be kicked when transmission rate is lower than the configured threshold. This ensures high connection speed for all associated clients.
- **WME Configuration:** Access priority can be configured using with different parameters. CW Min: Contention Window Minimum, CW Max: Contention Window Maximum, AIFS: Arbitration Inter Frame Spacing, TXOP Limit: Transmission Opportunity Limit.

## ➤ VAP Configuration

## VAP Configuration - Template1

Profile Name	RF Card A : VAP-1 ▼
VAP	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable
Profile Name	<input type="text"/>
ESSID	<input type="text"/>
VLAN ID	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable
VLAN ID	<input type="text"/> *( 1 - 4094 ) The VLAN ID would not be applied if this VAP is encapsulated in CAPWAP data tunnel
CAPWAP Tunnel Interface	<input type="checkbox"/>

- **VAP:** *Enable* or *Disable* this VAP.
- **Profile Name:** The profile name of a specific RF card and its VAP for identity / management purposes.
- **ESSID:** ESSID (Extended Service Set ID) serves as an identifier for clients to associate with the specific VAP. It can be coupled with different service levels like a variety of wireless security types.
- **VLAN ID:** The 4ipnet Access Point supports tagged VLANs (virtual LANs). To enable VLAN function, each VAP shall be given a unique VLAN ID with valid values ranging from 1 to 4094. Once VLAN is Enabled, QoS is supported on the VAP.
- **CAPWAP Tunnel Interface:** Select Checkbox to designate traffic for the VAP to pass through CAPWAP Tunnel established between the AP and the controller. When CAPWAP Tunnel Interface is checked, you may then select the Service Zone to be mapped to this VAP.

### ➤ Security Settings

## Security Settings - Template1

Profile Name	RF Card A : VAP-1 ▼
Security Type	<div> Open ▼ <div> Open WEP 802.1X WPA-Personal WPA-Enterprise </div> </div>
	<input checked="" type="button" value="Apply"/> <input type="button" value="Cancel"/>

Select the desired **Security Type** from the drop-down menu, which includes **Open**, **WEP**, **802.1X**, **WPA-Personal**, and **WPA-Enterprise**.

### ➤ Advanced Wireless Settings

## Advanced Wireless Settings - Template1

Profile Name	RF Card A : VAP-1 ▼	
RTS Threshold	2346	*(1 - 2346)
DTIM period	1	*(1 - 15)
Consecutive Retries Threshold	5	*(2 - 50, 0:Disable)
Broadcast SSID	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
Wireless Station Isolation	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
WMM	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
IAPP	<input type="radio"/> Disable <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable	
Multicast-to-Unicast Conversion	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Disable <input type="radio"/> Enable	
Multicast/Broadcast Rate	5.5M ▼	
Management Frame Rate	5.5M ▼	
Receiving RSSI Threshold	0	*(0 - 100, 0:disable)

- **RTS Threshold:** Enter a value between 1 and 2346. RTS (Request to Send) Threshold determines the packet size at which the system issues a request to send (RTS) before sending the fragment to prevent the hidden node problem. The RTS mechanism will be activated if the data size exceeds the value provided. A lower RTS Threshold setting can be useful in areas where many client devices are associating with the AP or in areas where the clients are far apart and can detect only the AP but not each other.
- **Fragmentation Threshold (802.11a, 802.11b and 802.11g Modes):** Enter a value between 256 and 2346. A packet size larger than this threshold will be fragmented (sent with several pieces instead of one chunk) before transmission. A smaller value results in smaller frames but allows a larger number of frames in transmission. A lower Fragment Threshold setting can be useful in areas where communication is poor or disturbed by a serious amount of radio interference.
- **DTIM Period:** Input the DTIM Interval that is generated within the periodic beacon at a specified frequency. Higher DTIM will allow the wireless client to save more energy, but the throughput will be lowered.
- **Consecutive Retries Threshold:** This is the maximum number of transmission retries the AP will attempt when packet transmission is dropped before deciding the client is out of transmission reach. When transmission retries fails for the set number of times, the Access Point kicks the client to optimize performance for other connected clients.
- **Broadcast SSID:** Disabling this function will stop the system from broadcasting its SSID. If broadcast of the SSID is disabled, only devices that have the correct SSID can connect to the system.
- **Wireless Station Isolation:** By enabling this function, all stations associated with the system are isolated and can only communicate with the system.
- **WMM:** The default is *Disable*. Wi-Fi Multimedia (WMM) is a Quality of Service (QoS) feature that prioritizes wireless data packets based on four access categories: voice, video, best effort, and background.

Applications without WMM and applications that do not require QoS are assigned to the best-effort category, which receives a lower priority than that of voice and video. Therefore, WMM decides which data streams are more important and assigns them a higher traffic priority. This option works with WMM-capable clients only.

**<To receive the benefits of WMM QoS>**

- The application must support WMM.
- WMM shall be enabled on the Access Point.
- WMM shall be enabled in the wireless adapter on client's computer.
- **IAPP:** IAPP (Inter Access Point Protocol) is a protocol by which access points share information about the stations connected to them. When this function is enabled, the system will automatically broadcast information of associated wireless stations to its peer access points. This will help wireless stations roam smoothly among IAPP-enabled access points in the same wireless LAN.
- **Multicast-to-Unicast Conversion:** When Multicast-to-Unicast Conversion is enabled, the Access Point intelligently forwards traffic only to those ports that request multicast traffic. Adversely, when disabled, multicast traffic is treated like broadcast traffic, with packets forwarded to all ports causing network inefficiencies.
- **Multicast/Broadcast Rate:** Bandwidth configuration for multicast/broadcast packets. If your wireless clients require a larger or smaller bandwidth for sending multicast/ broadcast packets, the administrator can customize the Access Point's multicast/ broadcast bandwidth here.
- **Management Frame Rate:** This feature controls the bandwidth for Management Frames. The higher the rate it, the shorter range the transmission covers
- **Receiving RSSI Threshold:** To ensure connected stations have quality connection speeds, a station will not be able to associate to the network unless its receiving sensitivity meets the configured threshold.

## f) WDS List

This list is to show the information of each WDS link configured in the managed AP, including Peer AP, Band, Channel, Security, TX Power, Link Speed, SNR, TX Bytes, TX Packets, STP and Status.

WDS List										
Peer AP	Band	Channel	Security	TX Power	Link Speed	SNR	TX Bytes	TX Packets	STP	STATUS
EAP300-10_0_5_150	ng	1	WEP	17 dBm	129M	68	10175524	14752	Forwarding	Active
00:1F:D4:77:66:56									Disabled	
EAP300-10_0_5_91		1	WEP		129M	66	3283	76	Forwarding	Active
00:1F:D6:67:93:01									Disabled	

The WDS link if established between APs listed on **List** will be listed here with related information such as the Band and Channel of the link, Security settings if any and the Transmit Power, Byte, Packets etc.



## g) Backup Config

Backed up Config files can be used to restore an AP's settings in **List**. When administrator backs up an AP's configuration settings, all the backup files are listed on the **Backup Config** tab page and can be downloaded to a local storage device or deleted from WHG Controller's memory.

Backup Config						
<input type="button" value="Delete"/>						
<input type="checkbox"/>	Device Type	Version	Size	Backup Time	File Name	Actions
<input type="checkbox"/>	EAP260	1.21.00	39947	2013/02/21 17:55:22	EAP260	<input type="button" value="Download"/>

## h) Firmware

The WHG Controller can store AP's firmware in its' built-in memory. Under the **Firmware** tab page administrator can upload new AP firmware to the WHG Controller's memory allowing for easy remote AP upgrade and restore operations from the AP **List** page. The AP firmware listed under this page can be downloaded or deleted from WHG Controller memory if desired.

AP Firmware List					
<input type="button" value="Add..."/> <input type="button" value="Delete"/>					
<input type="checkbox"/>	File Name	Device Type	Version	Size	Actions

## i) CAPWAP

CAPWAP is a standard interoperable protocol that enables a WHG Controller to manage a collection of wireless access points.



Main > Device Management > Wide Area AP Management > CAPWAP

## CAPWAP Configuration

CAPWAP Status	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
Apply Certificate to APs	DEFAULT ▼
Trusted Certificate Authority(CA)	DEFAULT ▼
IP Address For Control Channel	100.64.145.254 *Netmask:255.255.254.0
Control Channel IP Range	100.64.144.1 ~ 100.64.145.253 *Number of IPs:509

- **CAPWAP Status:** The configuration status of CAPWAP function. Click **Enable** to turn on the Access WHG Controller to allow CAPWAP supported AP's to automatically add to the managed AP List.
- **Apply Certificate to APs:** This configuration item allows the administrator to select which of the certificates will be used during CAPWAP negotiation between AC and AP. If the certificate selected is invalid, the negotiation will be unsuccessful and the AP will not be automatically added in the managed List.
- **Trusted Certificate Authority (CA):** This configuration item allows the administrator to select a Trust CA to validate the certificate used for CAPWAP.
- **IP Address For Control Channel:** The IP address for AC side to negotiate the split tunnel AP over the other side of control channel. The netmask size will be automatically set according to the maximum number of managed APs.
- **Control Channel IP Range** The IP pool for assigning to AP side, establishing the control channel to communicate. The number of IPs is defined by default netmask 255.255.255.0
- **Access Controller IP List:** The AC can statically designate other CAPWAP supported ACs as backup AC for CAPWAP APs in case it can no longer provide service. The number designates the priority of these backup ACs to the AP, in the event that the original AC is down, the AP will first attempt to join the No. 1 backup AC and so on.

## j) Rogue AP Detection

It is designed to detect the non-managed or possibly malicious AP in the deployed environment. It takes the managed APs as sensors to find the non-managed AP even if the AP uses the same SSID with managed AP's. It shows the AP's BSSID, ESSID, Type, Channel, Encryption, and found time.

### General Configuration

Rogue AP Detection

☒ Enable
 ☐ Disable

Apply

Scanning Interval

minutes

Channel Switching

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable

Sensor List

Configure

Trusted APs

Configure

### Rogue AP List

Add to Trusted AP List

Delete

ESSID

Search

	No	Rogue AP BSSID	ESSID	Type	Channel	Encryption	Report Time
(Total:0) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: <input type="text" value="10"/>							

## k) AP Load Balancing

This is a function to prevent managed APs from overloading. When the system detects the occurrence of APs' associated-client numbers exceeding a predefined threshold and other APs in the same group are still below the threshold, the balancing function will be activated to decrease the overloading APs' transmit power and increase other available APs' transmit power; this will allow other available APs to have more chance of being associated. The system can divide the managed APs into groups; define the group threshold, and a time interval which will trigger the AP load balancing.

Wide Area AP Management feature also supports the grouping of various managed APs and perform transmit power management to spread the network load as evenly as possible among APs of the same group.

### WAPM Load Balancing

Load Balancing ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

AP Distance  meter(s)

Interval  minute(s)

Threshold ☒ Number of Clients  clients

☐ Number of Packets

Cluster

### Device List

AP Type

Cluster	Device Name	MAC Address	IP Address	Power Level	Loading	Log
---------	-------------	-------------	------------	-------------	---------	-----

- **WAPM Load Balancing:** This configuration item enables the administrator to specify the criteria under which AP load balancing feature will be enforced.
- **AP Distance:** This parameter allows the administrator to specify the distance which will be used as a measure of grouping managed APs. The unit is in meters, the administrator can configure an integer ranging from 0 ~ 999 where 0 signifies that the function is Disabled. APs which are distanced within the configured distance from one another will be regarded as the same group.
- **Interval:** This parameter allows the administrator to specify a time interval when the controller will check the loading of each APs in the same group and initiate load balancing if necessary.
- **Threshold:** This parameter allows the administrator to select between client loading **Number of Client** or traffic loading **Number of Packets** as the measure of an AP's system load. Administrator can specify the system threshold which will initiate the load balancing mechanism.
- **Cluster:** This item when entered to its configuration page will display all the current AP groups and their status info.
- **Device List:** The scrollable window display all the managed APs sorted by model name with relative information such as Group, Name, MAC, IP, Power Lv, Loading, etc. The managed APs will have a Group column for indicating which AP group it belongs to for AP Load Balancing feature to be enforced.

## I) Third Party AP Management

Add a third party AP by selecting THIRDPAP from Device Type. Add to AP List manually by specifying third party AP's IP address, Name, and VLAN ID. Click **Add** to finish adding and check lists to List icon.

Add Method Add an AP ▾

### Add an AP

---

Device Type 3rd Party AP ▾

Device IP 192.168.1.1 \*

Device Name ThirdAP001 \*

VLAN ID 1 ▾ \*

To check and manage the List of third Party AP; go to: **Access Points >> Enter Wide Area AP Management >>**

#### List.

Manage this third party AP from the Type Lists. Edit its AP Attribute and Administration from the column.

Go to Map icon. The added third party AP could also be placed on Google Map features and all map functions.

## D. Switches

**Switches:** This section is used to configure all Switch Management related settings.

### 1) Switch List

The WHG Controller is capable of managing the 4ipnet SW1024 switch. Switches under management of the system will be shown on this list.

### Switch List

---

Status All ▾

Add Delete Restart Backup Restore

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	Type	Status	IP address	MAC address	Total allocated/Used/Max supply power [W]	Switch UI
--------------------------	------	------	--------	------------	-------------	---	-----------

The Switch's name will be shown as a hyperlink. Click the hyperlink of each managed SW1024 for further configuration (General Setting, PoE Setting, VLAN Membership Setting, Port Setting, Poe Schedule) on the switch.

Click the hyperlink of the shown Status of each managed AP for detailed status information of the AP (General Setting, PoE Setting, VLAN Membership Setting, Port Setting, Poe Schedule).

- **Add:** The “Add” function is used to set up a switch via filling in the required information. After the switch is added to the List, the switch's status will display "online" or "offline".
- **Delete:** Select the switches you wish to remove from the list by clicking the corresponding checkboxes

followed by the Delete button.

- **Restart:** Select the switches you wish to reboot from the list by clicking the corresponding checkboxes followed by the Restart button.
- **Backup:** The “Backup” button saves the configuration .db file for the switch on the controller. This file can be used for restoring settings on a switch.
- **Restore:** When a Backup configuration file is saved on the controller, check the checkbox for the switch and click the “Restore” button to restore settings on a switch.

## 2) PoE Schedule Template

The system supports up to a number of PoE Schedule Templates depending on your WHG model.

PoE Schedule Template

Add template

Template Name	Copy Settings From	Remark	Action
Default	NONE		

The first template is the default template and cannot be deleted. The Template Name may be customized for easy reference (eg. Switch-Core1).

Click "Configure", illustrated by the pencil icon, to enter settings for the Template. The following can be set on the PoE Schedule Template:

- Power Supply Schedule

### Template Edit - Power supply schedule : Template\_2

	Day	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sun	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Mon	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Tue	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Wed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Thu	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Fri	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	Sat	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

- Apply to: The band, channel width, transmit power and etc.

## Apply to

Refresh

Switch Name ▼

<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	PoE Mode	Connected Device	<input type="checkbox"/>	Port	PoE Mode	Connected Device
<input type="checkbox"/>	1			<input type="checkbox"/>	13		
<input type="checkbox"/>	2			<input type="checkbox"/>	14		
<input type="checkbox"/>	3			<input type="checkbox"/>	15		
<input type="checkbox"/>	4			<input type="checkbox"/>	16		
<input type="checkbox"/>	5			<input type="checkbox"/>	17		
<input type="checkbox"/>	6			<input type="checkbox"/>	18		
<input type="checkbox"/>	7			<input type="checkbox"/>	19		
<input type="checkbox"/>	8			<input type="checkbox"/>	20		
<input type="checkbox"/>	9			<input type="checkbox"/>	21		
<input type="checkbox"/>	10			<input type="checkbox"/>	22		
<input type="checkbox"/>	11			<input type="checkbox"/>	23		
<input type="checkbox"/>	12			<input type="checkbox"/>	24		

If there is an existing managed switch online and you would like the same settings to be applied to newly added switches, choose from the drop-down list under "Copy Settings From" and click "Apply".

Additional remarks can be added to the Remark section for administrators' reference.

## 3) Backup Configuration

The list gives an overview of the backed up configurations. Administrators may download the configuration file for restoration. Or check the checkboxes to delete the selected configuration files.

## Backup Configuration

Delete

<input type="checkbox"/>	Device Type	Size	Backup time	File Name	Action
--------------------------	-------------	------	-------------	-----------	--------

## E. Network

**Network:** This section is used to configure all the network settings.



## 1) NAT

The NAT function supports 3 types of network address translation: DMZ (Demilitarized Zone), Public Accessible Server and IP/Port Forwarding.

### Demilitarized Zone

#### DMZ (Demilitarized Zone)

**WAN Assignment**  
 Select this function to assign the WAN1 IP of the system as the External IP Address. This feature is designed for PPPoE or Dynamic WAN when the External IP Address changes as the WAN1 IP Address changes.

☐ Assign WAN IP automatically

External Interface

WAN1

External IP Address

10.30.40.45

Internal IP Address

Remark

#### Static Assignments

No.	External IP Address	External Interface	Internal IP Address	Remark
1		WAN1 ▼		
2		WAN1 ▼		
3		WAN1 ▼		
4		WAN1 ▼		

The system supports specific sets of Internal IP address (LAN) to External IP address (WAN) mapping in the Static Assignments. The External IP Address of the Automatic WAN IP Assignment is the IP address of External Interface (WAN1) that will change dynamically if WAN1 Interface is Dynamic. When **Assign WAN IP Automatically** is checked, the entered Internal IP Address under will be bound to the WAN1 interface. Each **Static Assignment** could be bound with the chosen External Interface, WAN1 or WAN2. There are specific sets of static **Internal IP Address** and **External IP Address** available. **Internal** and **External** IP Addresses are entered as a set. After the setup, accessing the WAN will be mapped to access the Internal IP Address. These settings will become effective immediately after clicking the **Apply** button.

### Public Accessible Servers

### Public Accessible Server

Enable	No.	External Port	Local Server IP Address	Local Server Port	Type	Remark
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	8	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	9	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
<input type="checkbox"/>	10	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>

Public Accessible Servers allow the administrator to set virtual servers, so that client devices outside the managed network can access these servers within the managed network. Different virtual servers can be configured for different sets of physical services, such as TCP and UDP services in general. Enter the “**External Service Port**”, “**Local Server IP Address**” and “**Local Server Port**”. Select “**TCP**” or “**UDP**” for the service’s type. In the **Enable** column, check the desired server to enable. These settings will become effective immediately after clicking the **Apply** button.

### Port & IP Forwarding

## Port and IP Forwarding

No.	Destination		Translated to Destination		Type	Remark
	IP Address	Port	IP Address	Port		
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
5	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
6	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
7	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
8	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
9	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>
10	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> TCP <input type="radio"/> UDP	<input type="text"/>

This function allows the administrator to set specific sets of the IP addresses at most for redirection purpose. When the user attempts to connect to a destination IP address listed here, the connection packet will be converted and redirected to the corresponding destination. Please enter the **“IP Address”** and **“Port”** of **Destination**, and the **“IP Address”** and **“Port”** of **Translated to Destination**. Select **“TCP”** or **“UDP”** for the service's type. These settings will become effective immediately after clicking **Apply**.

## 2) Monitor IP

Multiple IP addresses can be defined in the Monitor IP function. System can monitor these IP based network devices and periodically report online status via email based on a configurable interval. These monitored devices can be accessed via HTTP or HTTPS connection. The management interface of the monitored device can be accessed via a hyperlink of device's IP address when the system is operated under NAT mode.

## Monitor IP List

No.	Protocol	IP Address	Hyperlink	Remark
1	http ▼	192.168.1.1	<input type="button" value="Delete"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	http ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Create"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	http ▼	<input type="text"/>	<input type="button" value="Create"/>	<input type="text"/>

### 3) Walled Garden and Walled Garden Ad

This function provides certain free services for users to access the websites listed here before login and authentication. Specific addresses or domain names of the websites can be defined in this list. Users without the network access right can still have a chance to experience the actual network service free of charge. Enter the website **IP Address** or **Domain Name** in the list and click **Apply** to save the settings. The Walled Garden List can be backed up or restored.

**Walled Garden List**

200 entries can be added to the Walled Garden List.  
40 advertisement entries can be displayed on the user login page.

No.	Domain Name/IP Address/URL	Walled Garden / Advertisement
(Total:0/200) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> Go to Page <input type="text"/> (Page:1/1)           Row per Page: <input type="text" value="50"/>		

**Walled Garden Advertisements** are advertisement links for clients to access before they are authenticated by the system. For example, guests without the network access right in hotels can still visit these sites free of charge.

The system supports up to 200 Walled Garden entries, and 40 of the 200 can be selected as Walled Garden Advertisements.

**Add Walled Garden List**

Domain Name/IP Address/URL: <input type="text"/>	
<b>Walled Garden</b> Active: <input type="checkbox"/> Service Zone: <input type="text" value="All"/> Remark: <input type="text"/>	<b>Advertisement</b> Display: <input type="checkbox"/> Protocol: <input type="text" value="http"/> Topic: <input type="text"/> Description: <input type="text"/>

- Click **Add** to add a new entry. Enter the Domain Name/IP Address/URL and select the “Active” checkbox. Click **Apply**, and the items will be added and shown on the list.
- Display:** Choose **Display** to display advertisement hyperlinks on the login pages

Note that entries selected as Walled Garden Ad must be a URL and cannot be an IP address with prefix.

## **4) VPN**

On this tab, 2 types of VPN are available on the system: Remote VPN, and Site-to-Site VPN. For Remote VPN, the system allows the VPN tunnel between a remote client and the system to encrypt the data transmission via PPTP. For the Site-to-Site VPN, an IPSec tunnel can be used to connect to other IPSec capable device over the Internet.

## Remote VPN

### Function

☐ Enable ☒ Disable

☐ Activate SIP WAN Interface: WAN1

### Allocate IP Address from

172.29.0.1

### Group Permission

Configure

### Remote VPN Login Page

Configure

### WISPr

Configure

### Authentication Options

Auth Option	Auth Database	Postfix	Enable
Server 1	LOCAL	lolo	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 2	RADIUS	.	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 3	NTDOMAIN	ntdomain	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 4	LDAP	ldap	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Server 5	POP3	pop3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

## Site-to-Site VPN

### Local Sites

Add... Delete

	No.	Local Host/Subnet	Local Interface	Remote VPN Gateway	Remote Host/Subnet	Test Tunnel to Remote IP
--	-----	-------------------	-----------------	--------------------	--------------------	--------------------------

### Remote Sites

Add... Delete

	No.	Name	IP Address	Pre-shared Key
--	-----	------	------------	----------------

✓ Apply

✗ Cancel

## 5) Proxy Server

The system provides a Built-in Proxy Server and External Proxy Server function. After successful authentication, the clients' will be directed back to the desired proxy servers.

Basically, a proxy server can help clients access the network resources more quickly. This section presents basic examples for configuring the proxy server settings of the WHG CONTROLLER.



### Web Proxy Settings

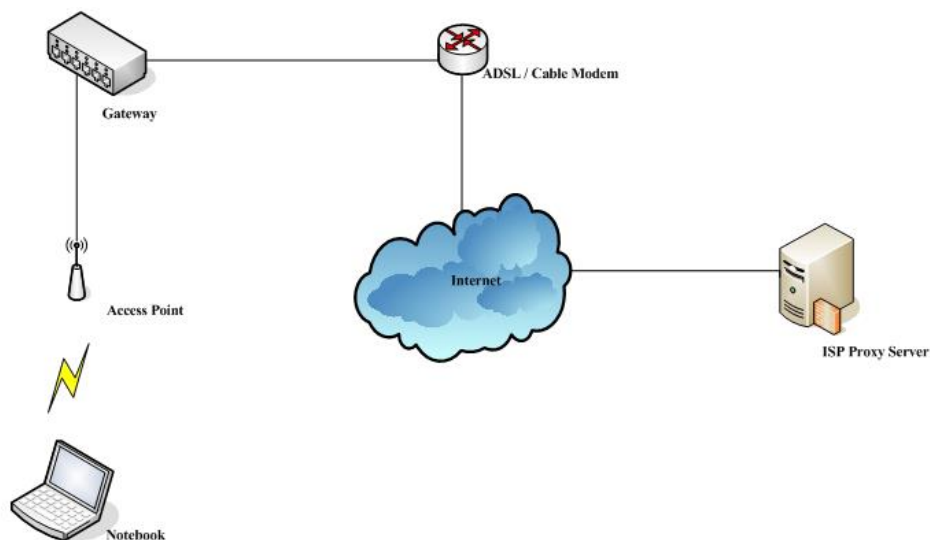
---

Proxy Server

☐ Enable Built-in
☒ Disable Built-in
☐ External

#### ■ Using Internet Proxy Server

A built in proxy server in the controller can be **Enabled**, even with a Proxy Server placed outside the LAN environment or in the Internet. For example, the following diagram illustrates how a proxy server of an ISP is used.



Follow the following steps to complete the proxy configuration:

- Step 1.** Log into the system by using the **admin** account.
- Step 2.** **Network >> Proxy Server >> Web Proxy Settings** page.  
Enable the **Built-in Proxy Server**. Click **Apply** to save the settings.

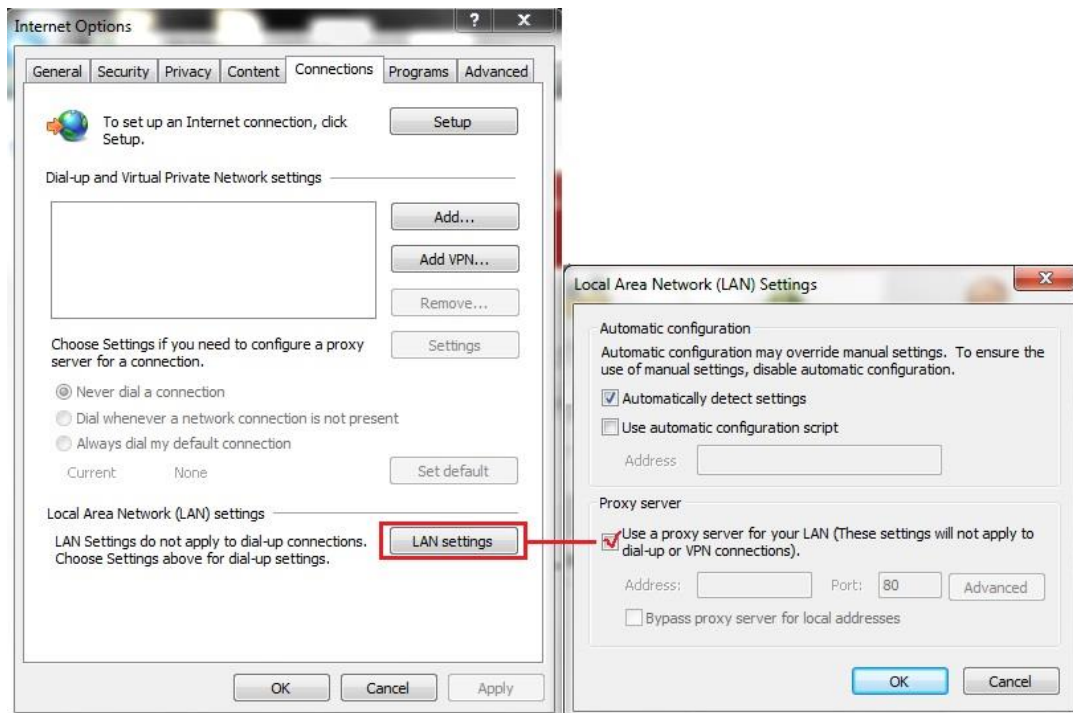
### Web Proxy Settings

---

Proxy Server

☒ Enable Built-in
☐ Disable Built-in
☐ External

- Step 3.** Enable Proxy Server Settings in Internet Options on Client Stations.



By enabling the built-in Proxy Server, all traffic is forwarded to the local Proxy Server on the controller.

### Using an External Proxy Server

To specify an External Proxy Server, choose the option “External” and fill in the appropriate IP address of the Proxy Server and the utilized port.

Follow the following steps to complete the proxy configuration:

- Step 1.** Log in to the system by using the **admin** account.
- Step 2.** **Network >> Proxy Server >> Web Proxy Settings.** Select **External** for Proxy Server. Add the IP address and port number of the Proxy server into External Proxy Servers setting. Click **Apply** to save the settings.

Web Proxy Settings		
Proxy Server	<input type="radio"/> Enable Built-in <input type="radio"/> Disable Built-in <input checked="" type="radio"/> External	
External Proxy Server	External Proxy	10.168.1.100
	External Proxy Port	6588

- Step 3.** Enable Proxy Server Settings in Internet Options on Client Stations.

### NOTE

By Enabling the Proxy Server, clients are required to manually check Proxy Server Settings on client stations' Internet Options. To apply Transparent Proxy, please use Port and IP forwarding.

## 6) Local DNS Record

The administrator could statically assign a Domain Name to IP mappings for all clients connected to the WHG Controller's LAN network. This feature can be used to dispatch clients to preferred IP address for certain Domain Names.

### Local DNS Records Configuration

DNS time-to-live

seconds \*(1~604800, i.e. up to 7 days)

The entered time span is the limit for lifetime of data in the network.

Local DNS Record List

(Total: 100)

No.	IP Address	Domain Name
1	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
2	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
3	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
4	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

## 7) Dynamic Routing

The function supports three dynamic routing protocols: RIP, OSPF and IS-IS.

- **ISIS Configuration:** It is a routing protocol designed to move information efficiently within a computer network, a group of physically connected computers or similar devices. You can configure each interface Circuit Type to Level 1 or Level 2.

IS-IS

Function

☒ Enable
 ☐ Disable

Setup Table

Configuration

Net ID

Router Level

Level 1 ▼

Interface	Status	Circuit Type
WAN1	Enabled	Level 1 ▼
WAN2	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
Default	Enabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ1	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ2	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ3	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ4	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ5	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ6	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ7	Disabled	Level 1 ▼
SZ8	Disabled	Level 1 ▼

- **Net ID:** It is the ISO address Network Entity Title (NET). The NET is used just like an IP address to uniquely identify a router on the inter-network.
- **Route Level:** Level 1 systems route within an area; when the destination is outside an area, they route toward a Level 2 system. Level 2 intermediate systems route between areas and toward other routing domains. The level type of each network interface can be assigned.
- **OSPF Configuration:** It is an adaptive routing protocol for Internet Protocol (IP) networks. You can configure each interface Area, Stub and authentication.

Function

☒ Enable
 ☐ Disable

Setup Table

Configuration

Interface	Status	Area	Stub	Authentication
WAN1	Enabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
WAN2	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
Default	Enabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ1	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ2	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ3	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ4	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ5	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ6	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ7	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾
SZ8	Disabled		<input type="checkbox"/>	None ▾

☐ Advertise as default gateway  
☐ Advertise Global Policy Route  
☐ Re-distribute RIP

- Area: An Area is a set of networks and hosts within a routing domain that have been administratively grouped together. Area 0, known as the *backbone area*, resides at the top level of the hierarchy and provides connectivity to the non-backbone areas (numbered 1, 2).
- Stub: Are areas through which or into which AS external advertisements are not flooded.
- Authentication: Allows the authenticating of OSPF neighbors. The authentication method "none" means that no authentication is used for OSPF and it is the default method. With MD5 authentication, enter the MD5 password, the password does not pass over the network.
- Advertise as Default Gateway: Inform neighboring nodes that this controller is the default gateway.
- Advertise Global Policy Route: Inform neighboring nodes the Global Policy route on this controller.
- Redistribute RIP: Check this option to enable using OSPF to distribute routing information acquired via RIP.

- **OSPF v3 Configuration: IPv6 dynamic routing configuration**

### OSPF v3

Function ☒ Enable ☐ Disable

Setup Table

Interface	Status	Area
WAN	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
Default	Enabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ1	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ2	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ3	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ4	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ5	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ6	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ7	Disabled	<input type="text"/>
SZ8	Disabled	<input type="text"/>

☐ Advertise Global Policy Route

- **RIP Configuration:** It is a dynamic routing protocol used in local and wide area networks. You can configure each interface to be a Passive or supportive version, and authentication.



RIP

Function

☒ Enable
 ☐ Disable

Setup Table

Configuration

	Status	Passive	Version	Authentication
WAN1	Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
WAN2	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
Default	Enabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ1	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ2	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ3	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ4	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ5	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ6	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ7	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾
SZ8	Disabled	<input type="checkbox"/>	Both ▾	None ▾

☐ Advertise as default gateway  
☐ Advertise Global Policy Route  
☐ Re-distribute OSPF

RIP Timer

Update timer:

30

\* (30~600 seconds)

Timeout timer:

180

\* (30~600 seconds)

Garbage collect timer:

120

\* (30~600 seconds)

- Passive: RIP packets will not be sent from network interfaces if they are checked as Passive.
- Version: Select the RIP version for this interface, RIPv1 uses broadcast to deliver RIP packets, RIPv2 uses Multicast to deliver RIP packets, both uses broadcast and multicast.
- Authentication: Allows the authenticating of RIP neighbors. The authentication method "none" means that no authentication is used for RIP and it is the default method. The two modes of authentication on an interface for which RIP authentication is enabled: plain text authentication and MD5 authentication.
- Advertise as Default Gateway: Inform neighboring nodes that this controller is the default gateway.
- Advertise Global Policy Route: Inform neighboring nodes the Global Policy route on this controller.
- Redistribute OSPF: Check this option to enable using RIP to distribute routing information acquired via OSPF.
- RIP Timer:
  - ◆ Update timer: Specify the time in seconds when the system will request for immediate update in routing information.
  - ◆ Timeout Timer: Routes are only kept in the routing table for a limited amount of time. A special *Timeout* timer is started whenever a route is installed in the routing table. Whenever the router receives another *RIP Response* with information about that route, the route is considered "refreshed" and its *Timeout* timer is reset. When this timer expires, the route is marked as invalid.

- ◆ Garbage Collection Timer: Specify the time in seconds before erasing invalid route from the routing table.

## 8) DDNS

Before activating this function, you must have your Dynamic DNS hostname registered with a Dynamic DNS provider. WHG CONTROLLER supports DNS function to create aliases from the dynamic IP address for the WAN port to a static domain name, allowing the administrator to easily access WHG Controller's WAN. If the dynamic DHCP is activated at the WAN port, it will update the IP address of the DNS server periodically. These settings will become effective immediately after clicking **Apply**.

### Dynamic DNS

DDNS

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable

Provider

DynDNS.org(Dynamic) ▼

Host Name

Username/E-mail

admin

Password/Key

•••••

- **DDNS:** Enable or disable this function.
- **Provider:** Select the DNS provider.
- **Host name:** The IP address/domain name of the WAN port.
- **Username/E-mail:** The register ID (username or e-mail) for the DNS provider.
- **Password/Key:** The register password for the DNS provider.

## 9) Client Mobility

- **IP PNP:** Enable this feature so devices with static IP, DNS, and Gateways can obtain internet access from the controller.
- **Cross Gateway Roaming:** Configure this gateway to **Master** or **Slave**. In **Master** mode, you may also need to input the **Slave IP** and **Secret Key**. In **Slave** Mode, input **Master IP** and **Key**.
  - **Master Node:** While configure Master Node, one master could active up to 15 Slave node setting.

### Cross Gateway Roaming

Mode ☐ Disable ☒ Master Mode ☐ Slave Mode

Status

Slave Nodes Setting	No.	Active	Remote IP Address*	Secret Key*	Remark
	1	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	2	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>
	3	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

- **Slave Node:** While configuring the Slave Node, enter its master node setting.

### Cross Gateway Roaming

Mode ☐ Disable ☐ Master Mode ☒ Slave Mode

Status

Master Node Setting

Remote IP Address

Secret Key

Remark

## F. Utilities

**Utilities:** This section provides functions for modifying accounts, Backup/Restore system, Firmware upgrade, Restart service, Network utilities, and Certificate.

### 1) Administrator Account

This can be used to create, to edit, to remove, and to check administrator account.

The login account for the administrator is "admin". The admin password of the system can be changed here by clicking the admin Name and entering the original password and new password. The default admin password of the system is "admin". The Elementary School's Name field may also be entered for security purposes in case the admin username or password has been forgotten. Noted that Email and Elementary School's Name should be both empty or both filled.

### Generate Admin Account

Admin Username	<input type="text"/>	*
Password	<input type="password"/>	*
Confirm Password	<input type="password"/>	*
Email	<input type="text"/>	
Elementary school's name	<input type="text"/>	

The elementary school's name will identify you, if you forgot your password. Note that, the elementary school's name can not be changed, after apply.

Allocate account to Super Group

[Assign SMTP server](#)

It also allows the administrator to create other administrator accounts with different permission.

### Administrator Accounts

[Add ...](#)
[Delete](#)
[Lock Admin](#)
[Unlock](#)
[Backup List](#)
[Restore List](#)

	Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Group	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	10.28.128.188	0A:1F:D4:00:DA:D1	Super Group	Current Page: /Utilities/MlaUser.shtml
<input type="checkbox"/>	admin	10.30.42.168	0A:1F:D4:00:DA:D1	Super Group	Current Page: /SystemConfiguration/ServiceZoneConf.shtml?sz_id=0

Admin has authority to change his/her own password or add more accounts to the admin list to take (some of) the management responsibility.

### General Settings

<b>Password Complexity</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable Min Password Length <input type="text" value="2"/> * (2~20) Min Password Category <input type="text" value="2"/> * (2~4)
<b>Limit Login Attempts</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable Block access after <input type="text" value="5"/> * tries
<b>Password Expiration</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable Password expires <input type="text" value="90"/> * day(s) after creation
<b>Password Limits</b>	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable Users to choose passwords different from their past <input type="text" value="6"/> * passwords
<b>Access Permission</b>	<a href="#">Configure</a>

- **Password Complexity** enables the admin to limit how the passwords the sub-admins use should be formed.

Min password Length sets a limit on the minimum length of a password string;

Min password Category allows an admin to define how complex the passwords of the sub-admins are required. Below shows what each number stands for:

Number	Definition
0	passwords will not be checked
1	Passwords should include at least 1 form (capitalized letters/ small letters/ digits/ special characters )
2	Passwords should include at least 2 forms
3	Passwords should include at least 3 forms
4	Passwords should include at least 4 forms

- **Limit Login Attempts (if enabled):** enter the number of times you would like sub-admins to retry their passwords. If trying out more than this number, the sub-admins are not allowed to type in strings again.
- **Password expiration (if enabled):** this is a function for admins to decide the number of days the password will expire in. A valid period can be defined for each password, counting from the first login. When a password expires, the operator will need to setup a new password for future use. Expired passwords cannot be reused.
- **Password Limits (if enabled):** it is to determine how many utilized passwords in the past should be checked. For instance, if the admin enters '5,' the system will check if the newly added password is identical to one of the five most-recent ones; if it is, the server would ask the admin to choose a new password string again.

#### ■ Sub-admin creation

### Generate Admin Account

Admin Username

Password

Confirm Password

Email

Elementary school's name

Allocate account to

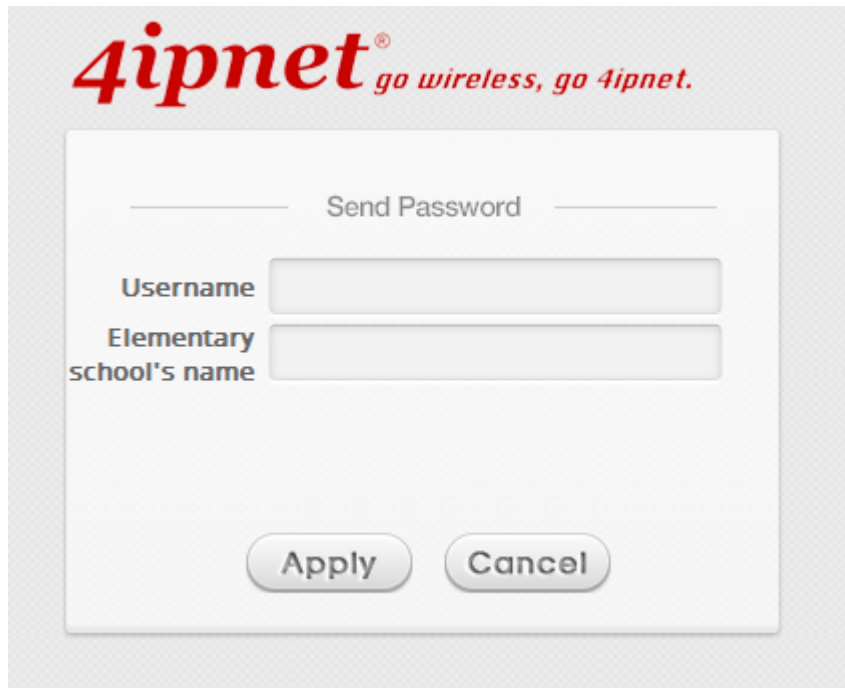
Super Group

Assign SMTP server

The elementary school's name will identify you, if you forgot your password. Note that, the elementary school's name can not be changed, after apply.

Go to the **Generate** table to create a sub-admin and define his/her authority limits. In case the administrator forgets his/her password, by entering both email and the Elementary School Name, the account credential will be email to the assigned email address. Note that an SMTP Server needs to be setup for the system to send email reminders.





4ipnet® go wireless, go 4ipnet.

Send Password

Username

Elementary school's name

Apply Cancel

(There are 6 categories a sub-admin can fall into – Super Group, Manager, Operator, OnDemand Manager, Custom1, Custom2, and Custom3. Click configure at the right of the drop-down list to see and modify the differences. Be aware that the authority limits of ‘Super Group’ are unchangeable.) Create an account to the list by pressing the Apply button after finishing the settings.

Select Group

Note: Left checkbox means Read-Write, right checkbox means Read-Only.

### Permission Settings

Service Zone	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Select All <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Default <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ1 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ2 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ3 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ4 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ5 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ6 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ7 <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> SZ8
Map	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Select All <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Overview <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> EL
AP Management	<input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Select All <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Local Area AP Management <input type="checkbox"/> <input type="checkbox"/> Wide Area AP Management

- **The admin list** serves as a list for admins to track the dynamics of each management accounts, i.e., the number of the online admins and the state of each sub-admin.



## Administrator Accounts

<div> Add ... Delete Lock Admin Unlock Backup List Restore List </div>					
<input type="checkbox"/>	Name	IP Address	MAC Address	Group	Status
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">admin</a>	10.28.128.188	0A:1F:D4:00:DA:D1	Super Group	Current Page: /Utilities/MlaUser.shtml
<input type="checkbox"/>	<a href="#">admin</a>	10.30.42.168	0A:1F:D4:00:DA:D1	Super Group	Current Page: /SystemConfiguration/ServiceZoneConf.shtml?sz_id=0

Please note that only the created sub-admins can be deleted. Check the boxes to 'Lock' or 'Unlock' to forbid certain sub-admins to access the management page. Besides, admin can also click the hyperlinks in the 'name' column to edit admins'/ sub-admins' related settings.

## 2) Backup & Restore

This is used to backup and restore system settings. System factory default can also be restored.

### Backup System

General Backup

Backup

Period Backup

Configure

### Restore System

Restore System Settings

Browse... No file selected.

☒ Keep WAN1 setting and Management IP Address List.
☐ Keep LAN, Alias and DHCP setting.
☐ Keep Certificates.
☐ Keep Local Area AP Management setting.
☐ Keep Wide Area AP Management setting.
☐ Keep Internal Authentication Server accounts.

Restore

### Reset to Default

Reset to Factory Default

Reset

Click the **Backup** button under General Backup to save the current system configurations to a backup file on a local disk of the management console. A backup file will keep the current system settings as well as the local user accounts.

A backup file can be restored to the system by clicking **Browse** button to choose the backup file and then clicking **Restore** button to execute the process.

Backup can be done periodically over FTP. Enable this feature by clicking on the **Configure** button under Period Backup.

### Period Backup System Settings

Primary FTP Status

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable

Primary FTP Folder

Secondary FTP Status

☐ Enable
 ☒ Disable

Secondary FTP Folder

Period

Day





:

- **Restore System Settings:** Click **Browse** to search for a .db database backup file created by the controller and click **Restore** to restore to the same settings at the time when the backup file was saved. The option of “Keep WAN1 setting and Management IP Address List” can be selected to retain WAN1 setting for remote access.
- **Reset to Factory Default:** Click **Reset** to load the factory default settings of the controller.
- **Remote Sync Status (WHG311/WHG315):** When **Enabled**, 2 controllers can synchronize their settings remotely on the LAN network.

### 3) Certificates

On this tab, administrators have the ability to manage the system certificate, create Root CA, sign certificates from Root CA, and upload certificate. The "Used By" column indicates current in use certificates and their corresponding applications. To further configure the different types of certificates, click the “Pencil” icon.

## Certificate Management

Cert Name	Common Name	Used by
System Certificate		
		
Default Certificate	CN=gateway.example.com	WEB Server
Internal Root CA		
		
Internal Root CA	N/A	
Internally Issued Certificate		
		
N/A	N/A	
Trusted Certificate Authorities (CA)		
		

- System Certificate**

This is the certificate that identifies the system. These certificates may be used for applications such as HTTPS login, CAPWAP, and etc. The Controller has a built-in Factory Default Certificate (gateway.example.com) that cannot be removed, but allows certificates to be uploaded. To view details of the certificate, click the corresponding "View" button. Click "Get CERT" and "Get Key" to download the certificate and public key onto your local disk.

## System Certificate

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Factory Default Certificate		
Factory Default Certificate	CN=gateway.example.com	<button>View</button>
Internally Issued Certificate		
N/A	N/A	<button>View</button> <button>Delete</button>
Uploaded Certificate		
N/A	N/A	<button>View</button> <button>Delete</button>

## Upload System Certificate

Certificate  Browse...  
 Private Key  Browse...  
 Intermediate CA  Browse...  
 Certification Path Verification ☐ Enable ☒ Disable

## ■ Internal Root CA

The administrator can generate a root CA for private use. The created root CA certificate can be downloaded and used to sign certificates generated by the system. Note that the system only allows one Internal Root CA to be created.

### Internal Root CA

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Internal Root CA		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

### Generate Root CA

Common Name

Email Address

Country Name

State or Province Name

Locality Name

Organization Name

Organization Unit Name

Key Type

RSA

Key Length

512

Generate Certificate

### Upload Root CA

Certificate

Browse...

Private Key

Browse...

Upload Files

A root CA certificate may also be uploaded with a matching Private Key.

## • Internally Issued Certificates

When an Internal Root CA needs to be created, Internally Issued Certificates can be signed.

## Certificate Information

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Internally Issued Certificate		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

## Use Internal Root CA to generate certificate

You must Create Root CA First.

The generated certificate will be listed and the certificate/key pair can be downloaded with **Get Cert**, **Get key** in **View**.

### • Trusted Certificate Authorities

Apart from self signed certificate and system's root CA, administrators can also upload other certificates signed by other CA entities or Trusted CAs into the system. These trusted root CA certificates are intended for the Controller to recognize and trust certificates of External Payment Gateway and/or CAPWAP capable APs.

To upload a Trusted CA, click browse and upload a trusted CA certificate from your local disk into the System.

## Trusted Certificate Authorities (CA)

Cert Name	Common Name	Operation
Certificate Authorities (CA)		
N/A	N/A	<a href="#">View</a> <a href="#">Delete</a>

## Upload Trusted CAs

Certificate

[Upload Files](#)

[Browse...](#)

## 4) Network Utilities

Some network utilities such as web-based Ping, Trace Route, and ARP table are supported on the system.



## Network Utilities

Type

☒ IPv4
☐ IPv6
☐ Sniff

IPv4

Ping

Trace Route

ARPing

Interface WAN1 ▼

VLAN ID

ARP Table

Status

Result

Item	Description
IPv4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Ping:</b> It allows administrator to detect a device using IP address or Host domain name to see if it is alive or not.</li> <li>▪ <b>Trace Route:</b> It allows administrator to recover the real path of packets from the gateway to a destination using IP address or Host domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>ARPing:</b> Allows the administrator to send ARP request for a specific IP address or domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>ARP Table:</b> It allows administrator to view the IP-to-Physical address translation tables used by address resolution protocol (ARP).</li> </ul>
IPv6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▪ <b>Ping:</b> It allows administrator to detect a device using IPv6 address or Host domain name to see if it is alive or not.</li> <li>▪ <b>Trace Route 6:</b> It allows administrator to recover the real path of packets from the gateway to a destination using IPv6 address or Host domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>Neighbor Discovery:</b> The administrator can use this feature to learn about IPv6 Neighbor nodes that are on the same IP segment or domain name.</li> <li>▪ <b>Neighbor Cache:</b> a node that manages the information about its neighbors in the Neighbor Cache. This feature allows the administrator to view the information stored on system's neighbor cache.</li> </ul>
Sniff	With this feature the administrator can listen for packets from selected Interfaces. The



	administrator can further filter the types of packets to capture by using tcpdump commands under the <b>Expression</b> field.
<b>Status</b>	When the administrator is executing any Network Utilities features, the status of the operation is displayed here.
<b>Result</b>	The operation result is displayed here.

## 5) Restart

Click **Restart** button to restart the system. Please wait for the blinking timer to finish before accessing the system web management interface again.

### Restart

---

Do you want to **RESTART** the system?

Reason for Restart:

☐ Perform detailed filesystem check during booting

## 6) System Upgrade

The administrator can download the latest firmware from website and upgrade the system here. Click **Browse** to search for the firmware file and click **Apply** for the firmware upgrade. It may take a few minutes before the upgrade process completes and the system needs to be restarted afterwards to activate the new firmware.

FTP firmware upgrade is also an option. Enter the FTP server IP address, FTP server port, and the FTP account name and password, and lastly specify the complete firmware filename stored on the FTP server that will be used to upgrade the system.

To upgrade the system firmware, click **Browse** button to choose the new firmware file and then click **Apply** button to execute the process. There will be a prompt confirmation message appearing to notify the administrator to restart the system after successful firmware upgrade. (\*\* Firmware upgrade may take up to several minutes, please wait for the confirmation message)

The system must be rebooted before resetting to factory defaults after firmware upgrade.

!
Note: For better maintenance, we strongly recommend you backup system settings before upgrading firmware.

### System Firmware Upgrade

---

**Current Version**

**Upload New Firmware**

**Upgrade Firmware Via FTP**

3.00.00

Anonymous

☒ Yes ☐ No

IP Address

Port

File Name

## G. Status

**Status:** Provides information for System Status, Interface Status, Hardware Status, Routing Table, Online Users, Session List, User Logs and set up Notification Configuration.

### 1) System Summary

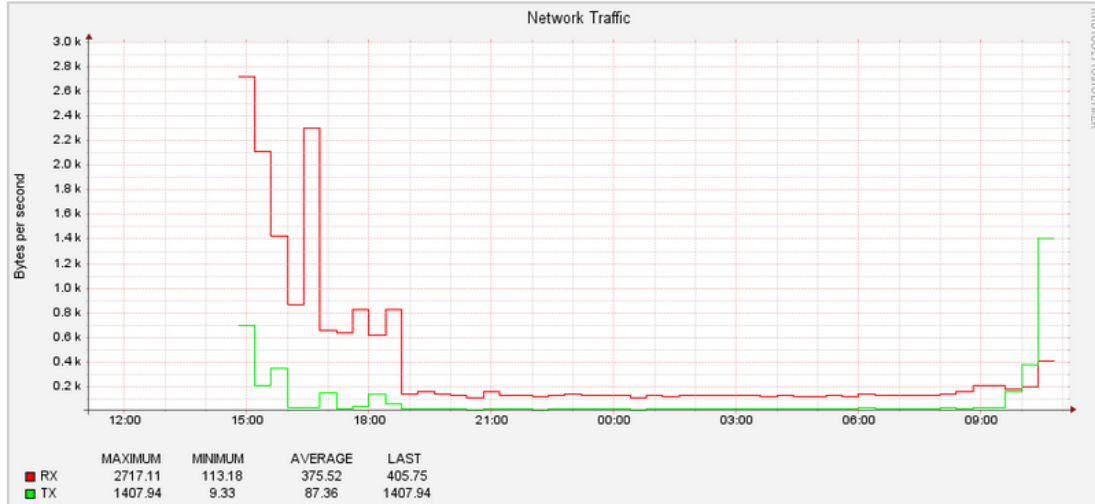
A display of current settings on the system.

An overview of the system is provided here for the administrator's reference.

## System Summary

[See Reports](#)

### Network Traffic (WAN1) for the Last 24 Hours



### General

System Name	WHG405	Firmware Version	3.00.00
System Up Time	8 min	Build Number	1.31-1.6206.2.1
System Time	2013/03/06 11:06:21 +0800	NTP Server	clock.cuhk.edu.hk
Preferred DNS Server	168.95.1.1	Alternate DNS Server	N/A
Proxy Server	Disabled	Portal URL	http://www.google.com
WAN Failover	Disabled	Load Balancing	Disabled
SNMP	Disabled	Warning of Internet Disconnection	Disabled
Idle Timeout	10 Min(s)	Multiple Login	Disabled

### Report

SYSLOG server 1	N/A:N/A
SYSLOG server 2	N/A:N/A
Retained Days	30 days
User Logs	N/A
	N/A
	N/A
	N/A
	N/A
Receiver E-mail Address(es)	N/A

### General

<b>System Name</b>	The system name. The default name is the model number.	<b>Firmware Version</b>	The present firmware version of WHG CONTROLLER
<b>System Up Time</b>	Displays for how long the system has operated.	<b>Build Number</b>	The current build number.

<b>System Time</b>	The local time is shown as the system time.	<b>NTP Server</b>	The network time server that the system is set to align.
<b>Preferred DNS Server</b>	IP address of the preferred DNS Server.	<b>Alternate DNS Server</b>	IP address of the alternate DNS Server.
<b>Proxy Server</b>	Enabled/disabled displays if the system is currently using the proxy server.	<b>Start Page URL</b>	The preset URL upon users' initial successful login.
<b>WAN Failover</b>	Enabled/Disabled	<b>Load Balancing</b>	Enabled/Disabled
<b>SNMP</b>	Enabled/Disabled	<b>Warning of Internet Disconnection</b>	Enabled/Disabled
<b>Idle Timeout</b>	The minutes allowed for the users to be inactive before their account expires automatically.	<b>Multiple Login</b>	Enabled/Disabled
<b>Report</b>			
<b>Syslog server 1</b>		The IP address and port number of the external Syslog Server. <b>N/A</b> means that it is not configured.	
<b>Syslog server 2</b>		The IP address and port number of the external Syslog Server. <b>N/A</b> means that it is not configured.	
<b>User Logs</b>	<b>Retained Days</b>	The maximum number of days for the system to retain the users' information.	
	<b>Receiver Email Address (es)</b>	The email address to which the traffic history or user's traffic history information will be sent.	

Click "See Reports" for the following available reports, sorted by interface (available on WHG models, HSG1250 and above): Network Traffic, CPU Load, CPU Temperature, Memory Usage, Storage Usage, Online Users, Successful Logins, Sessions, DHCP Leases and DNS Queries. The reports can also be customized to your preference by selecting the Time range and Interval. These reports can be sent via email, syslog, or FTP.

## 2) Interface

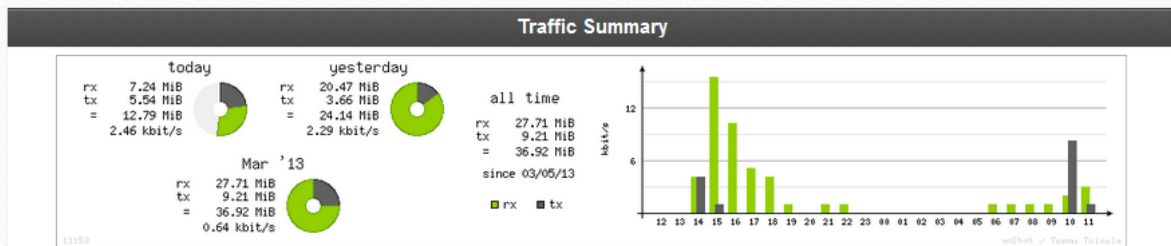
A display of the current settings of all network interfaces. Select Interface from the drop-down menu.

Each service zone represents a virtual system; therefore, the information of the system's network interface is grouped by service zone.

Select Interface WAN1

## Network Interface

WAN1			
Mode	STATIC	IP Address	10.29.42.101
MAC Address	00:10:F3:23:D3:54	Subnet Mask	255.255.0.0
IPv6 Address	N/A	IPv6 Prefix	N/A
Auto-Negotiation	On	Speed / Duplex	100Mb/s Full



### Daily Traffic

day	rx	tx	total	avg. rate
03/05/13	20.47 MiB	3.66 MiB	24.14 MiB	2.29 kbit/s
03/06/13	7.24 MiB	5.54 MiB	12.79 MiB	2.46 kbit/s
estimated	14 MiB	10 MiB	24 MiB	

### Monthly Traffic

month	rx	tx	total	avg. rate
Mar '13	27.71 MiB	9.21 MiB	36.92 MiB	0.64 kbit/s
estimated	152 MiB	50 MiB	202 MiB	

### Top 10 Traffic

#	day	rx	tx	total	avg. rate
1	03/05/13	20.47 MiB	3.66 MiB	24.14 MiB	2.29 kbit/s

Item	Description	
Interface (WAN1)	Mode	Operating mode of this interface.
	MAC Address	The MAC address of the WAN1 port.
	IP Address	The IPv4 address of the WAN1 port.
	Subnet Mask	The Subnet Mask of the WAN1 port.
	IPv6 Address	The IPv6 address of the selected interface
	IPv6 Prefix	The prefix of IPv6 address
	Auto-Negotiation	When Auto-Negotiation is On, the System chooses the highest performance transmission mode (speed/duplex/flow control) that both the system and the device connected to the interface support.
	Speed/Duplex	Displays current speed and duplex of the selected interface.
Traffic Summary		Displays daily, monthly and all time graphical summary of the TX and Rx rate for this interface.

<b>Daily Traffic</b>		Displays traffic information of the day in a table.
<b>Monthly Traffic</b>		Displays traffic information of the in a table.
<b>Top 10 Traffic</b>		Shows the top 10 traffic of the day records.
<b>Service Zone – Default, SZ1~SZ8</b>	<b>Mode</b>	The operation mode of the SZ.
	<b>MAC Address</b>	The MAC address of the SZ.
	<b>IP Address</b>	The IP address of the SZ.
	<b>Subnet Mask</b>	The Subnet Mask of the SZ.
	<b>IPv6 Address</b>	The IPv6 address of the SZ
<b>Service Zone – DHCP Scope (Default, SZ1~SZ8)</b>	<b>Status</b>	Enable/disable stands for status of the DHCP server in Default Service Zone
	<b>WINS IP Address</b>	The WINS server IP on DHCP server. <b>N/A</b> means that it is not configured.
	<b>Start IP Address</b>	The start IP address of the DHCP IP range.
	<b>End IP address</b>	The end IP address of the DHCP IP range.
	<b>Lease Time</b>	Minutes of the lease time of the IP address.

### 3) Monitor Users

All online users/devices will be listed here. The administrator can terminate any user session by clicking the **Kick Out** button. Non-login users will be listed here as well.

- **Online Users:** Successfully authenticated Local Users.
- **Cross Gateway Roaming In User:** Roaming Users authenticated at roaming peer controllers.
- **On-Demand Roaming Out User:** On-Demand users authenticated at external controllers via RADIUS protocol.
- **Non-Login Local User:** Obtained IP address but has not yet authenticated Local Users.
- **MAC Login Devices:** Disconnected MAC authenticated devices need not be re-plugged physically, and can be MAC authenticated on the MAC Login Devices List

### 4) WiFi Monitor

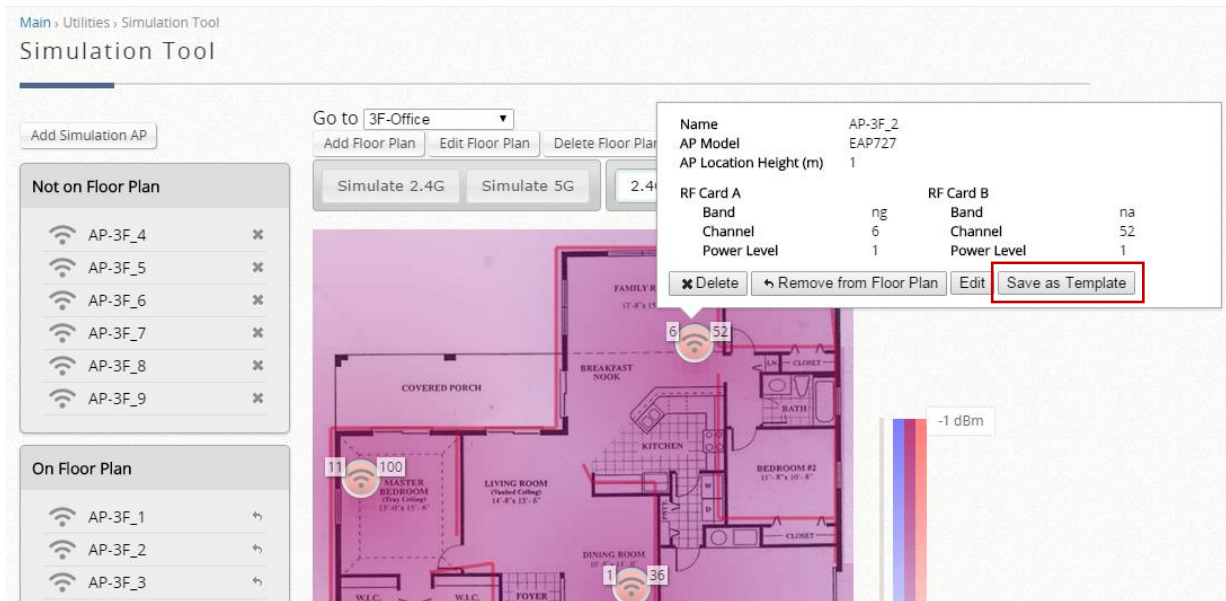
To run the Simulation Tool, first a 2-D floor plan needs to be uploaded to the WHG Controller. Click the **Add Floor Plan** button to add a floor plan.



### Add Floor Plan

Floor Plan Name	<input type="text"/>	*
Floor Plan (.jpg)	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/> No file selected.	* (under 256k, JPG)
Wall (.xml)	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/> No file selected.	*
Map Width (m)	<input type="text"/>	* (1~200)
Map Length (m)	<input type="text"/>	* (1~200)
Country Code	EUROPE ▼	
Height of Receiving Device (m)	<input type="text" value="1"/>	* (1~10)
Desired Minimum Throughput (Mbps)	<input type="text"/>	(0.1~25)
Estimated Number of Devices	<input type="text"/>	(1~2000)
Assigned Channels for 2.4G	<input type="text" value="1"/> ▼ <input type="text" value="6"/> ▼ <input type="text" value="11"/> ▼	
Assigned Channels for 5G	<input type="text" value="36"/> ▼ <input type="text" value="52"/> ▼ <input type="text" value="100"/> ▼	

- **Floor Plan Name:** Self-defined name for Administrator's reference.
- **Floor Plan:** Select file for floor plan (.jpg format).
- **Wall:** Select file for wall (.xml format).
- **Map Width:** Actual width of floor plan.
- **Map Length:** Actual length of floor plan.
- **Country Code:** Select the country code (EU/US). This will determine the max output power of access points
- **Height of Receiving Device (m):** The assumed average height of receiving client devices.
- **Desired Minimum Throughput (Mbps):** The throughput requirement for client devices.
- **Estimated Number of Devices:** Number of client devices that will be using the network on this floor plan.
- **Assigned Channels for 2.4G:** The configured channels here will be selected and assigned to APs during simulation.
- **Assigned Channels for 5G:** The configured channels here will be selected and assigned to APs during simulation.



Simulation can be done by clicking the **Simulate 2.4G** or the **Simulate 5G** button. If the results are satisfactory, the settings on each AP may be saved as a template to be used to apply to APs in AP Management.

Signal Strength: The darker the color, the stronger the signal strength is.

Coverage: Different colors depict the different coverage area of each AP.

Distribution: Use different colors to illustrate the strength of signals.

## 5) Managed AP Simulation

Managed AP Simulation allows administrators to upload a 2-D floor plan for a visualization report of managed APs. Click the **Add Floor Plan** button to first add a floor plan.

### Add Floor Plan

Floor Plan Type	Local ▼	
Floor Plan Name	<input type="text"/>	*
Floor Plan (.jpg)	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/> No file selected.	* (under 256k, JPG)
Wall (.xml)	<input type="button" value="Browse..."/> No file selected.	*
Map Width (m)	<input type="text"/>	* (1~200)
Map Length (m)	<input type="text"/>	* (1~200)
Country Code	EUROPE ▼	
Height of Receiving Device (m)	<input type="text" value="1"/>	* (1~10)

- **Floor Plan Type:** Determine if floor plan will be used for Local Area Managed APs or Wide Area Managed APs.
- **Floor Plan Name:** Self-defined name for Administrator's reference.
- **Floor Plan:** Select file for floor plan (.jpg format).
- **Wall:** Select file for wall (.xml format).
- **Map Width:** Actual width of floor plan.
- **Map Length:** Actual length of floor plan.
- **Country Code:** Select the country code (EU/US). This will determine the max output power of access points
- **Height of Receiving Device (m):** The assumed average height of receiving client devices.



Managed APs can then be added using the **Add Managed AP** button.

## 6) Process Monitor

The Process Monitor is a network utility that shows the active status of process daemons on the gateway. Administrators can choose to **Enable** or **Disable** the Process Monitor by clicking the radio button.

Process Monitor		
Enable Monitor <input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable		
Process Name	Status	ID
apache		11140
proxy		10069
proxy_logout		10085
proxy_fake		10098
cipgwsrv		9271
cipgwlnsrv		9272
dnsmasq		9435
dnsmasq_fake		9176
radiusd	N/A	
snmpd	N/A	
cipgrd	N/A	

\*Note: Process Monitor is available on WHG models 401 and higher, and HSG models 3200 and higher.

## 7) Logs & Reports

This page is used to check the traffic history of the system which includes Logs such as CAPWAP Log, Configuration Change Log, Local Web Log, RADIUS Server Log, System Log and UAMD Log. User logs are summarized in User Events, and the system also keeps a cumulated record of the traffic data generated by each user in the latest calendar month. However, since all these information are stored on volatile memory, they will be lost during a restart/reboot operation. Therefore if the log information needs to be documented, the administrator will need to make back up manually.

- **CAPWAP Log:** This page shows the CAPWAP message communicated between the Controller and CAPWAP enabled APs.
- **Configuration Change Log:** This page shows the account, and IP of the person that has made changes to Controllers WMI configurations.
- **Local Monthly Usage:** The system keeps a cumulated record of the traffic data generated by each Local user in the latest 2 calendar months. Each line in a monthly network usage of local user record consists of 6 fields, System Name, Connection Time Usage, Packets In, Bytes In, Packets Out and Bytes Out.
- **Local Web Log:** This page shows which of the web pages have been accessed on the Controllers built-in web server.
- **On-Demand Billing Report:** This page is a summary of On-Demand account transactions.
- **RADIUS Server Log:** This page displays the RADIUS messages that pass through the controller.
- **SIP Call Usage:** The log provides the login and logout activities of SIP clients (device and soft clients) such as Start Time, Caller, Callee and Duration (seconds)
- **System Log:** This page displays system related logs for event tracing.
- **UAMD Log:** Displays the UAM related information output from the UAM daemon.
- **User Events:** Displays all user related information customizable to administrator's preference.

**User Events**

Display Mode:

From:

To:

User Type: ☐ Local ☐ On-Demand ☐ Trial ☐ Roaming Out ☐ Roaming In ☐ External

Type	Date	Name	IP	MAC	Event
(Total:0) <a href="#">First</a> <a href="#">Prev</a> <a href="#">Next</a> <a href="#">Last</a> <input type="button" value="Go to Page"/> (Page:1/1) Row per Page: <input type="text" value="20"/>					

The "Download" button downloads the displayed User Events into a comma separated .txt file, which can be imported into cells (MS Excel).

Note that different User Types contain different user information. Categories will be left blank if inapplicable to the User Type.

Applicable User Event categories for Local Users:

**Date, Type, Name, IP, IPv6, MAC, Pkts In, Bytes In, Pkts Out, Bytes Out, VLAN ID, Group, Policy, MaxDnLoad, MaxUpload, ReqDnLoad, and ReqUpload.**

Applicable User Event categories for On-Demand Users:

**Date, System Name, Type, Name, Unit, Price, Total Price, IP, IPv6, MAC, Pkts In, Bytes In, Pkts Out, Bytes Out, Activation Time, 1st Login Expiration Time, Account Valid Through, Remark, VLAN ID, Group, Policy, MaxDnLoad, MaxUpload, ReqDnLoad, and ReqUpload.**

Applicable User Event categories for Roaming Out Users:

**Date, Type, Name, NSID, NASIP, NASPort, UserMAC, SessionID, SessionTime, Bytes in, Bytes Out, Pkts In, Pkts Out and Message.**

Applicable User Event Categories for Roaming In Users:

**Date, Type, Name, NSID, NASIP, NASPort, UserMAC, UserIP, SessionID, SessionTime, Bytes in, Bytes Out, Pkts In, Pkts Out and Message.**

## **8) Reporting**

WHG CONTROLLER can automatically send various kinds of user and/or system related reports to configured E-mail addresses, SYSLOG Servers, or FTP Server.

Notification Settings Page:

This configuration page allows the selection of log types to send, either to preconfigured E-mail, SYSLOG Servers or FTP Server based on the chosen time Interval.

### ▪ **Sending Logs to E-mail**

The following log types can be sent to E-mail addresses configured in "SMTP Settings": Monitor IP Report, Users Log, On-Demand Users Log, Trial Users Log, Roaming Out Users Log, Roaming In Users Log, External User Log, Session Log, Firewall Log, Local Area AP Status Change, On-Demand User Billing Report, Wide Area AP Status Change, and Configuration Change Log. The numbers 1 to 5 represent the corresponding E-mail addresses configured in "SMTP Settings". Click the desired E-mail address profile (1 ~ 5) and select the time interval for sending a report or log.



## Notification Settings


























































	Receiver E-mail Address(es)					Detail / Test	SYSLOG	FTP	Interval
	1	2	3	4	5				
Monitor IP Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	1 Hour ▼
Local Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
On-Demand Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Trial User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Roaming Out Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Roaming In Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
External User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Session Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Firewall Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A	1 Hour ▼
Local Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▼
On-Demand User Billing Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 0 ▼ Daily Report <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> Sun ▼ Weekly Report <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 1 ▼ Monthly Report
Wide Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▼
Wide Area AP Report									
<input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading									
<input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage									
<input type="checkbox"/> Network Delay									
<input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic						N/A	N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
<input type="checkbox"/> Associated Clients									
<input type="checkbox"/> VAP Traffic									
<input type="checkbox"/> WDS Traffic									
Local HTTP Web Log						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
HTTP Web Log						N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼
Configuration Change Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▼

- **Detail:** Clicking this radio button allows the configuration of the E-mail subject for the corresponding log.
- **Send:** Clicking this radio button sends a test log to the selected E-mail address.

### ■ Sending Logs to SYSLOG

The following log types can be sent to external SYSLOG servers configured in "SYSLOG Settings": Local Users Log, On-Demand Users Log, Trial Users Log, Roaming Out Users Log, Roaming In Users Log, External User Log, Session Log, Firewall Log, Local HTTP Web Log, HTTP Web Log and DHCP Server Log. Click the desired log type and select the time interval for sending log.

## Notification Settings

	Receiver E-mail Address(es)					Detail / Test	SYSLOG	FTP	Interval
	1	2	3	4	5				
Monitor IP Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	N/A	N/A	1 Hour ▾
Local Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
On-Demand Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Trial User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Roaming Out Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Roaming In Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
External User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Session Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Firewall Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	N/A	1 Hour ▾
Local Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▾
On-Demand User Billing Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 0 ▾ Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Sun ▾ Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> 1 ▾ Monthly Report
Wide Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▾
Wide Area AP Report	N/A					 	N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
<input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading									
<input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage									
<input type="checkbox"/> Network Delay									
<input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic									
<input type="checkbox"/> Associated Clients									
<input type="checkbox"/> VAP Traffic									
<input type="checkbox"/> WDS Traffic									
Local HTTP Web Log	N/A					 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
HTTP Web Log	N/A					 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
Configuration Change Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	 	N/A	<input type="checkbox"/> 	1 Hour ▾
DHCP Server Log	N/A					 	<input type="checkbox"/> 	N/A	N/A

- **Detail:** Clicking this button allows the configuration of SYSLOG attributes such as Tag, Severity and Facility which will be assigned to the corresponding log to meet the filtering requirements on the SYSLOG Server.

**Note:** The “System Log” option needs to be enabled under SYSLOG Settings in order to send the selected logs to the configured SYSLOG Servers.

### ■ Sending Logs to FTP

The following log types can be sent to external FTP servers configured in “FTP Settings”: Local Users Log, On-Demand Users Log, Trial Users Log, Roaming Out Users Log, Roaming In Users Log, External User Log, Session Log, On-Demand Billing Report Log, Wide Area AP Report, Local HTTP Web Log, HTTP Web Log, Configuration Change Log, DHCP Lease Log, System Report and Traffic Report. Click the desired log type and select the time interval for sending log.

## Notification Settings

	Receiver E-mail Address(es)						SYSLOG	FTP	Interval
	1	2	3	4	5	Detail / Test			
Monitor IP Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	1 Hour ▾
Local Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
On-Demand Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Trial User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Roaming Out Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Roaming In Users Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
External User Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Session Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Firewall Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A	1 Hour ▾
Local Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▾
On-Demand User Billing Report	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> 0 ▾ Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Sun ▾ Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> 1 ▾ Monthly Report
Wide Area AP Status Change	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	N/A	2 Mins ▾
Wide Area AP Report <input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading <input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Network Delay <input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> Associated Clients <input type="checkbox"/> VAP Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> WDS Traffic					N/A		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
Local HTTP Web Log					N/A		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
HTTP Web Log					N/A		<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
Configuration Change Log	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/>		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
DHCP Server Log					N/A		<input type="checkbox"/>	N/A	N/A
DHCP Lease Log					N/A		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾
System Report <input type="checkbox"/> CPU Loading <input type="checkbox"/> CPU Temperature <input type="checkbox"/> Memory Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Storage Usage <input type="checkbox"/> Network Traffic <input type="checkbox"/> Online User <input type="checkbox"/> Successful Login <input type="checkbox"/> Session <input type="checkbox"/> DHCP Lease <input type="checkbox"/> DNS Query					N/A		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="checkbox"/> Daily Report <input type="checkbox"/> Weekly Report <input type="checkbox"/> Monthly Report
Traffic Report (Text) <input type="checkbox"/> Service Zone <input type="checkbox"/> VLAN					N/A		N/A	<input type="checkbox"/>	1 Hour ▾



**Detail:** Clicking this button allows the specification of the FTP server folder where the logs sent will be stored on the FTP server.

**Note:** The outputted log files to the FTP server will be named according to the format **\$Topic\_ \$ExtraDesc\_ \$SystemName\_ \$Date\_ Time.txt**. For example: HTTPWebLog\_GW1\_2010-10-15\_0800.txt

- **FTP Settings:** Allows the configuration of an external FTP Server where selected users logs as well as system logs will be sent to.

FTP Settings Page:

FTP Settings

FTP Server

IP Address

FTP Server

Port

Login

☐ Anonymous
 ☒ Normal

Username

admin

Password

•••••

Send Test File

Send

- **FTP Destination:** This specifies the IP address and port number of your FTP server. If your FTP needs authentication, enter the Username and Password. The “Send Test File” button can be used to send a test log for testing your current FTP destination settings.

- **SMTP Settings:** Allows the configuration of 5 recipient E-mail addresses and necessary mail server settings where various user related logs will be sent to.

SMTP Settings	
Receiver E-mail Address 1	
Receiver E-mail Address 2	
Receiver E-mail Address 3	
Receiver E-mail Address 4	
Receiver E-mail Address 5	
Sender E-mail Address	
SMTP Server	
SMTP Port	25
SMTP over SSL	<input checked="" type="radio"/> Enable <input type="radio"/> Disable
SMTP Authentication	None

- **SMTP Server:** Enter the IP address of the sender's SMTP server.
  - **SMTP Port:** By default the port number is 25. Administrator can specify other ports if the SMTP server runs SMTP over SSL.
  - **Encryption:** Enable this option if your SMTP server runs SMTP over TLS or SSL.
  - **SMTP Authentication:** The system provides four authentication methods, **Plain**, **Login**, **CRAM-MD5** and **NTLMv1**, or "**None**" to use none of the above. Depending on which authentication method is selected, enter the **Account Name**, **Password** and **Domain**.
    - **NTLMv1** is not currently available for general use.
    - **Plain** and **CRAM-MD5** are standardized authentication mechanisms while **Login** and **NTLMv1** are Microsoft proprietary mechanisms. Only **Plain** and **Login** can use a UNIX login and password. Netscape uses **Plain**. Outlook and Outlook express use **Login** as default, although they can be set to use **NTLMv1**.
    - Pegasus uses **CRAM-MD5** or **Login** but which method to be used can not be configured.
  - **Sender E-mail Address:** The e-mail address of the administrator in charge of the monitoring. This will show up as the sender's e-mail.
  - **Receiver E-mail Address (1 ~ 5):** Up to 5 E-mail addresses can be set up here to receive notifications.
- **SYSLOG Settings:** Allows the configuration of two external SYSLOG servers where selected users logs as well as system logs will be sent to.

SYSLOG settings page:

**SYSLOG Settings**

**SYSLOG** ☒ Enabled ☐ Disabled

**SYSLOG Server**

Server 1

IP Address:

Port:

Server 2

IP Address:

Port:

Severity Level: emergency ▼

- **SYSLOG Destinations:** Up to two external SYSLOG servers may be configured. Please enter the IP address and port number of the external SYSLOG server here.
- **System Log:** This controls the enabling/disabling of the SYSLOG logging feature. When enabled, the selected logs from "Notification Settings" will be sent to the SYSLOG server configured above. However, when disabled, no logs will be sent to the SYSLOG server configured above.

## 9) Session List

This page allows the administrator to inspect sessions currently established between a client and the system. Each result displays the IP and Port values of the Source and Destination. You may define the filter conditions and display only the results you desire.

### Session List

Filter					
Address Family	Protocol	Source IP	Port	Destination IP	Port
IPv4 ▾	All ▾	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>	<input type="text"/>

Display Mode: ALL ▾

No	Protocol	Source IP	Port	Destination IP	Port	State	Timeout
1	udp	10.29.129.131	137	10.29.255.255	137	UNREPLIED	3
2	udp	10.29.129.87	138	10.29.255.255	138	UNREPLIED	29
3	udp	10.29.129.87	137	10.29.255.255	137	UNREPLIED	23
4	udp	10.29.129.110	17500	255.255.255.255	17500	UNREPLIED	21
5	tcp	10.28.128.188	55026	10.29.42.101	80	TIME_WAIT	119
6	udp	10.29.129.79	137	10.29.255.255	137	UNREPLIED	27

## 10) DHCP Lease

The DHCP IP lease information can be viewed on this page.

- **Statistics of IP Offered**

Valid lease counts of the **Last 10 Minutes**, **Hours** and **Days** are shown here. The header 1 ~ 10 are the unit multipliers. For instance the number under column 2 indicates the lease count in the last 20 minutes/hours/days, the number under column 3 indicated the lease count in the last 30 minutes/hours/days and so on.

- **Statistics of IP Expired**

IP leased to clients that have expired in the **Last 10 Minutes**, **Hours** and **Days** are shown here. The header 1 ~ 10 are the unit multipliers. For instance the number under column 2 indicates the expired count in the last 20 minutes/hours/days, the number under column 3 indicates the expired count in the last 30 minutes/hours/days and so on.



Refresh
Refresh Disable ▼

### IPs Offered

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Last 10 Minutes	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Hours	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Days	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

### IPs Expired

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Last 10 Minutes	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Hours	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
Last 10 Days	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0

#### • DHCP Lease Log

The DHCP Lease Log is displayed here and a search can be performed by IP Address, MAC Address or Service Zone.

DHCP Lease Log								
Date	Type	IP Address	MAC Address	Host Name	Service Zone	Lease Expires	Client ID	Vendor Class
2013-03-06 11:50:37	Add	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 11:50:33	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 11:57:35	Add	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 11:57:35	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 14:03:29	Update	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 14:03:29	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 14:07:38	Update	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 14:07:38	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 14:56:23	Add	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 14:56:23	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 15:05:51	Add	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 15:05:49	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 15:14:08	Load	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 15:05:49	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	*
2013-03-06 15:15:10	Add	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 15:15:09	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0
2013-03-06 15:23:00	Update	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	Default	2013-03-07 15:23:00	01:00:09:6b:cd:82:47	MSFT 5.0

#### • DHCP Lease List

Valid IP addresses issued from the DHCP Server and related information of the client using this IP address is displayed here.

## DHCP Lease List

Refresh Delete

Refresh Disable

	No.	IP Address	MAC Address	Host Name	VLAN	Lease Expires
<input type="checkbox"/>	1	192.168.1.47	00:09:6b:cd:82:47	Support_IBM_X30	3202	2013/03/07 15:23:00

(Total:1) First Previous Next Last Go to Page 1 (Page:1/1)

Row per Page: 50

## 11) Routing Table

The routing table lists all IPv6 and IPv4 Route rules. The System Route rules are shown here as well. The Policy Route rule has higher priority than the Global Policy route rule, and the System Route rule has the lowest priority.

Global Policy			
Destination	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface
Interface			
Destination	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface
169.254.0.0	255.255.0.0	0.0.0.0	Default
192.168.0.0	255.255.0.0	0.0.0.0	Default
10.29.0.0	255.255.0.0	0.0.0.0	WAN1
System			
Destination	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface
0.0.0.0	0.0.0.0	10.29.0.1	WAN1
Policy 1			
Destination	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface
Policy 2			
Destination	Subnet Mask	Gateway	Interface

Clicking either IPv4 or IPv6 will show the routing rules for each policy or interface.

- **Policy 1~n:** Shows the information of the individual Policy from 1 to n.
- **Global Policy:** Shows the information of the Global Policy.
- **System:** Shows the information of the system administration.
  - **Destination:** The destination IP address of the device.
  - **Subnet Mask:** The Subnet Mask IP address of the port.

- **Gateway:** The Gateway IP address of the port.
- **Interface:** The choice of interface network, including **WAN1**, **WAN2**, **Default**, or the named **Service Zones** to be applied for the traffic interface.

P/N: V34020160115